

# Instruction Manual

## SC-LX904

AV RECEIVER

**Pioneer**



Table of contents



Connections



- Connecting Speakers



Playback



Setup



Troubleshooting



Appendix



Supplementary Information



<b>What's in the box</b>	<b>5</b>
<b>Additional Function (Firmware Update)</b>	<b>6</b>
Update Information of the firmware	6
Operation of added new functions	6
Firmware Update Procedure	7
<b>Part Names</b>	<b>10</b>
Front Panel	10
Display	12
Rear Panel	13
Remote Controller	15
<b>Connections</b>	
<hr/>	
<b>Connecting speakers</b>	<b>18</b>
Speaker Installation	19
Speaker Connections and "Speaker Setup" Settings	46
Connecting a Power Amplifier	74
Speaker combinations	75
<b>Connecting the TV</b>	<b>77</b>
To ARC/eARC TV	78
To Non-ARC TV	79
<b>Connecting Playback Devices</b>	<b>80</b>
Connecting an AV Component with HDMI Jack Mounted	80

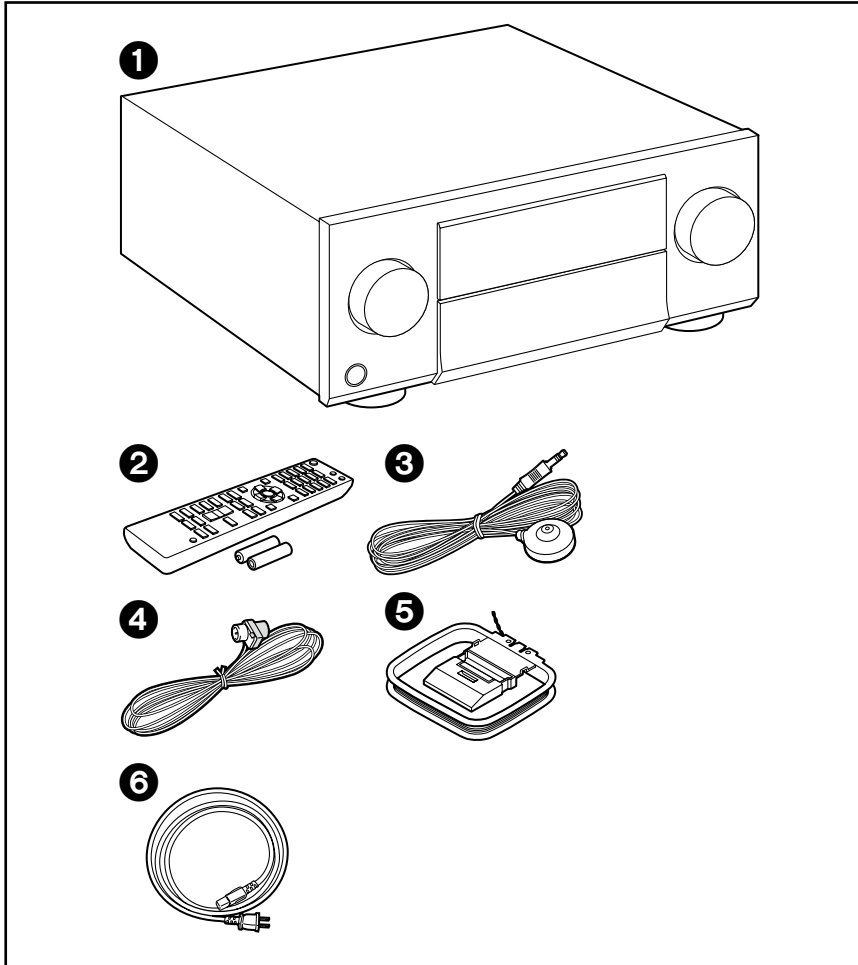
Connecting an AV Component without HDMI Jack Mounted	81
Connecting an Audio Component	82
Connecting a Video Camera, etc.	83
<b>Connecting an AV Component in a Separate Room (Multi-zone Connection)</b>	<b>84</b>
Connecting a TV (ZONE 2)	84
Connecting a Pre-main Amplifier (ZONE 2)	85
Connecting a Pre-main Amplifier (ZONE 3)	86
<b>Connecting ZONE B</b>	<b>87</b>
Connecting a Pre-main Amplifier, etc. (ZONE B)	87
<b>Connecting Antennas</b>	<b>88</b>
<b>Network Connection</b>	<b>89</b>
<b>Connecting External Control Devices</b>	<b>90</b>
IR IN/OUT port	90
12V TRIGGER OUT jack	91
<b>Connecting the Power Cord</b>	<b>92</b>
<b>Playback</b>	
<hr/>	
<b>AV Component Playback</b>	<b>94</b>
Basic Operations	94
<b>BLUETOOTH® Playback</b>	<b>95</b>
Basic Operations	95
<b>Internet Radio</b>	<b>96</b>

Playing Back	96	Playing Amazon Music using the Pioneer Remote App	113
<b>Spotify</b>	<b>98</b>	Playing Amazon Music using the remote controller	114
<b>AirPlay®</b>	<b>99</b>	<b>Connecting the Sonos System for Playback</b>	<b>115</b>
Playing Back on This Unit	99	Necessary Equipment	115
Playing Back on multiple devices (AirPlay2)	100	How to Connect This Unit and Sonos Connect	115
<b>DTS Play-Fi®</b>	<b>101</b>	Setting Up	115
Playing Back	101	Playing Sonos on This Unit	116
<b>FlareConnect™</b>	<b>102</b>	<b>Listening To the AM/FM Radio</b>	<b>117</b>
Playing Back	102	Tuning into a Radio Station	117
<b>USB Storage Device</b>	<b>103</b>	Presetting a Radio Station	119
Basic Operations	103	Using RDS (European models)	121
Device and Supported Format	105	<b>Multi-zone</b>	<b>122</b>
<b>Playing back files on a PC and NAS (Music Server)</b>	<b>106</b>	Playing Back (ZONE 2)	123
Windows Media® Player settings	106	Playing Back (ZONE 3)	125
Playing Back	107	<b>ZONE B Playback</b>	<b>126</b>
Supported Audio Formats	110	Playing Back	126
<b>Play Queue</b>	<b>111</b>	<b>Convenience functions</b>	<b>127</b>
Initial Setup	111	Using PERSONAL PRESET	127
Adding Play Queue Information	111	Adjusting the tone	129
Sort and Delete	112	Using the AV Direct mode	131
Playing Back	112	Sleep Timer	132
<b>Amazon Music</b>	<b>113</b>	<b>Listening Mode</b>	<b>133</b>
Registering this unit with Amazon Music	113		

Selecting a Listening mode	133	Data Management	192
Speaker Layouts and Selectable Listening Modes	136	<b>Network/Bluetooth</b>	<b>194</b>
Listening Mode Effects	139	Menu operations	194
Input Formats and Selectable Listening Modes	144	Network	195
<b>Inputting Characters</b>	<b>148</b>	Bluetooth	197
<b>Setup</b>		<b>AV Adjust</b>	<b>198</b>
<b>System Setup</b>	<b>149</b>	Menu operations	198
Menu list	149	<b>Web Setup</b>	<b>201</b>
Menu operations	151	Menu operations	201
Input/Output Assign	152	<b>Initial Setup with Auto Start-up Wizard</b>	<b>202</b>
Speaker	157	Operations	202
Audio Adjust	163	<b>Troubleshooting</b>	
Source	165	When the unit is operating erratically	207
Hardware	167	Troubleshooting	209
Multi Zone	174	<b>Appendix</b>	
Miscellaneous	176	<b>Reducing the Power Consumption in Standby State</b>	<b>219</b>
<b>MCACC Pro</b>	<b>179</b>	<b>About HDMI</b>	<b>220</b>
Menu operations	179	<b>General Specifications</b>	<b>222</b>
Full Auto MCACC	180		
Manual MCACC	181		
EQ Professional	189		
MCACC Data Check	192		



## What's in the box



1. Main unit (1)
2. Remote controller (RC-977R) (1), Batteries (AAA/R03) (2)
3. Speaker setup microphone (1)
  - Used during Initial Setup.
4. Indoor FM antenna (1)
5. AM loop antenna (1)
6. Power cord (1)
  - Initial Setup Guide (1)
  - \* This document is an online instruction manual. It is not included as an accessory.
  - Connect speakers with an impedance of 4  $\Omega$  to 16  $\Omega$ .
  - The power cord must be connected only after all other connections are completed.
  - We will not accept any responsibility for damage arising from the connection with equipment manufactured by other companies.
  - Network services and content that can be used may no longer be available if new functions are added by updating firmware or the service providers terminate their services. Also, available services may differ depending on your area.
  - Details on the firmware update will be posted on our website and through other means at a later date.
  - Specifications and appearance are subject to change without prior notice.


## Additional Function (Firmware Update)

This unit is equipped with a function to update the firmware via network or USB port when the firmware update is announced after purchase. This enables various functions to be added and operations to be improved.

Depending on the manufacturing timing of the product, the firmware may be switched to the updated one. In such a case, new functions may be added from the start. For how to confirm the latest firmware contents and the firmware version of your product, see the following section.

### Update Information of the firmware

For the latest firmware contents and the firmware version, visit our company's website. If the firmware version of your product differs from the latest one, it is recommended to update the firmware.

To confirm the firmware version of your product, press the  button on the remote controller to display the Home screen, and refer to "System Setup" - "Miscellaneous" - "Firmware Update" - "Version" ([→p177](#)).

### Operation of added new functions

If functions are added or changed from contents described in the Instruction Manual, see the following reference.

[Supplementary Information](#) »

□ **Firmware Update Procedure** ([→p7](#))

## Firmware Update Procedure

The update may take approx. 30 minutes to complete via network or via USB port. Existing settings are guaranteed in either updating method.


When this unit is connected to the network, notifications of firmware updates may be displayed. To update the firmware, select "Update Now" with the cursors on the remote controller, and press the ENTER button. The unit automatically enters standby mode after "Completed!" is displayed, and the update is completed.

**Disclaimer:** The program and accompanying online documentation are furnished to you for use at your own risk.

Our company will not be liable and you will have no remedy for damages for any claim of any kind whatsoever concerning your use of the program or the accompanying online documentation, regardless of legal theory, and whether arising in tort or contract.

In no event will our company be liable to you or any third party for any special, indirect, incidental, or consequential damages of any kind, including, but not limited to, compensation, reimbursement or damages on account of the loss of present or prospective profits, loss of data, or for any other reason whatsoever.

## Updating the Firmware via Network

- While updating the firmware, do not do the following:
  - Disconnecting and reconnecting cables, USB storage device, speaker setup microphone or headphones, or performing operations on the unit such as turning the power off
  - Accessing this unit from a PC or smartphone using their applications
- Check that the unit is turned on, and the connection to the Internet is secured.
- Turn off the controller components (PC etc.) connected to the network.
- Stop any playing Internet radio, USB storage device, or server content.
- If the multi-zone function is active, turn it off.
- If "HDMI CEC" is set to "On", set it to "Off".
  - Press  to display the Home screen. Next, select "System Setup" - "Hardware" - "HDMI", press ENTER, select "HDMI CEC" and select "Off".
- \* The descriptions may differ from the actual on-screen displays, however, operations and functions are the same.

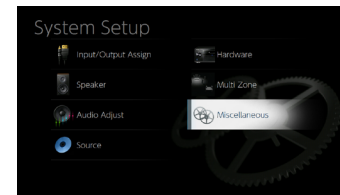
### Update



1. Press .

The Home screen is displayed on the TV screen.



2. Select "System Setup" - "Miscellaneous" - "Firmware Update" - "Update via NET" with the cursors in order, then press ENTER.



- If "Firmware Update" is grayed out and cannot be selected, wait for a while until it starts up.
  - If there is no updatable firmware, "Update via NET" cannot be selected.
3. Press ENTER with "Update" selected, and start update.
    - During the update, the TV screen may go black depending on the program to be updated. In such a case, check the progress on the display of the unit. The TV screen will remain black until the update is completed and the power is turned on again.
    - When "Completed!" is displayed, the update is complete.
  4. Press  STANDBY/ON on the main unit to turn the unit into standby mode. The process is completed, and your firmware is updated to the latest version.
    - Do not use  on the remote controller.

## If an Error Message is Displayed


If an error occurs, "\*-\* Error!" is displayed on the display of the unit. ("\*" represents an alphanumeric character.) Refer to the following descriptions and check.

### Error Code


- \*-01, \*-10:  
LAN cable not found. Connect the LAN cable properly.
- \*-02, \*-03, \*-04, \*-05, \*-06, \*-11, \*-13, \*-14, \*-16, \*-17, \*-18, \*-20, \*-21:  
Internet connection error. Check the following:
  - Whether the router is turned on
  - Whether this unit and the router are connected via the network
 Unplug and plug the power cords of this unit and the router. This may solve the problem. If you are still unable to connect to the Internet, the DNS server or proxy server may be temporarily down. Check the server operation status with your Internet service provider.
- Others:  
After removing the power plug once, insert it to the outlet, and then start the operation from the beginning.

## Updating via USB

- While updating the firmware, do not do the following:
  - Disconnecting and reconnecting cables, USB storage device, speaker setup microphone or headphones, or performing operations on the unit such as turning the power off
  - Accessing this unit from a PC or smartphone using their applications
- Prepare a 256 MB or larger USB storage device. The format of USB storage devices supports FAT16 or FAT32 file system format.
  - Media inserted into a USB card reader may not be used for this function.
  - USB storage devices equipped with the security function are not supported.
  - USB hubs and USB devices equipped with the hub function are not supported. Do not connect these devices to the unit.
- Delete any data stored on the USB storage device.
- Turn off the controller components (PC etc.) connected to the network.
- Stop any playing Internet radio, USB storage device, or server content.
- If the multi-zone function is active, turn it off.

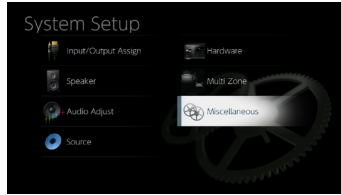
- If "HDMI CEC" is set to "On", set it to "Off".
  - Press  to display the Home screen. Next, select "System Setup" - "Hardware" - "HDMI", press ENTER, select "HDMI CEC" and select "Off".
- \* Depending on the USB storage device or its content, long time may be required for loading, the content may not be loaded correctly, or power may not be supplied correctly.
- \* Our company will not be liable whatsoever for any loss or damage of data, or storage failure arising from the use of the USB storage device. Please note this in advance.
- \* The descriptions may differ from the actual on-screen displays, however, operations and functions are the same.

### Update

1. Connect the USB storage device to your PC.
2. Download the firmware file from our company's website to your PC and unzip. Firmware files are named as below.  
PIOAVR\*\*\*\*\_R\*\*\*.zip  
Unzip the file on your PC. The number of unzipped files and folders varies depending on the model.
3. Copy all unzipped files and folders to the root folder of the USB storage device.
  - Make sure to copy the unzipped files.
4. Connect the USB storage device to the USB port of this unit.
  - If an AC adapter is supplied with the USB storage device, connect the AC adapter, and use it with a household outlet.
  - If the USB storage device has been partitioned, each section will be treated as an independent device.
5. Press .  
The Home screen is displayed on the TV screen.



6. Select "System Setup" - "Miscellaneous" - "Firmware Update" - "Update via USB" with the cursors in order, then press ENTER.



- Others:  
After removing the power plug once, insert it to the outlet, and then start the operation from the beginning.

- If "Firmware Update" is grayed out and cannot be selected, wait for a while until it starts up.
  - If there is no updatable firmware, "Update via USB" cannot be selected.
7. Press ENTER with "Update" selected, and start update.
    - During the update, the TV screen may go black depending on the program to be updated. In such a case, check the progress on the display of the unit. The TV screen will remain black until the update is completed and the power is turned on again.
    - During the update, do not turn the power off, or disconnect or reconnect the USB storage device.
    - When "Completed!" is displayed, the update is complete.
  8. Disconnect the USB storage device from the unit.
  9. Press  $\odot$  STANDBY/ON on the main unit to turn the unit into standby mode. The process is completed, and your firmware is updated to the latest version.
    - Do not use  $\odot$  on the remote controller.

### If an Error Message is Displayed

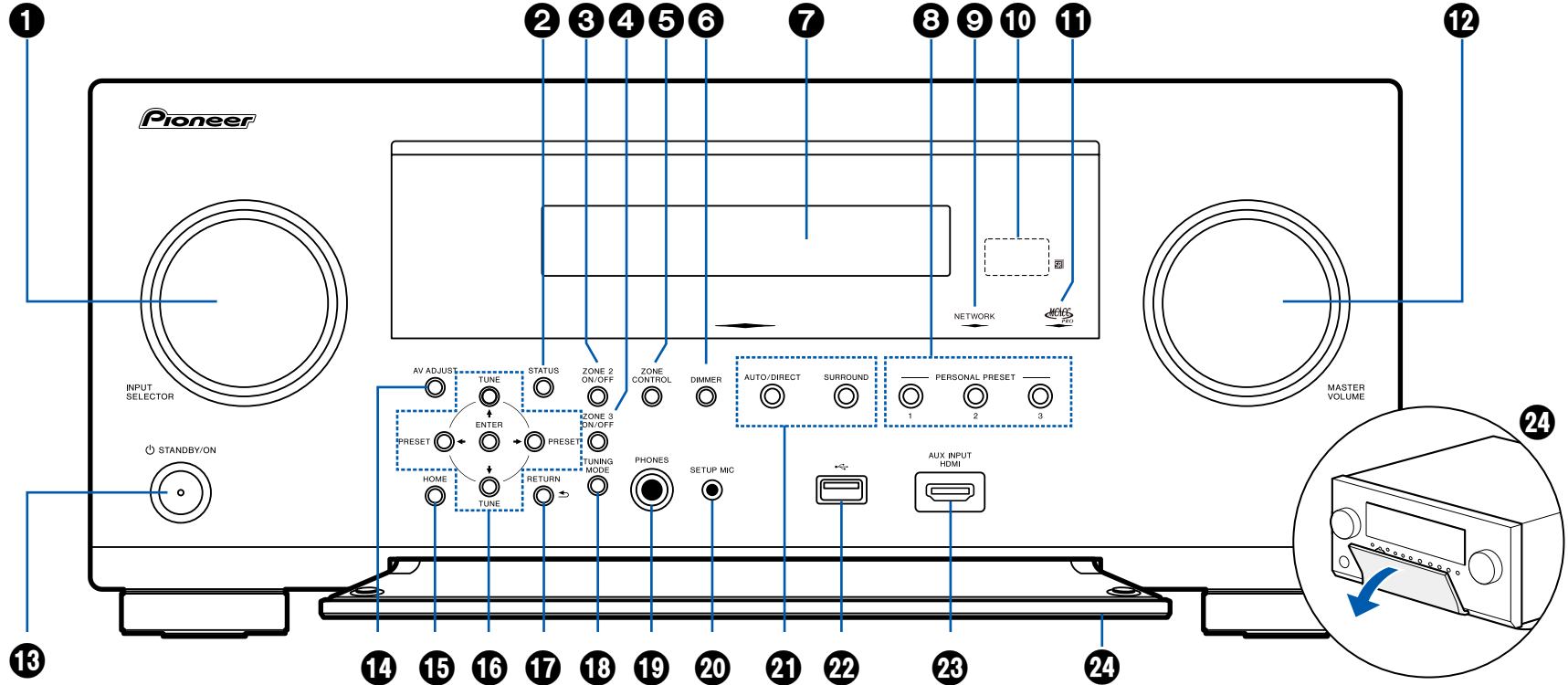
If an error occurs, "\*-\*-\* Error!" is displayed on the display of the unit. ("\*" represents an alphanumeric character.) Refer to the following descriptions and check.

#### Error Code

- \*-01, \*-10:  
The USB storage device cannot be recognized. Check if the USB storage device or USB cable is securely inserted to the USB port of the unit. Connect the USB storage device to an external power source if it has its own power supply.
- \*-05, \*-13, \*-20, \*-21:  
The firmware file is not present in the root folder of the USB storage device, or the firmware file is for another model. Retry from the download of the firmware file.

## Part Names

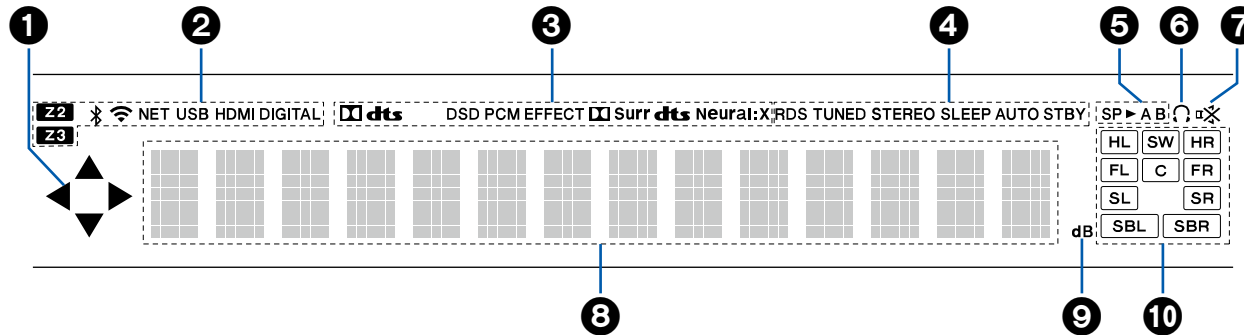
### Front Panel



☐ For details, see ( →[p11](#))

1. INPUT SELECTOR dial: Switch the input to be played.
2. STATUS button: Switches the information on the display. ( →[p135](#))
3. ZONE 2 ON/OFF button: Turns ZONE 2 ON/OFF. ( →[p123](#))
4. ZONE 3 ON/OFF button: Turns ZONE 3 ON/OFF. ( →[p125](#))
5. ZONE CONTROL button: Controls the multi-zone function. ( →[p122](#))
6. DIMMER button: You can switch the display off or adjust the brightness of the display in three steps.
7. Display ( →[p12](#))
8. PERSONAL PRESET 1/2/3 buttons: Registers the current setting conditions such as input selector, listening mode, etc. or call the registered settings. ( →[p127](#))
9. NETWORK indicator: This lights when "NET" is selected with the input selector and the unit is connected to the network. Lights up when any of the following functions is working or enabled in standby state of this unit. When this indicator is lighting, the power consumption in standby state increases, however, the increase in power consumption is minimized by entering the HYBRID STANDBY mode where only the essential circuits operate. It does not light when ZONE 2/ZONE 3 is on, however.
  - HDMI CEC ( →[p167](#))
  - HDMI Standby Through ( →[p167](#))
  - USB Power Out at Standby ( →[p169](#))
  - Network Standby ( →[p169](#))
  - Bluetooth Wakeup ( →[p169](#))
10. Remote control sensor: Receives signals from the remote controller.
  - The signal range of the remote controller is within about 16'5 m, at an angle of 20° on the perpendicular axis and 30° to either side.
11. MCACC PRO indicator: This lights when you have enabled the speaker calibration made with MCACC. ( →[p180, 203](#))
12. MASTER VOLUME
13.  $\odot$  STANDBY/ON button: When the power is turned on, the periphery of the button lights up. This lights dimly when you have pressed number 7 DIMMER repeatedly to turn the display off.
14. AV ADJUST button: Settings such as "HDMI" and "Audio" can be made quickly during play on the TV screen. ( →[p198](#))
15. HOME button: Displays the Home. ( →[p151, 179, 194](#))
16. Cursor buttons ( $\blacktriangle$  /  $\blacktriangledown$  /  $\blacktriangleleft$  /  $\blacktriangleright$ ) and ENTER button: Select the item with the cursors and press ENTER to confirm. Use them to tune to stations when using TUNER. ( →[p117](#))
17. RETURN button: Returns the display to the previous state.
18. TUNING MODE button: Switches the tuning mode. ( →[p117](#))
19. PHONES jack: Headphones with a standard plug ( $\varnothing$ 1/4"/6.3 mm) are connected.
20. SETUP MIC jack: The supplied speaker setup microphone is connected. ( →[p180, 203](#))
21. Listening mode button: Switches the listening mode. ( →[p133](#))
22. USB port: A USB storage device is connected so that music files stored in it can be played. ( →[p103](#))
23. AUX INPUT HDMI jack: Connect a video camera, etc. using an HDMI cable. ( →[p83](#))
24. Front flap

## Display

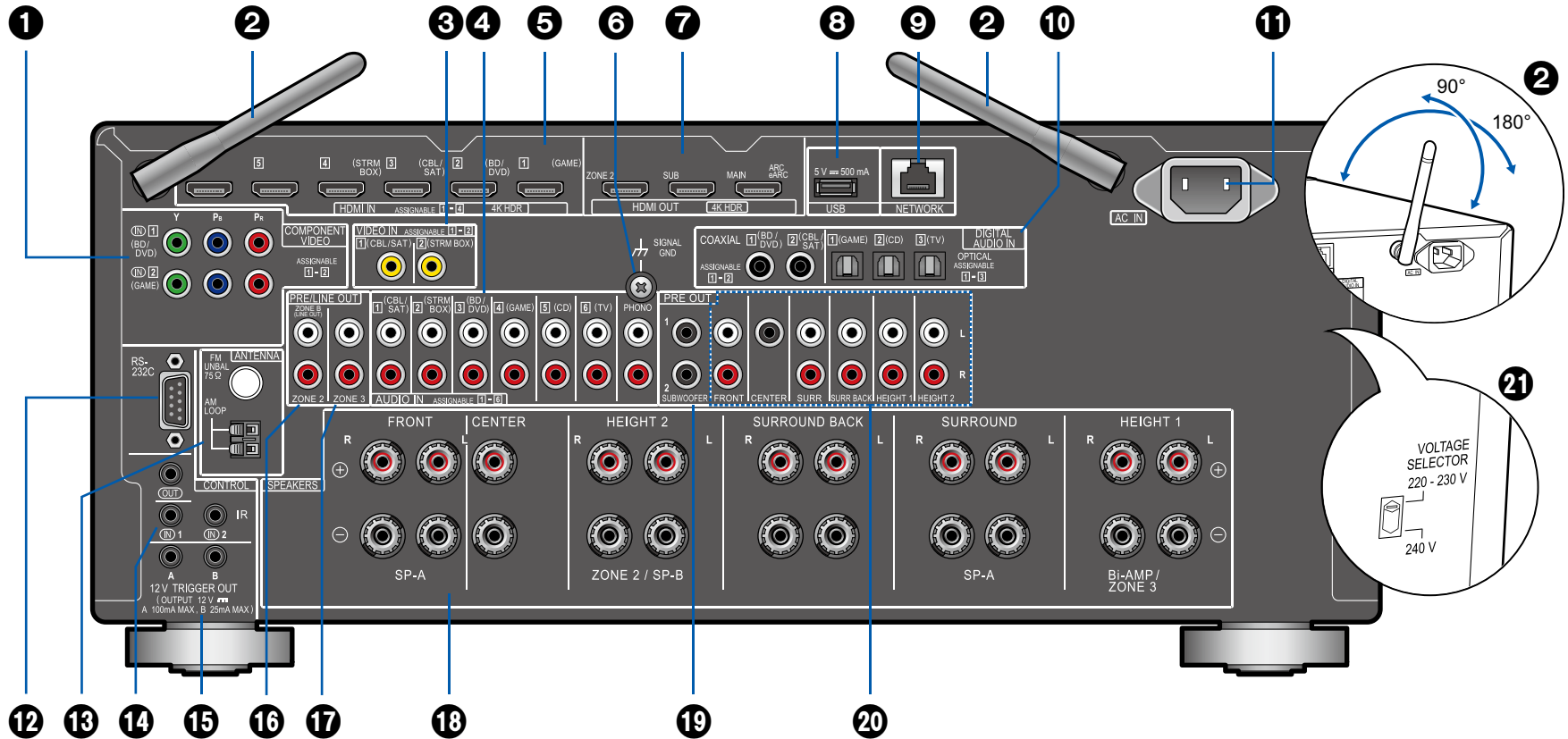


1. Cursor (▲ / ▼ / ◀ / ▶): This may light when performing operations with the "NET", "USB" input selector.
2. Lights in the following conditions.  
 Z2/Z3: ZONE 2/ZONE 3 is on.  
 ✎: Connected by BLUETOOTH.  
 📶: Connected by Wi-Fi.  
 NET: Lights when connected to the network with the "NET" input selector. It will blink if incorrectly connected to the network.  
 USB: Lights when the "USB" input selector is selected, a USB device is connected and the USB input is selected. It will blink if the USB device is not properly connected.  
 HDMI: HDMI signals are input and the HDMI input is selected.  
 DIGITAL: Digital signals are input and the digital input is selected.
3. Lights according to the type of input digital audio signal and the listening mode.
4. Lights in the following conditions.  
 RDS (European models): Receiving RDS broadcasting.  
 TUNED: Receiving AM/FM radio.  
 STEREO: Receiving FM stereo.  
 SLEEP: Sleep timer is set. ( →p168)  
 AUTO STBY: Auto Standby is set. ( →p168)
5. Displays the audio output destination.

6. Lights when headphones are connected.
  7. Blinks when muting is on.
  8. Displays various information of the input signals.
  9. Lights when adjusting the volume.
  10. Speaker/Channel display: Displays the output channel that corresponds to the selected listening mode.
- SP▶A: Outputs audio only to SPEAKER A.  
 SP▶B: Outputs audio only to SPEAKER B.  
 SP▶AB: Outputs audio to both SPEAKER A and SPEAKER B.  
 A: Outputs audio only to ZONE A.  
 B: Outputs audio only to ZONE B.  
 AB: Outputs audio to both ZONE A and ZONE B.



## Rear Panel

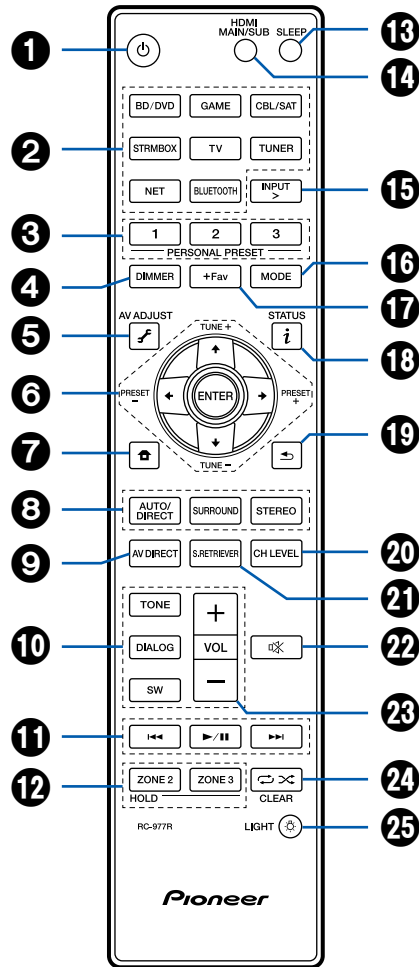


□ For details, see ( →p14)

1. COMPONENT VIDEO IN jacks: Input the AV component video signals with a component video cable. (Compatible only with 480i or 576i resolution.)
2. Wireless antenna: Used for Wi-Fi connection or when using a BLUETOOTH enabled device. Adjust their angles according to the connection status.
3. VIDEO IN jacks: Input the AV component video signals with an analog video cable.
4. AUDIO IN jacks: Input AV component audio signal with an analog audio cable.
5. HDMI IN jacks: Transmit video signals and audio signals with a HDMI cable connected to an AV component.
6. SIGNAL GND terminal: The ground wire of the turntable is connected.
7. HDMI OUT jacks: Transmit video signals and audio signals with an HDMI cable connected to a monitor such as a TV or projector.
8. USB port: A USB storage device is connected so that music files stored in it can be played. ( →[p103](#))  
You can also supply power (5 V/0.5 A) to USB devices with a USB cable.
9. NETWORK port: Connect to the network with a LAN cable.
10. DIGITAL AUDIO IN OPTICAL/COAXIAL jacks: Input TV or AV component digital audio signals with a digital optical cable or digital coaxial cable.
11. AC IN: The supplied power cord is connected.
12. RS-232C port: Connect a home control system equipped with an RS-232C port. For adopting a home control system, contact the specialized stores.
13. ANTENNA AM LOOP/FM UNBAL 75 Ω terminal: The supplied antennas are connected.
14. IR IN/OUT port: Connect a remote control receiver unit. ( →[p90](#))
15. 12V TRIGGER OUT A/B jack: Connect a device equipped with a 12V trigger input jack to enable power link operation between the device and this unit. ( →[p91](#))
16. ZONE 2 PRE/LINE OUT jacks: Output audio signals with an analog audio cable connected to a pre-main amplifier or a power amplifier in a separate room (ZONE 2).  
ZONE B LINE OUT jacks: Connect to a pre-main amplifier with an analog audio cable, and simultaneously output audio of the same source as that of the speakers (ZONE A) connected to this unit.
17. ZONE 3 PRE/LINE OUT jacks: Output audio signals with an analog audio cable connected to a pre-main amplifier or a power amplifier in a separate room (ZONE 3).
18. SPEAKERS terminals: Connect speakers with speaker cables. (North

- American models support banana plugs. Use a plug 4 mm in diameter. Y plug connection is not supported.)
19. SUBWOOFER PRE OUT jack: Connect a powered subwoofer with a subwoofer cable. Up to two powered subwoofers can be connected. You can set the volume levels of the 2 powered subwoofers to different levels. ( →[p162](#))
  20. PRE OUT jacks: Connect a power amplifier. ( →[p74](#))
  21. VOLTAGE SELECTOR (multi-voltage models): Use a medium-sized screwdriver to switch the voltage to the one appropriate for your region. Before changing the voltage, first disconnect the power cord.

## Remote Controller



1. STANDBY/ON button
2. INPUT button: Switch the input to be played.
3. PERSONAL PRESET 1/2/3 buttons: Registers the current setting conditions such as input selector, listening mode, etc. or call the registered settings. ([→p127](#))
4. DIMMER button: You can switch the display off or adjust the brightness of the display in three steps.
5. (AV ADJUST) button: Settings such as "HDMI" and "Audio" can be made quickly during play on the TV screen. ([→p198](#))
6. Cursor buttons and ENTER button: Select the item with the cursors and press ENTER to confirm your selection. When the folder or file lists are not shown on one screen on the TV, press / to change the screen.
7. button: Displays the Home. ([→p151, 179, 194](#))
8. LISTENING MODE buttons: Allows you to select the listening mode. ([→p133](#))
9. AV DIRECT button: Sound quality can be improved by suppressing the noise that is generated in digital circuits. ([→p131](#))
10. TONE/DIALOG/SW buttons: Adjusts the sound quality of the speakers and volume level of the subwoofer. ([→p129](#))
11. Play buttons: Used for playback operations for the Music Server ([→p106](#)) or USB device ([→p103](#)). If the unit is switched to "CEC MODE" using "16. MODE button", an HDMI CEC function-enabled AV component can be operated. (Depending on the device, operation may not be possible.)
12. ZONE 2/ZONE 3 button: Controls the multi-zone function. ([→p122](#))
13. SLEEP button: Set the sleep timer. Select the time from "30 min", "60 min" and "90 min". ([→p132](#))
14. HDMI MAIN/SUB button: Select the HDMI OUT jack to output video signals from "MAIN", "SUB", and "MAIN+SUB".
15. INPUT > button: Switches the input to be played.
16. MODE button: Switches between automatic tuning and manual tuning for AM/FM stations ([→p117](#)). Also, when an HDMI CEC function-enabled AV component is connected to this unit, you can switch "11. Play buttons" between "CEC MODE" and "RCV MODE" (normal mode).
17. +Fav button: Used to register AM/FM radio stations. ([→p119](#))

18. **i** (STATUS) button: Switches the information on the display and is used to operate RDS. ( →[p121](#))
19. **↶** button: Returns the display to the previous state.
20. CH LEVEL button: You can check the volume level settings ( →[p162](#)) for each of the speakers. You can also change the settings with the number 6 cursor buttons **← / →**.
21. S.RETRIEVER button: Enable Sound Retriever ( →[p199](#)) and improve the quality of compressed audio.
22. **⊗** button: Temporarily mutes audio. Press again to cancel muting.
23. Volume buttons
24. **↺ ↻** button: You can start repeat or random play of the Music Server or USB.  
CLEAR button: Deletes all characters you have entered when entering text on the TV screen.
25. **☾** (LIGHT) button: Turn the backlight of the remote controller On/Off. If 10 seconds elapse with no operations performed after turning it on, it will automatically turn off.

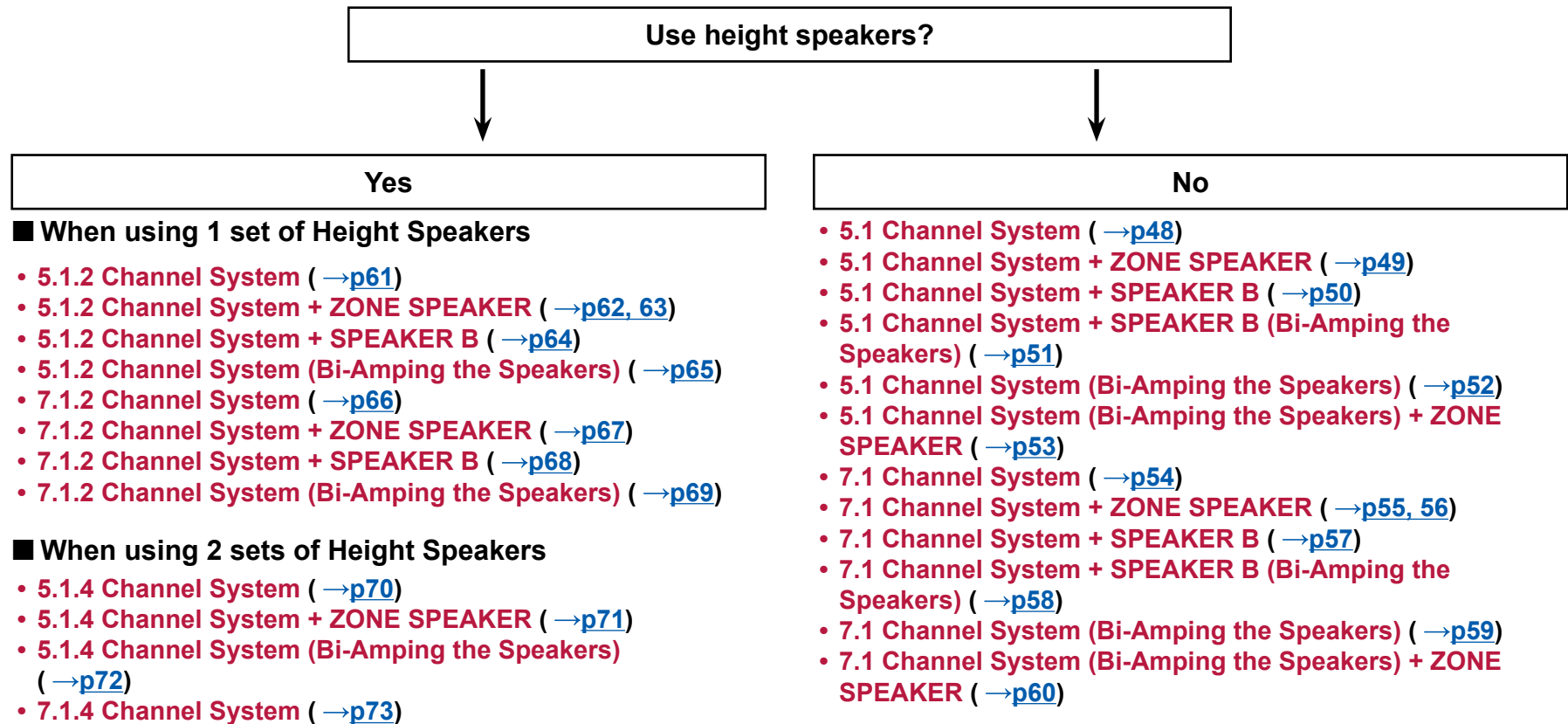
## **Connections**

---

<b>Connecting speakers</b>	<b>18</b>
<b>Connecting the TV</b>	<b>77</b>
<b>Connecting Playback Devices</b>	<b>80</b>
<b>Connecting an AV Component in a Separate Room (Multi-zone Connection)</b>	<b>84</b>
<b>Connecting ZONE B</b>	<b>87</b>
<b>Connecting Antennas</b>	<b>88</b>
<b>Network Connection</b>	<b>89</b>
<b>Connecting External Control Devices</b>	<b>90</b>
<b>Connecting the Power Cord</b>	<b>92</b>

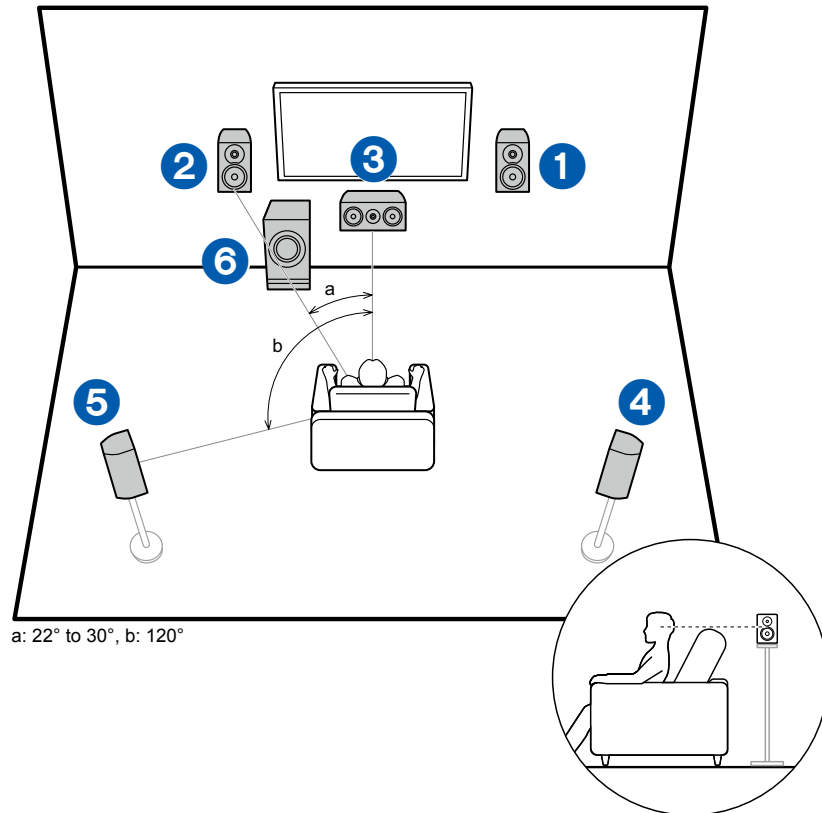
## Connecting speakers

You can select the layout of speakers to be installed from various patterns when using this unit. Use the following flow chart to select the speaker layout that suits your speakers and usage environment. You can check the connection method and default settings.



## Speaker Installation

### ■ 5.1 Channel System

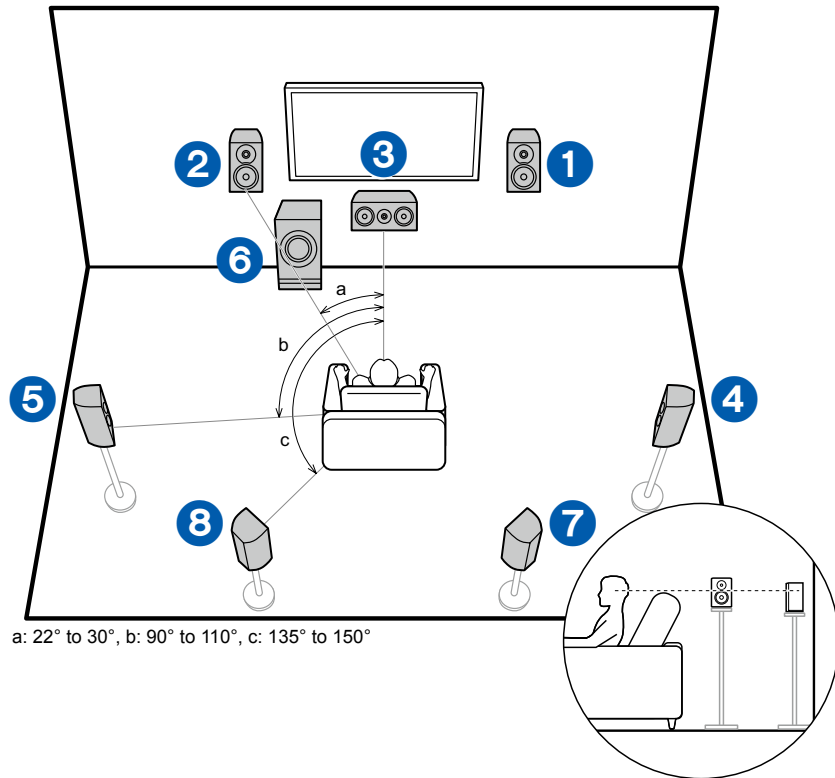


This is a basic 5.1 Channel System. Front speakers output the front stereo sound, and a center speaker outputs the sound of the center of the screen, such as dialogs and vocals. Surround speakers create the back sound field. Powered subwoofer reproduces the bass sound, and creates the rich sound field. The front speakers should be positioned at ear height while the surround speakers should be positioned just above ear height. The center speaker should be set up facing the listening position at an angle. Placing the powered subwoofer between the center speaker and the front speaker gives you a natural sound even when playing music sources.

- 1,2 Front Speakers
- 3 Center Speaker
- 4,5 Surround Speakers
- 6 Powered Subwoofer

□ **Speaker Layouts and Selectable Listening Modes ( →[p136](#))**

## ■ 7.1 Channel System



This is a 7.1 Channel System that consists of the basic 5.1 Channel System ( →p19) and added surround back speakers. Front speakers output the front stereo sound, and a center speaker outputs the sound of the center of the screen, such as dialogs and vocals. Surround speakers create the back sound field. Powered subwoofer reproduces the bass sound, and creates the rich sound field. Surround back speakers improves the sense of envelopment and connectivity of sound in the back sound field, and provides a more real sound field.

The front speakers should be positioned at ear height while the surround speakers should be positioned just above ear height. The center speaker should be set up facing the listening position at an angle. Placing the powered subwoofer between the center speaker and the front speaker gives you a natural sound even when playing music sources. The surround back speakers should be positioned at ear height.

- If surround back speakers are installed, be sure to install surround speakers as well.

- 1,2 Front Speakers
- 3 Center Speaker
- 4,5 Surround Speakers
- 6 Powered Subwoofer
- 7,8 Surround Back Speakers

## □ Speaker Layouts and Selectable Listening Modes ( →p136)

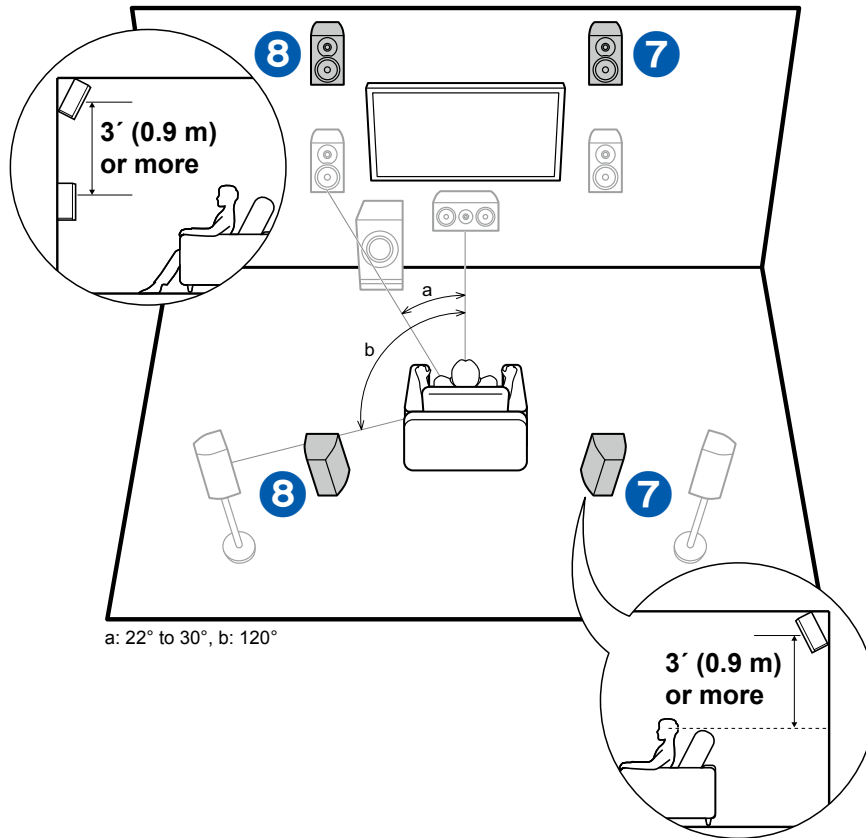


## ■ 5.1.2 Channel System

A 5.1.2 Channel System is a speaker layout consisting of the basic 5.1 Channel System ( →[p19](#)) and added height speakers. Select the height speakers that suit your speakers and usage environment from the following three types.

- Front High Speakers/Rear High Speakers  
Installation Example ( →[p22](#))**
- Ceiling Speakers Installation Example  
( →[p23](#))**
- Dolby Enabled Speakers (Dolby Speakers)  
Installation Example ( →[p24](#))**

❑ **Front High Speakers/Rear High Speakers Installation Example**



This is a system with the basic 5.1 channel system ( →p19) consisting of front speakers, a center speaker, surround speakers and a powered subwoofer, and added front high speakers or rear high speakers combined. Installing the height speakers will enrich the sound field feeling in the upper space. Front high speakers or rear high speakers should be installed at least 3' / 0.9 m higher than the front speakers.

Front high speakers should be installed directly above the front speakers, and the distance between the rear high speakers should match the distance between the front speakers. In both cases, the speakers should be set up facing the listening position at an angle.

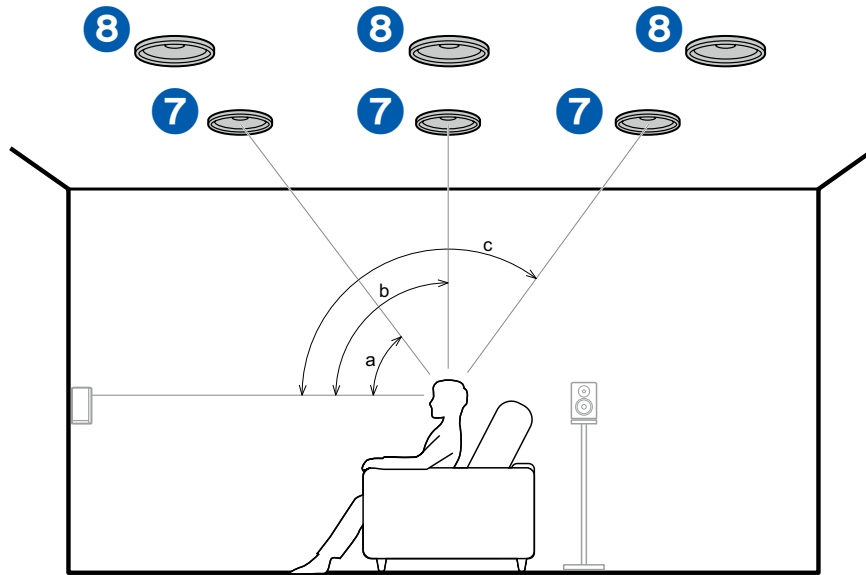
7,8 Height Speakers

Choose one of the following:

- Front High Speakers
- Rear High Speakers

❑ **Speaker Layouts and Selectable Listening Modes ( →p136)**

## □ Ceiling Speakers Installation Example



a: 30° to 55°, b: 65° to 100°, c: 125° to 150°

This is a system with the basic 5.1 channel system (→p19) consisting of front speakers, a center speaker, surround speakers and a powered subwoofer, and added top front speakers or top middle speakers or top rear speakers combined. Installing the height speakers will enrich the sound field feeling in the upper space. Install the top front speakers on the ceiling anterior to the seating position, top middle speakers on the ceiling directly above the seating position, and top rear speakers on the ceiling posterior to the seating position. The distance between each pair should match the distance between the front speakers.

- Dolby Laboratories recommends the setups of these types of height speakers to obtain the best Dolby Atmos effect.

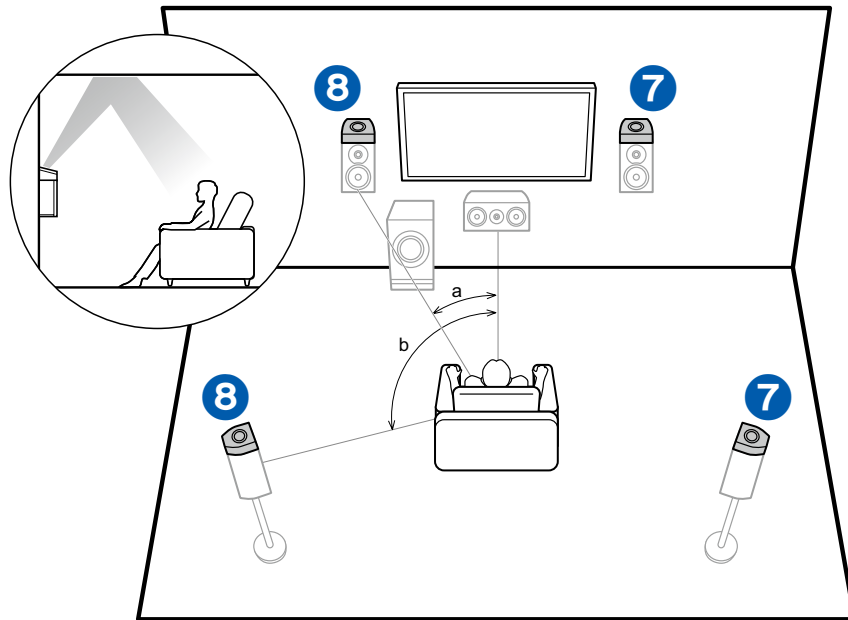
### 7,8 Height Speakers

Choose one of the following:

- Top Front Speakers
- Top Middle Speakers
- Top Rear Speakers

## □ Speaker Layouts and Selectable Listening Modes (→p136)

## ❑ Dolby Enabled Speakers (Dolby Speakers) Installation Example



a: 22° to 30°, b: 120°

This is a system with the basic 5.1 channel system (→p19) consisting of front speakers, a center speaker, surround speakers and a powered subwoofer, and added Dolby enabled speakers (front) or Dolby enabled speakers (surround) combined. Dolby enabled speakers are special speakers designed to face the ceiling, so that the sound is heard from overhead by bouncing the sound off the ceiling. Installing the height speakers will enrich the sound field feeling in the upper space.

Install them either on the front speakers or on the surround speakers.

### 7,8 Height Speakers

Choose one of the following:

- Dolby Enabled Speakers (Front)
- Dolby Enabled Speakers (Surround)

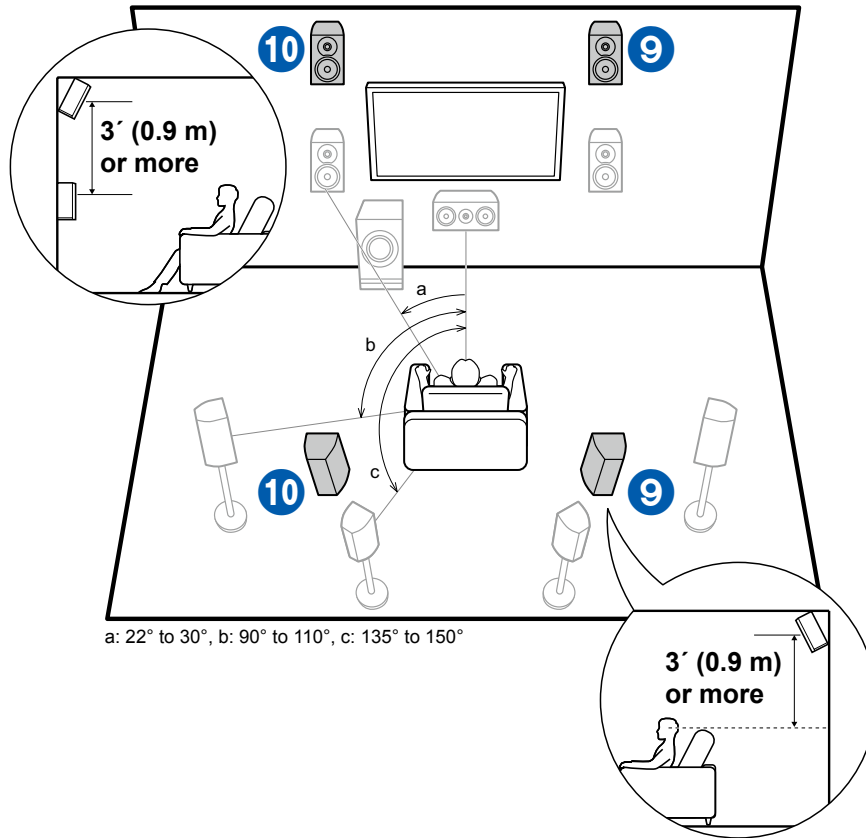
## ❑ Speaker Layouts and Selectable Listening Modes (→p136)

## ■ 7.1.2 Channel System

A 7.1.2 Channel System is a speaker layout consisting of the 7.1 Channel System ( →[p20](#)) and added height speakers. Select the height speakers that suit your speakers and usage environment from the following three types.

- Front High Speakers/Rear High Speakers**  
Installation Example ( →[p26](#))
- Ceiling Speakers Installation Example**  
( →[p27](#))
- Dolby Enabled Speakers (Dolby Speakers)**  
Installation Example ( →[p28](#))

❑ **Front High Speakers/Rear High Speakers Installation Example**

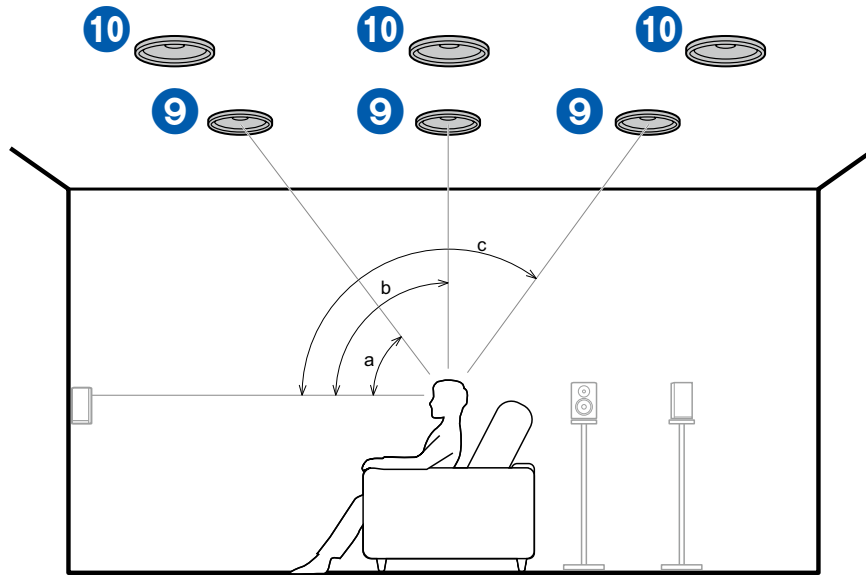


This is a system with the 7.1 channel system ( →p20) consisting of front speakers, a center speaker, surround speakers, surround back speakers and a powered subwoofer, and added front high speakers or rear high speakers combined. Installing the height speakers will enrich the sound field feeling in the upper space. Front high speakers or rear high speakers should be installed at least 3' / 0.9 m higher than the front speakers. Front high speakers should be installed directly above the front speakers, and the distance between the rear high speakers should match the distance between the front speakers. In both cases, the speakers should be set up facing the listening position at an angle.

- 9,10 Height Speakers  
 Choose one of the following:
- Front High Speakers
  - Rear High Speakers

❑ **Speaker Layouts and Selectable Listening Modes ( →p136)**

## □ Ceiling Speakers Installation Example



a: 30° to 55°, b: 65° to 100°, c: 125° to 150°

This is a system with the 7.1 channel system (→[p20](#)) consisting of front speakers, a center speaker, surround speakers, surround back speakers and a powered subwoofer, and added top front speakers or top middle speakers or top rear speakers combined. Installing the height speakers will enrich the sound field feeling in the upper space. Install the top front speakers on the ceiling anterior to the seating position, top middle speakers on the ceiling directly above the seating position, and top rear speakers on the ceiling posterior to the seating position. The distance between each pair should match the distance between the front speakers.

- Dolby Laboratories recommends the setups of these types of height speakers to obtain the best Dolby Atmos effect.

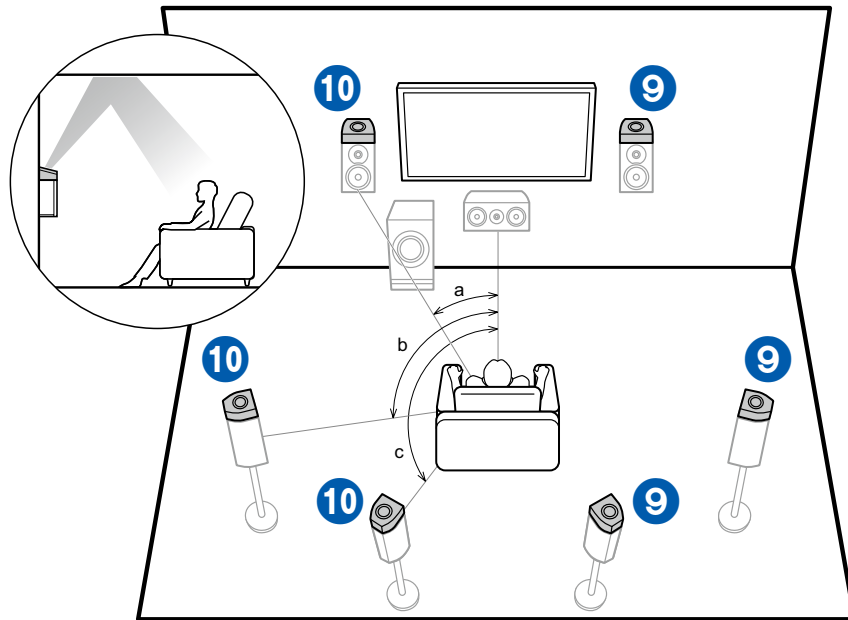
9,10 Height Speakers

Choose one of the following:

- Top Front Speakers
- Top Middle Speakers
- Top Rear Speakers

## □ Speaker Layouts and Selectable Listening Modes (→[p136](#))

## ❑ Dolby Enabled Speakers (Dolby Speakers) Installation Example



a: 22° to 30°, b: 90° to 110°, c: 135° to 150°

This is a system with the 7.1 channel system ( →p20) consisting of front speakers, a center speaker, surround speakers, surround back speakers and a powered subwoofer, and added Dolby enabled speakers (front), Dolby enabled speakers (surround) or Dolby enabled speakers (surround back) combined. Dolby enabled speakers are special speakers designed to face the ceiling, so that the sound is heard from overhead by bouncing the sound off the ceiling. Installing the height speakers will enrich the sound field feeling in the upper space.

Install them either on the front speakers, on the surround speakers or on the surround back speakers.

### 9,10 Height Speakers

Choose one of the following:

- Dolby Enabled Speakers (Front)
- Dolby Enabled Speakers (Surround)
- Dolby Enabled Speakers (Surround Back)

## ❑ Speaker Layouts and Selectable Listening Modes ( →p136)



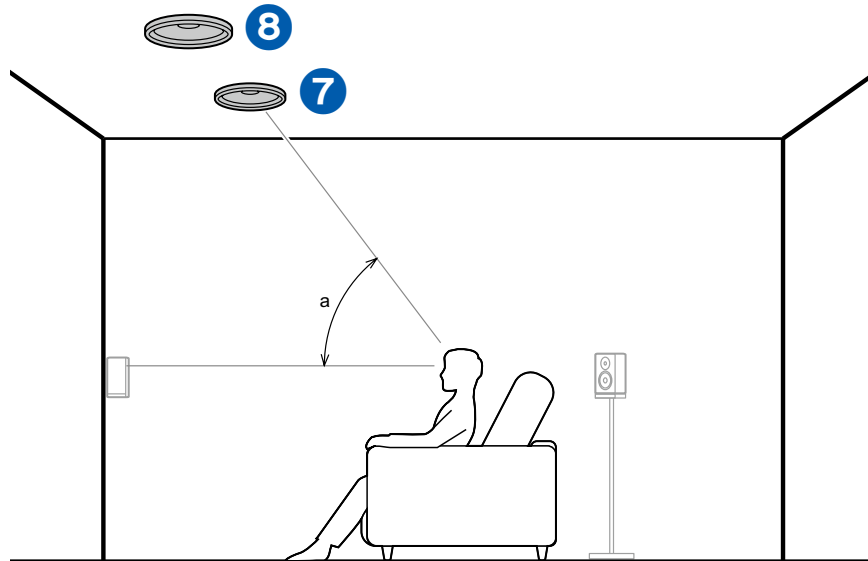
### ■ 5.1.4 Channel System

A 5.1.4 Channel System is a speaker layout combining 2 sets of the height speakers, 1 set of left and right at the front and 1 set of left and right at the rear, to the basic 5.1 Channel System ( →[p19](#)). Installing the height speakers will enrich the sound field feeling in the upper space. Combination of 2 height speakers can be selected from following.

- Combination example when Top Front Speakers are used at the front ( →[p30](#))**
- Combination example when Top Middle Speakers are used at the front ( →[p32](#))**
- Combination example when Front High Speakers are used at the front ( →[p33](#))**
- Combination example when Dolby Enabled Speakers (Front) are used at the front ( →[p35](#))**

**Combination example when Top Front Speakers are used at the front**

About the top front speakers

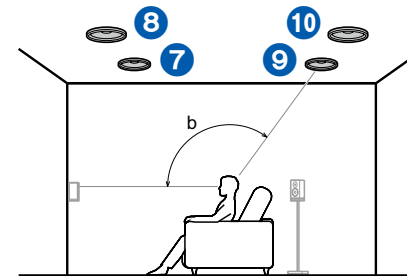


a: 30° to 55°

The top front speakers are installed on the ceiling at front of the listening position, and the width between the left and right speakers is optimal to match the one for the front speakers. When the top front speakers are used in front, the combination of the height speakers at the rear can be selected from the following 3 examples shown at the right.

7,8 Top Front Speakers

(Example 1) Use top rear speakers at the rear

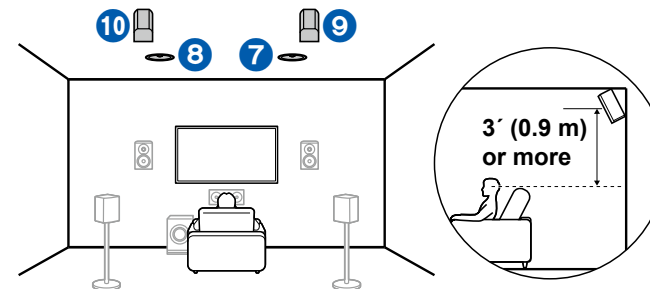


b: 125° to 150°

The top rear speakers are installed on the ceiling at rear of the listening position, and the width between the left and right speakers is optimal to match the one for the front speakers.

9,10 Top Rear Speakers

(Example 2) Use rear high speakers at the rear

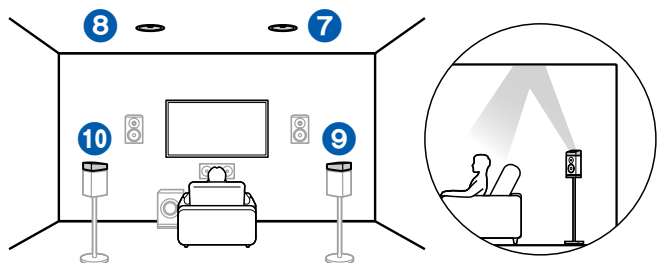


The width between the rear high speakers should match the one for the front speakers, and they should be installed minimum of 3'/0.9 m higher than the front speakers, and tilted so they will point toward the listener.

9,10 Rear High Speakers

**Speaker Layouts and Selectable Listening Modes ( →p136)**

(Example 3) Use Dolby Enabled Speakers (Surround) at the rear



The Dolby enabled speakers are the special speaker that the sound is emitted toward the ceiling, and have the effect the sound to come from above by reflecting the sound on the ceiling.

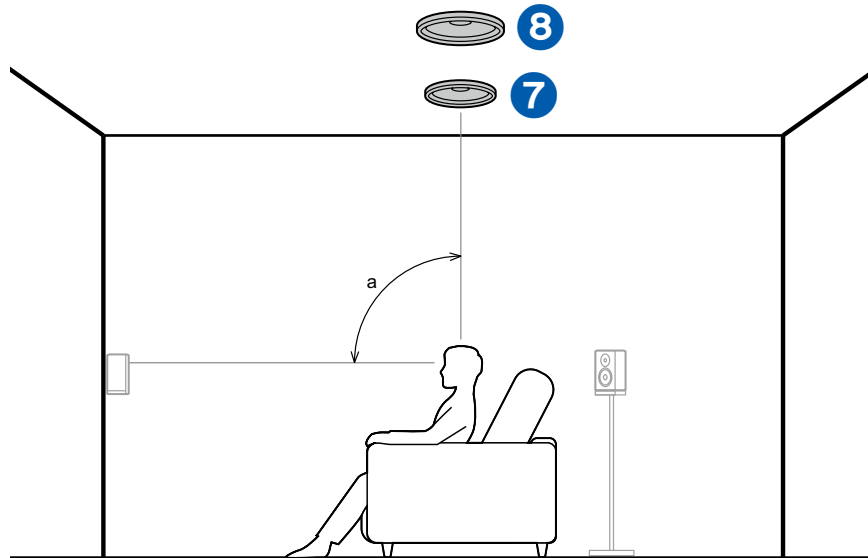
The Dolby enabled speakers (surround) are installed on top of the surround speakers.

9,10 Dolby Enabled Speakers (Surround)

**Speaker Layouts and Selectable Listening Modes ( →[p136](#))**

**Combination example when Top Middle Speakers are used at the front**

About the top middle speakers

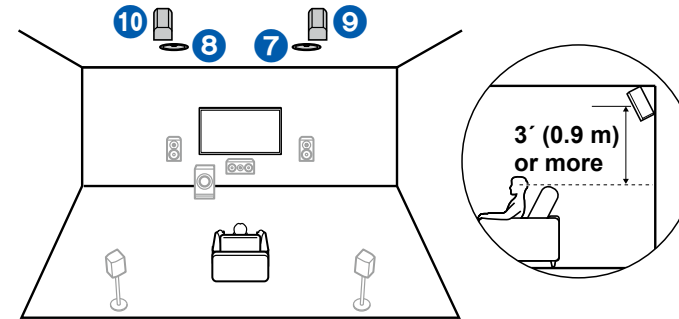


a: 65° to 100°

The top middle speakers are installed on the ceiling immediately above the listening position, and the width between the left and right speakers is optimal to match the one for the front speakers. When the top middle speakers are used in front, the rear high speakers in the figure at the right can be used at the rear.

7,8 Top Middle Speakers

Use rear high speakers at the rear



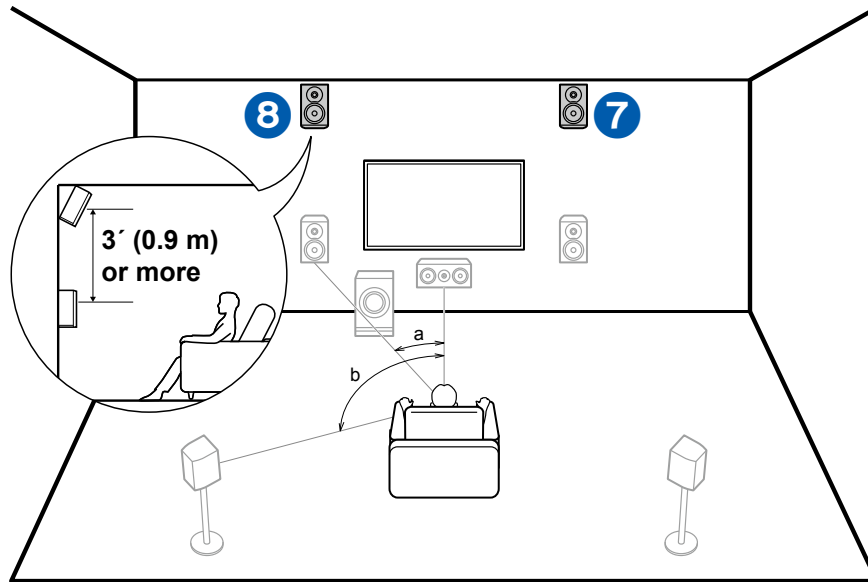
The width between the rear high speakers should match the one for the front speakers, and they should be installed minimum of 3'/0.9 m higher than the front speakers, and tilted so they will point toward the listener.

9,10 Rear High Speakers

**Speaker Layouts and Selectable Listening Modes ( →[p136](#))**

**Combination example when Front High Speakers are used at the front**

About the front high speakers

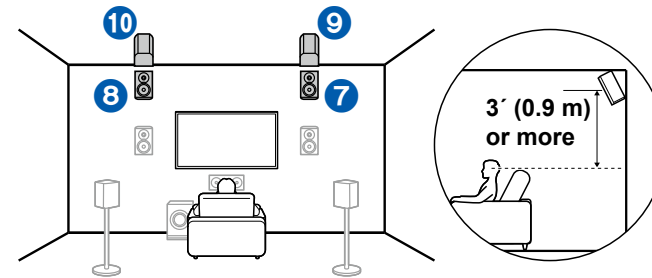


a: 22° to 30°, b: 120°

Install the front high speakers immediately above the front speakers minimum of 3'/0.9 m higher, and tilted so they will point toward the listener. When the front high speakers are used in front, the combination of the height speakers at the rear can be selected from the following 4 examples shown at the right.

7,8 Front High Speakers

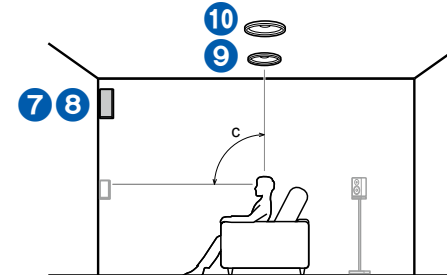
(Example 1) Use rear high speakers at the rear



The width between the rear high speakers should match the one for the front speakers, and they should be installed minimum of 3'/0.9 m higher than the front speakers, and tilted so they will point toward the listener.

9,10 Rear High Speakers

(Example 2) Use top middle speakers at the rear



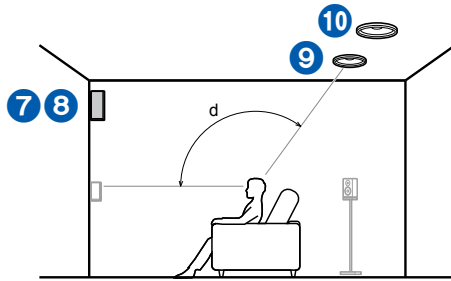
c: 65° to 100°

The top middle speakers are installed on the ceiling immediately above the listening position, and the width between the left and right speakers is optimal to match the one for the front speakers.

9,10 Top Middle Speakers

**Speaker Layouts and Selectable Listening Modes ( →p136)**

**(Example 3) Use top rear speakers at the rear**

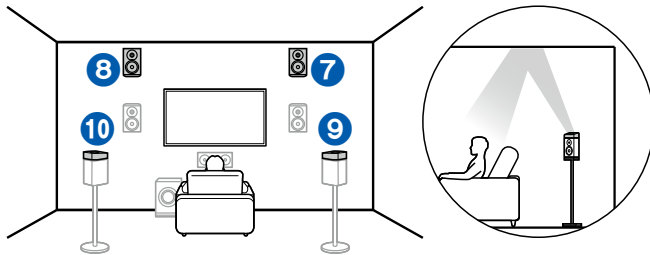


d: 125° to 150°

The top rear speakers are installed on the ceiling at rear of the listening position, and the width between the left and right speakers is optimal to match the one for the front speakers.

9,10 Top Rear Speakers

**(Example 4) Use Dolby Enabled Speakers (Surround) at the rear**



The Dolby enabled speakers are the special speaker that the sound is emitted toward the ceiling, and have the effect the sound to come from above by reflecting the sound on the ceiling.

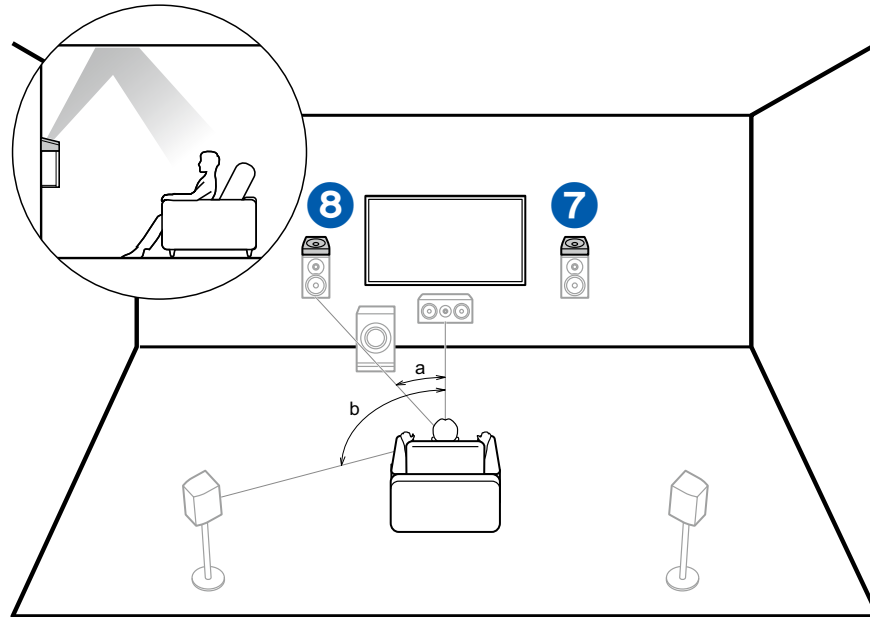
The Dolby enabled speakers (surround) are installed on top of the surround speakers.

9,10 Dolby Enabled Speakers (Surround)

**□ Speaker Layouts and Selectable Listening Modes ( →[p136](#))**

**Combination example when Dolby Enabled Speakers (Front) are used at the front**

About the Dolby enabled speakers (front)



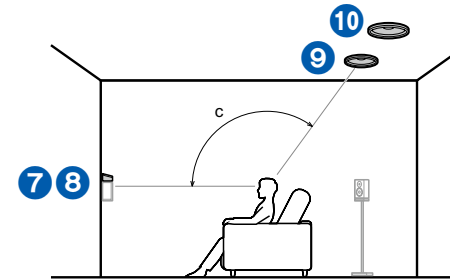
a: 22° to 30°, b: 120°

The Dolby enabled speakers are the special speaker that the sound is emitted toward the ceiling, and have the effect the sound to come from above by reflecting the sound on the ceiling.

The Dolby enabled speakers (front) are installed on top of the front speakers. When the Dolby enabled speakers (front) are used in front, the combination of the height speakers at the rear can be selected from the following 3 examples shown at the right.

7,8 Dolby Enabled Speakers (Front)

(Example 1) Use top rear speakers at the rear

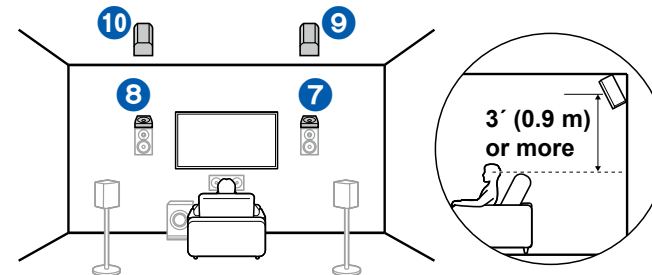


c: 125° to 150°

The top rear speakers are installed on the ceiling at rear of the listening position, and the width between the left and right speakers is optimal to match the one for the front speakers.

9,10 Top Rear Speakers

(Example 2) Use rear high speakers at the rear

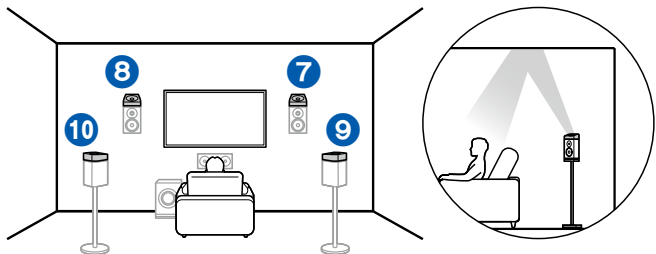


The width between the rear high speakers should match the one for the front speakers, and they should be installed minimum of 3' / 0.9 m higher than the front speakers, and tilted so they will point toward the listener.

9,10 Rear High Speakers

**Speaker Layouts and Selectable Listening Modes ( →p136)**

**(Example 3) Use Dolby Enabled Speakers (Surround) at the rear**



The Dolby enabled speakers are the special speaker that the sound is emitted toward the ceiling, and have the effect the sound to come from above by reflecting the sound on the ceiling.

The Dolby enabled speakers (surround) are installed on top of the surround speakers.

9,10 Dolby Enabled Speakers (Surround)

**Speaker Layouts and Selectable Listening Modes ( →[p136](#))**



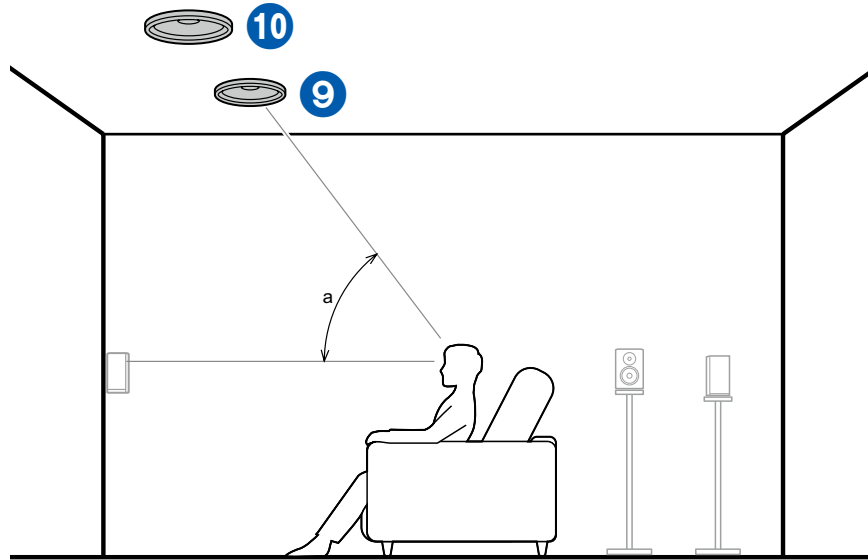
### ■ 7.1.4 Channel System

A 7.1.4 Channel System is a speaker layout combining 2 sets of the height speakers, 1 set of left and right at the front and 1 set of left and right at the rear, to the basic 7.1 Channel System ( → [p20](#)). Installing the height speakers will enrich the sound field feeling in the upper space. Combination of 2 height speakers can be selected from following.

- ❑ **Combination example when Top Front Speakers are used at the front ( → [p38](#))**
- ❑ **Combination example when Top Middle Speakers are used at the front ( → [p40](#))**
- ❑ **Combination example when Front High Speakers are used at the front ( → [p41](#))**
- ❑ **Combination example when Dolby Enabled Speakers (Front) are used at the front ( → [p44](#))**

**Combination example when Top Front Speakers are used at the front**

About the top front speakers

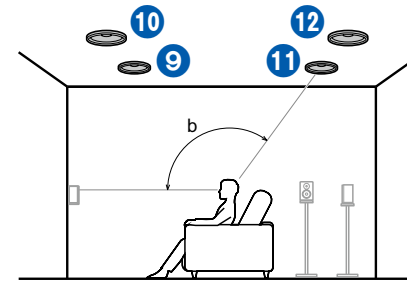


a: 30° to 55°

The top front speakers are installed on the ceiling at front of the listening position, and the width between the left and right speakers is optimal to match the one for the front speakers. When the top front speakers are used in front, the combination of the height speakers at the rear can be selected from the following 4 examples shown at the right.

9,10 Top Front Speakers

(Example 1) Use top rear speakers at the rear



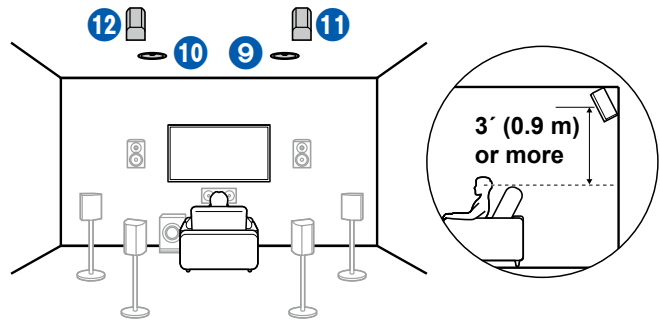
b: 125° to 150°

The top rear speakers are installed on the ceiling at rear of the listening position, and the width between the left and right speakers is optimal to match the one for the front speakers.

11,12 Top Rear Speakers

**Speaker Layouts and Selectable Listening Modes ( →[p136](#))**

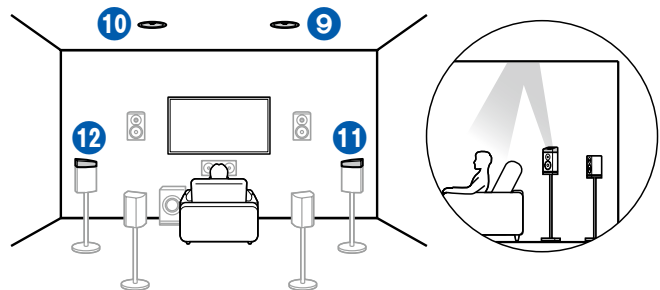
**(Example 2) Use rear high speakers at the rear**



The width between the rear high speakers should match the one for the front speakers, and they should be installed minimum of 3'/0.9 m higher than the front speakers, and tilted so they will point toward the listener.

11,12 Rear High Speakers

**(Example 3) Use Dolby Enabled Speakers (Surround) at the rear**

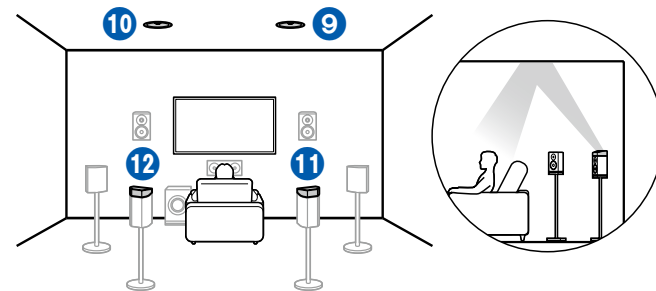


The Dolby enabled speakers are the special speaker that the sound is emitted toward the ceiling, and have the effect the sound to come from above by reflecting the sound on the ceiling.

The Dolby enabled speakers (surround) are installed on top of the surround speakers.

11,12 Dolby Enabled Speakers (Surround)

**(Example 4) Use Dolby Enabled Speakers (Surround Back) at the rear**



The Dolby enabled speakers are the special speaker that the sound is emitted toward the ceiling, and have the effect the sound to come from above by reflecting the sound on the ceiling.

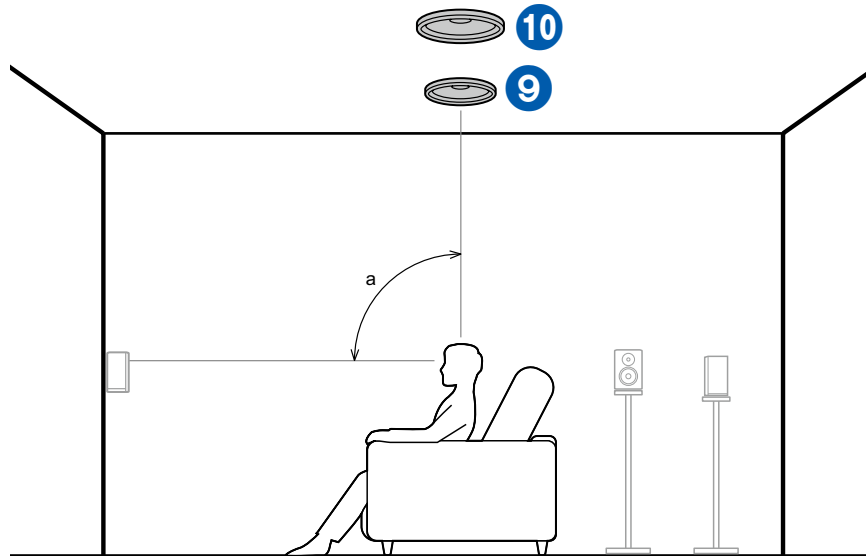
The Dolby enabled speakers (surround back) are installed on top of the surround back speakers.

11,12 Dolby Enabled Speakers (Surround Back)

**□ Speaker Layouts and Selectable Listening Modes ( →[p136](#))**

**Combination example when Top Middle Speakers are used at the front**

About the top middle speakers

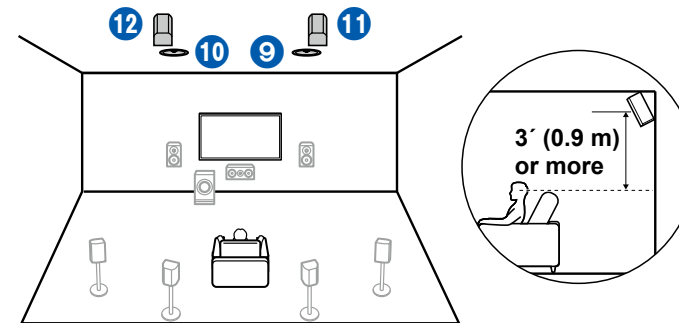


a: 65° to 100°

The top middle speakers are installed on the ceiling immediately above the listening position, and the width between the left and right speakers is optimal to match the one for the front speakers. When the top middle speakers are used in front, the rear high speakers in the figure at the right can be used at the rear.

9,10 Top Middle Speakers

Use rear high speakers at the rear



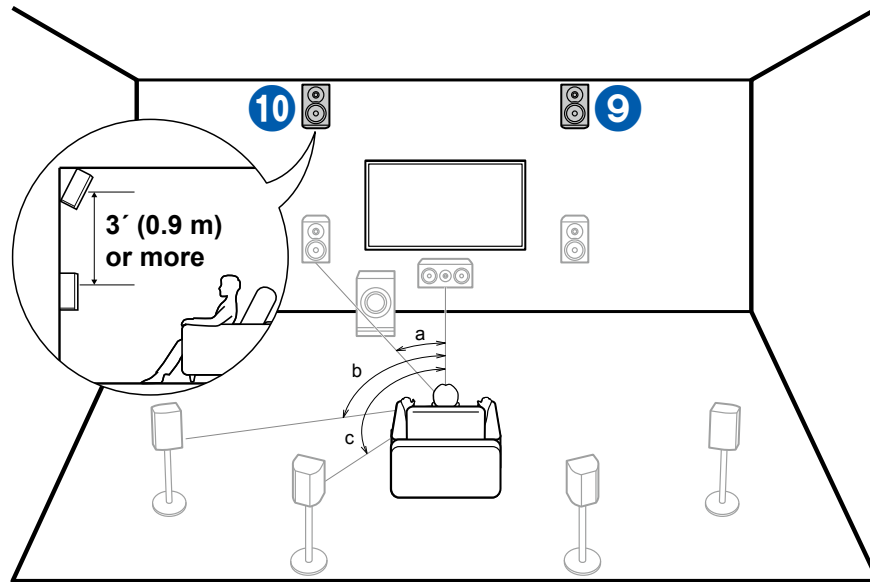
The width between the rear high speakers should match the one for the front speakers, and they should be installed minimum of 3'/0.9 m higher than the front speakers, and tilted so they will point toward the listener.

11,12 Rear High Speakers

**Speaker Layouts and Selectable Listening Modes ( →[p136](#))**

**Combination example when Front High Speakers are used at the front**

About the front high speakers

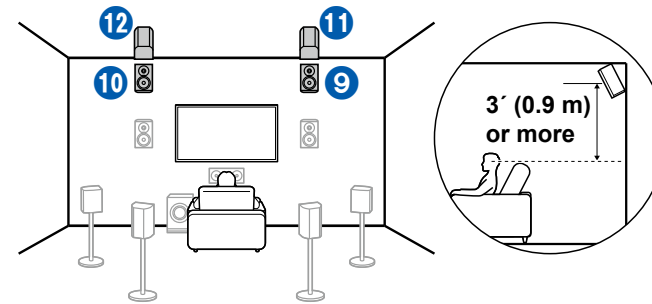


a: 22° to 30°, b: 90° to 110°, c: 135° to 150°

Install the front high speakers immediately above the front speakers minimum of 3'/0.9 m higher, and tilted so they will point toward the listener. When the front high speakers are used in front, the combination of the height speakers at the rear can be selected from the following 5 examples shown at the right.

9,10 Front High Speakers

(Example 1) Use rear high speakers at the rear

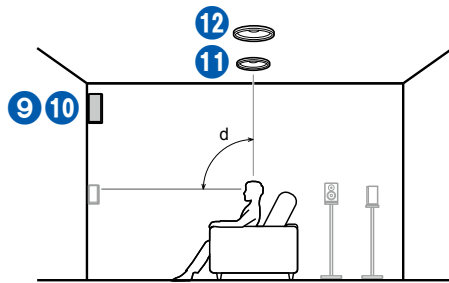


The width between the rear high speakers should match the one for the front speakers, and they should be installed minimum of 3'/0.9 m higher than the front speakers, and tilted so they will point toward the listener.

11,12 Rear High Speakers

**Speaker Layouts and Selectable Listening Modes ( →p136)**

**(Example 2) Use top middle speakers at the rear**

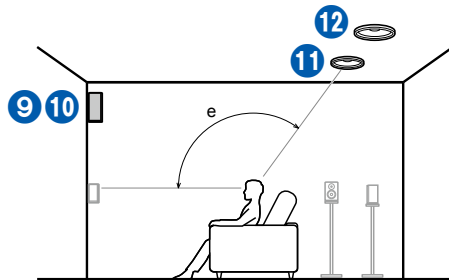


d: 65° to 100°

The top middle speakers are installed on the ceiling immediately above the listening position, and the width between the left and right speakers is optimal to match the one for the front speakers.

11,12 Top Middle Speakers

**(Example 3) Use top rear speakers at the rear**

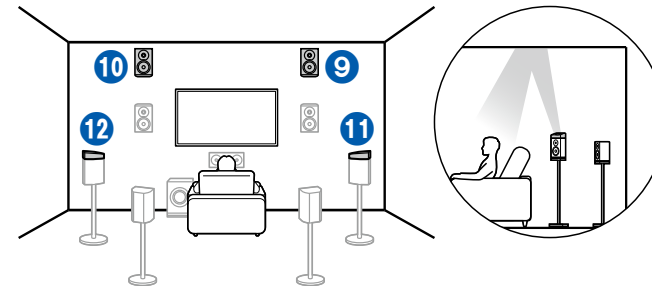


e: 125° to 150°

The top rear speakers are installed on the ceiling at rear of the listening position, and the width between the left and right speakers is optimal to match the one for the front speakers.

11,12 Top Rear Speakers

**(Example 4) Use Dolby Enabled Speakers (Surround) at the rear**



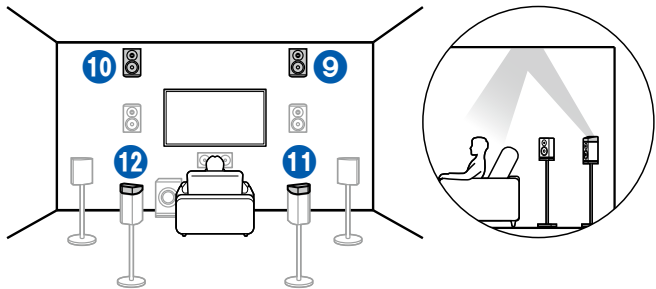
The Dolby enabled speakers are the special speaker that the sound is emitted toward the ceiling, and have the effect the sound to come from above by reflecting the sound on the ceiling.

The Dolby enabled speakers (surround) are installed on top of the surround speakers.

11,12 Dolby Enabled Speakers (Surround)

**□ Speaker Layouts and Selectable Listening Modes ( →[p136](#))**

(Example 5) Use Dolby Enabled Speakers (Surround Back) at the rear



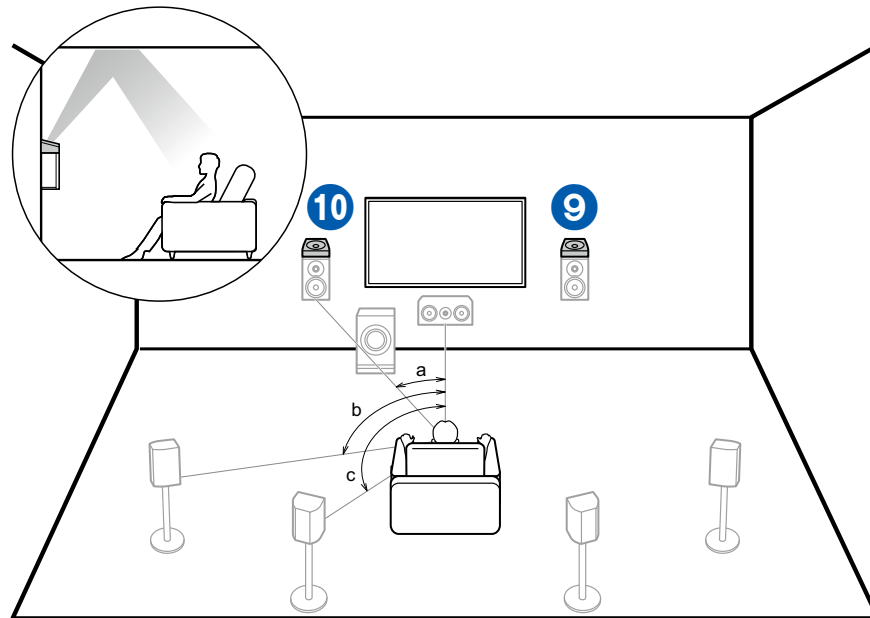
The Dolby enabled speakers are the special speaker that the sound is emitted toward the ceiling, and have the effect the sound to come from above by reflecting the sound on the ceiling.  
 The Dolby enabled speakers (surround back) are installed on top of the surround back speakers.

11,12 Dolby Enabled Speakers (Surround Back)

**Speaker Layouts and Selectable Listening Modes ( →[p136](#))**

**Combination example when Dolby Enabled Speakers (Front) are used at the front**

About the Dolby enabled speakers (front)



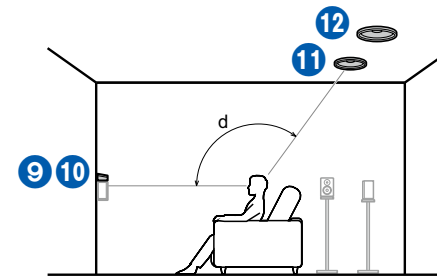
a: 22° to 30°, b: 90° to 110°, c: 135° to 150°

The Dolby enabled speakers are the special speaker that the sound is emitted toward the ceiling, and have the effect the sound to come from above by reflecting the sound on the ceiling.

The Dolby enabled speakers (front) are installed on top of the front speakers. When the Dolby enabled speakers (front) are used in front, the combination of the height speakers at the rear can be selected from the following 4 examples shown at the right.

9,10 Dolby Enabled Speakers (Front)

(Example 1) Use top rear speakers at the rear



d: 125° to 150°

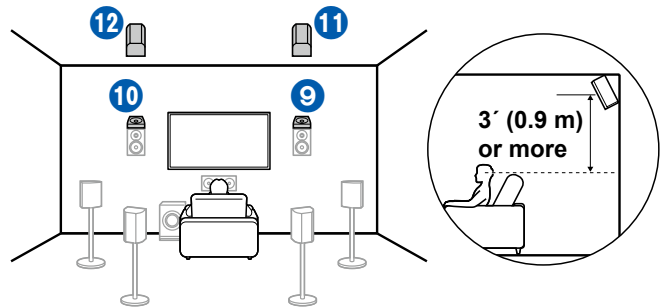
The top rear speakers are installed on the ceiling at rear of the listening position, and the width between the left and right speakers is optimal to match the one for the front speakers.

11,12 Top Rear Speakers

**Speaker Layouts and Selectable Listening Modes ( →p136)**



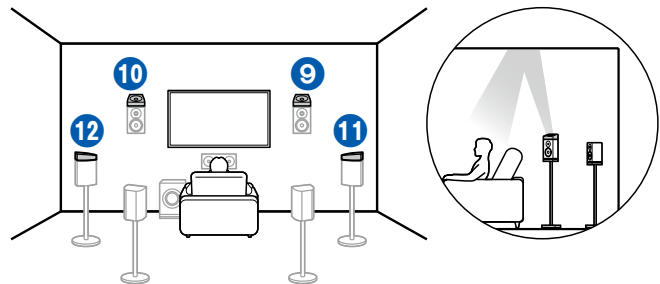
**(Example 2) Use rear high speakers at the rear**



The width between the rear high speakers should match the one for the front speakers, and they should be installed minimum of 3'/0.9 m higher than the front speakers, and tilted so they will point toward the listener.

11,12 Rear High Speakers

**(Example 3) Use Dolby Enabled Speakers (Surround) at the rear**

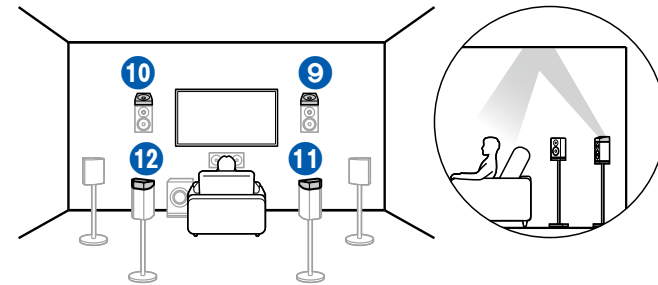


The Dolby enabled speakers are the special speaker that the sound is emitted toward the ceiling, and have the effect the sound to come from above by reflecting the sound on the ceiling.

The Dolby enabled speakers (surround) are installed on top of the surround speakers.

11,12 Dolby Enabled Speakers (Surround)

**(Example 4) Use Dolby Enabled Speakers (Surround Back) at the rear**



The Dolby enabled speakers are the special speaker that the sound is emitted toward the ceiling, and have the effect the sound to come from above by reflecting the sound on the ceiling.

The Dolby enabled speakers (surround back) are installed on top of the surround back speakers.

11,12 Dolby Enabled Speakers (Surround Back)

**□ Speaker Layouts and Selectable Listening Modes ( →[p136](#))**

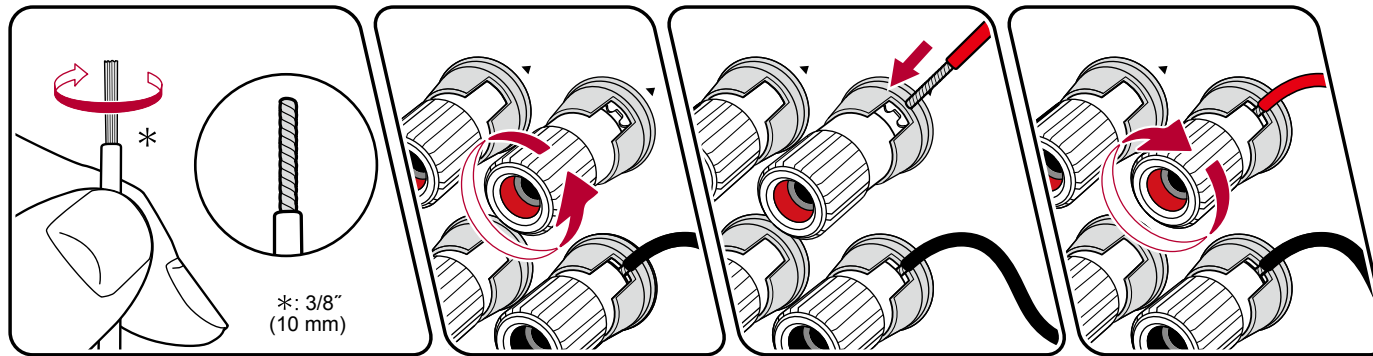
## Speaker Connections and "Speaker Setup" Settings

### Connections

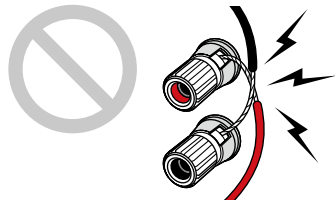
#### ■ (Note) Speaker Impedance

Connect speakers with an impedance of 4 Ω to 16 Ω.

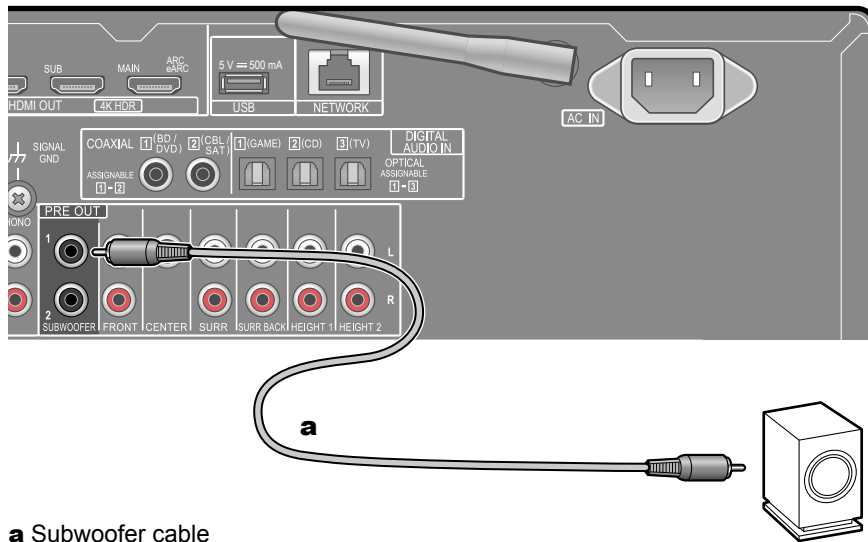
#### ■ Connect the Speaker Cables



Make correct connection between the unit's jacks and speaker's jacks (+ side to + side, and - side to - side) for each channel. If the connection is wrong, a bass sound will not be reproduced properly due to reverse phase. Twist the wires exposed from the tip of the speaker cable so that the wires do not stick out of the speaker terminal when connecting. If the exposed wires touch the rear panel, or the + side and - side wires touch each other, a malfunction may occur.



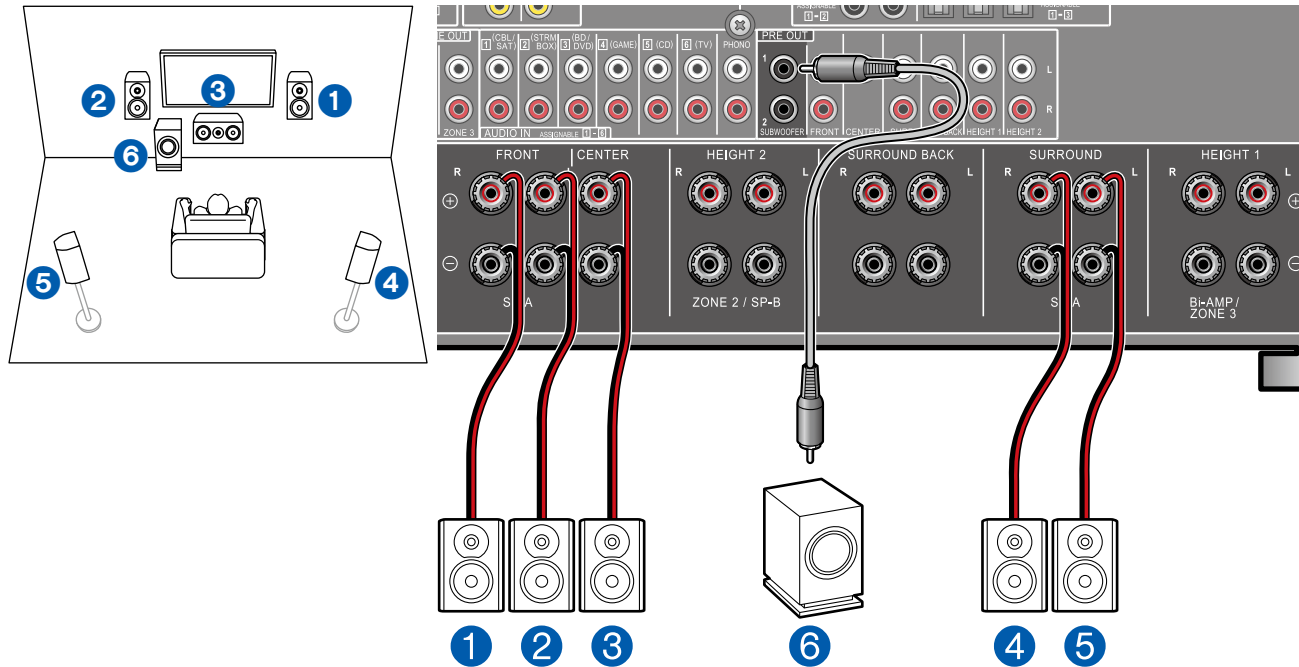
## ■ Connect the Subwoofer



### **a** Subwoofer cable

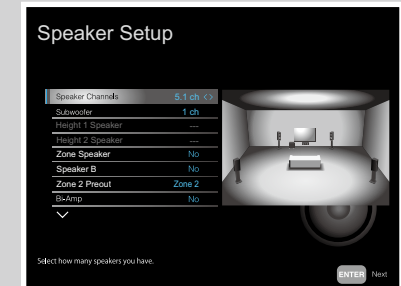
Connect a powered subwoofer with a subwoofer cable. Up to two powered subwoofers can be connected. You can set the volume levels of the 2 powered subwoofers to different levels. ( →[p162](#) )

## ■ 5.1 Channel System



This is a basic 5.1 Channel System. For details of the speaker layout, refer to "Speaker Installation" (→p19).

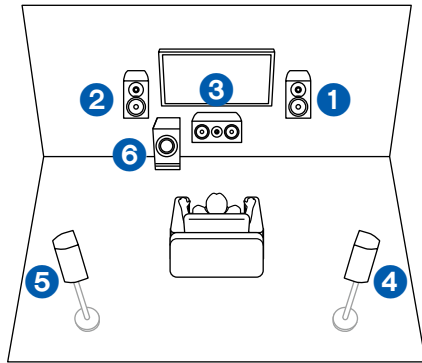
### ■ "Speaker Setup" settings during Initial Setup (→p203)



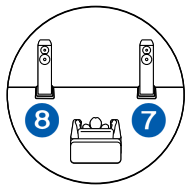
- Speaker Channels: **5.1 ch**
- Subwoofer: **1ch**
- Height 1 Speaker: **---**
- Height 2 Speaker: **---**
- Zone Speaker: **No**
- Speaker B: **No**
- Zone 2 Preout: **Set any value** (→p159)
- Bi-Amp: **No**
- Symmetry / All Channel Adjust / Front Align (→p203)

## ■ 5.1 Channel System + ZONE SPEAKER

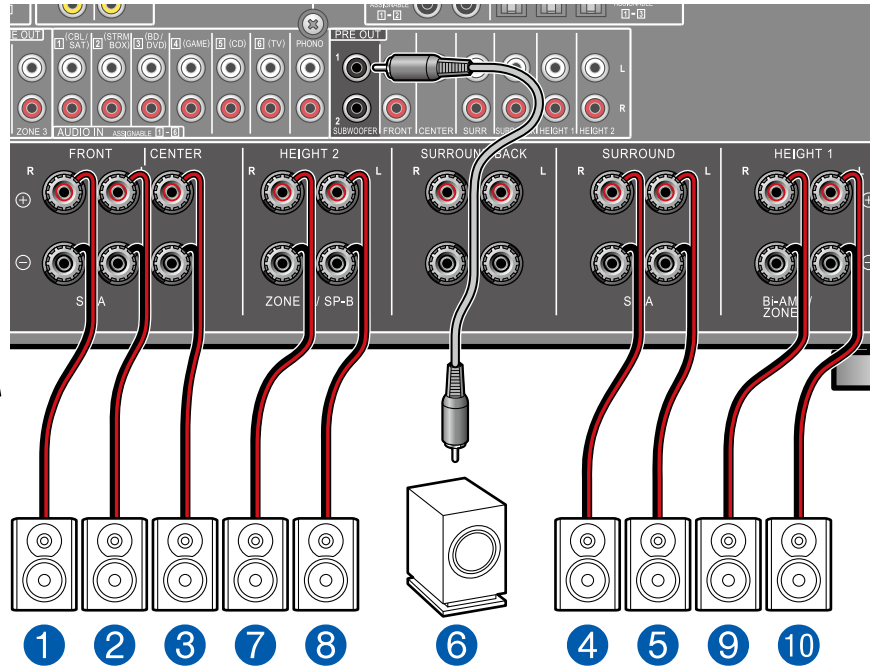
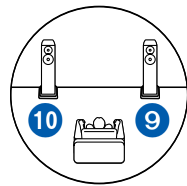
### MAIN ROOM



### ZONE 2



### ZONE 3

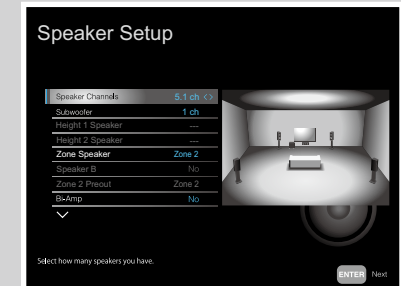


**MAIN ROOM:** This is a basic 5.1 Channel System. For details of the speaker layout, refer to "Speaker Installation" ( → [p19](#)).

**ZONE 2/ZONE 3:** You can enjoy 2-ch audio in the separate room (ZONE 2/ZONE 3) while performing 5.1-ch playback in the main room (where this unit is located). The same source can be played back in the main room and ZONE 2/ZONE 3 simultaneously. Also, different sources can be played back in both rooms.

To output audio from an externally connected AV component to ZONE 3, use an analog audio cable for connection. Note that ZONE 3 output is not possible with the connection using a HDMI cable, digital coaxial cable, or digital optical cable.

### ■ "Speaker Setup" settings during Initial Setup ( → [p203](#))



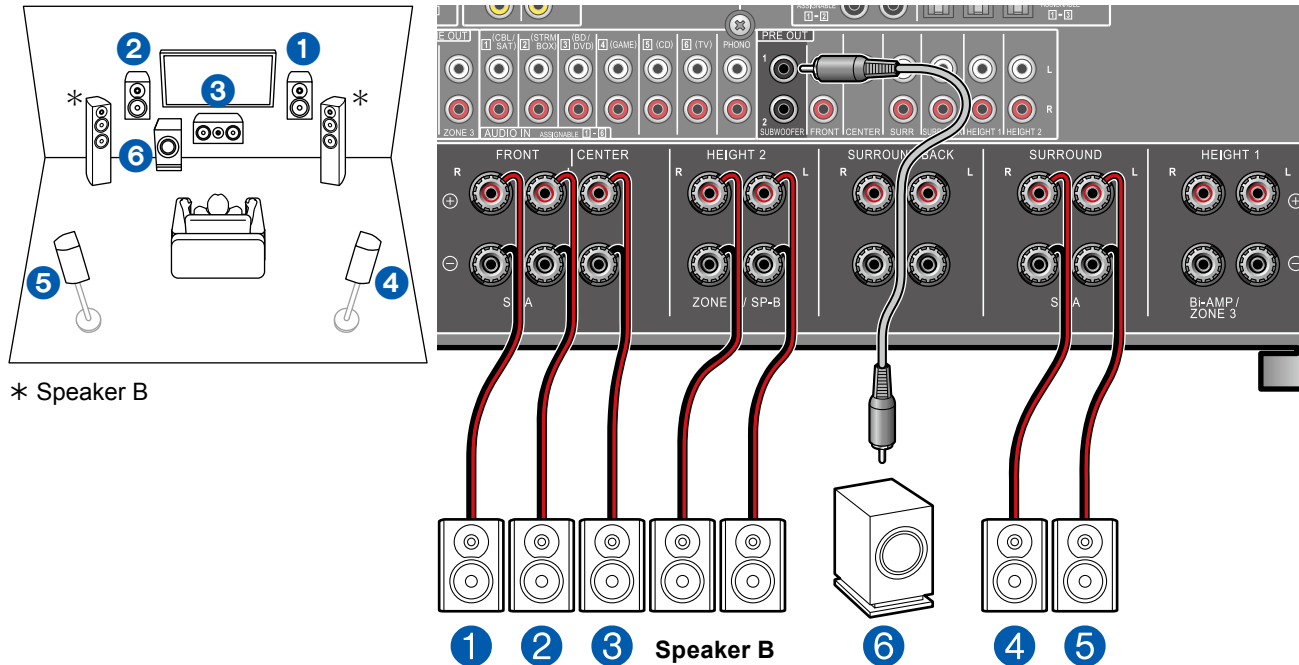
- Speaker Channels: 5.1 ch
- Subwoofer: 1ch
- Height 1 Speaker: ---
- Height 2 Speaker: ---
- Zone Speaker: Zone 2 or Zone 2 / Zone 3
- Speaker B: No
- Zone 2 Preout: Zone 2
- Bi-Amp: No
- Symmetry / All Channel Adjust / Front Align ( → [p203](#))



### Setup

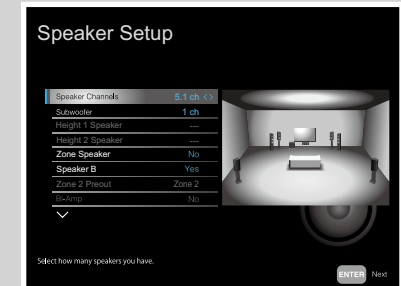
To output the video and audio of the HDMI input to ZONE 2, from the Home screen, set "System Setup" - "Input/Output Assign" - "TV Out/OSD" - "Zone 2 HDMI" ( → [p153](#)) to "Use".

■ **5.1 Channel System + SPEAKER B**



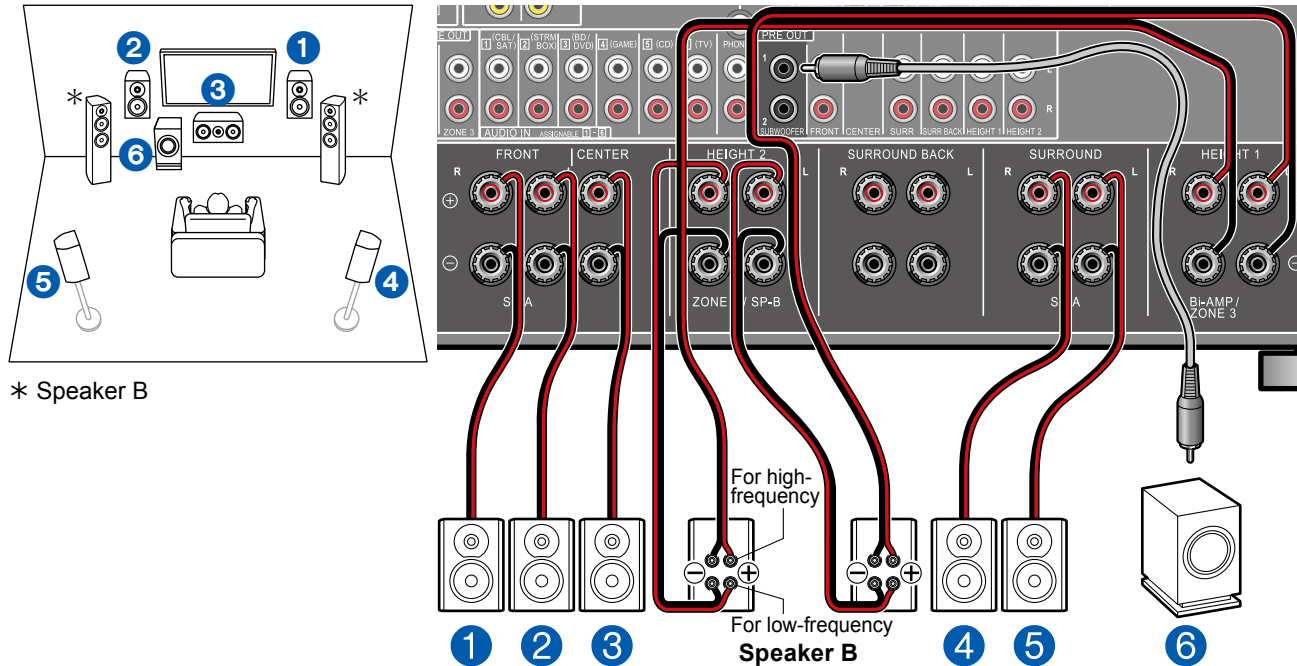
Apart from the main speaker system (Speaker A System), you can also connect another system of front speakers to be the Speaker B System and build a 5.1 Channel System (→p19). When connected as a Speaker B System, you can switch the same audio for output with Speaker A/B/A+B. Switch Speakers with "Speakers" in "AV Adjust" (→p199).

■ "Speaker Setup" settings during Initial Setup (→p203)

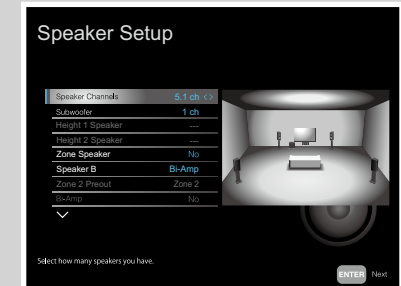


- Speaker Channels: **5.1 ch**
- Subwoofer: **1ch**
- Height 1 Speaker: **---**
- Height 2 Speaker: **---**
- Zone Speaker: **No**
- Speaker B: **Yes**
- Zone 2 Preout: **Zone 2**
- Bi-Amp: **No**
- Symmetry / All Channel Adjust / Front Align (→p203)

## ■ 5.1 Channel System + SPEAKER B (Bi-Amping the Speakers)



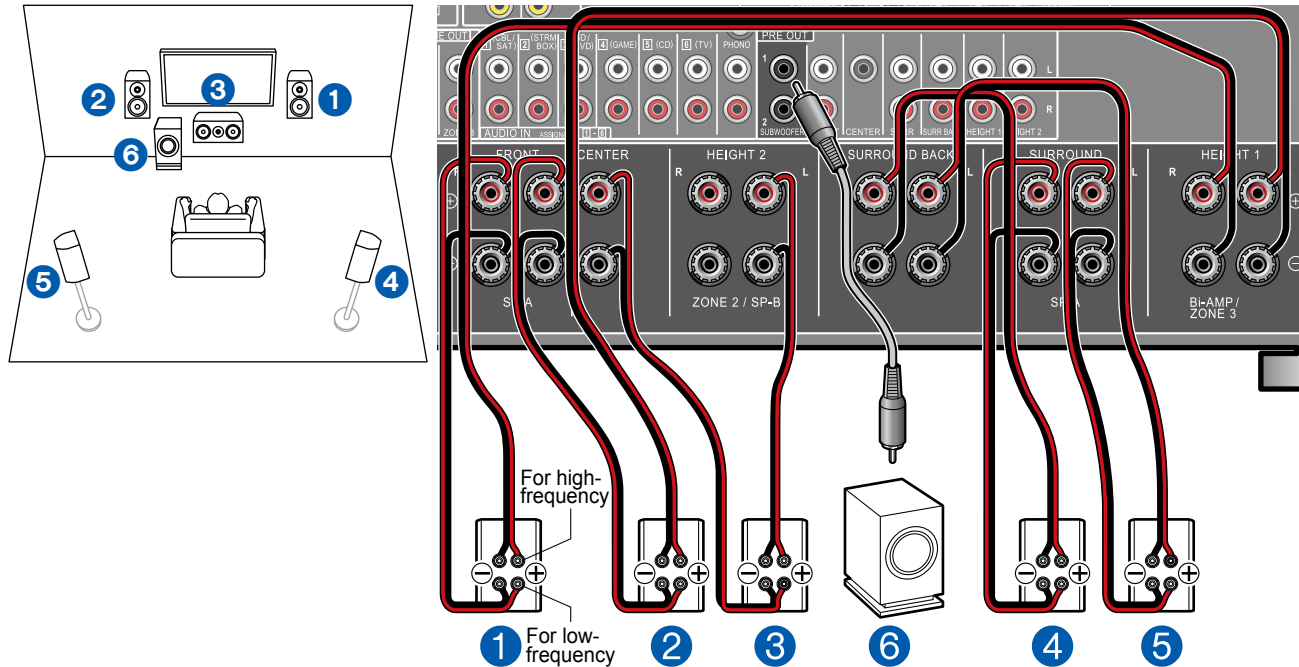
### ■ "Speaker Setup" settings during Initial Setup ( →p203)



- Speaker Channels: **5.1 ch**
- Subwoofer: **1ch**
- Height 1 Speaker: **---**
- Height 2 Speaker: **---**
- Zone Speaker: **No**
- Speaker B: **Bi-Amp**
- Zone 2 Preout: **Zone 2**
- Bi-Amp: **No**
- Symmetry / All Channel Adjust / Front Align ( →p203)

Apart from the main speaker system (Speaker A System), you can also connect another system of front speakers to be the Speaker B System and build a 5.1 Channel System ( →p19). When connected as a Speaker B System, you can switch the same audio for output with Speaker A/B/A+B. Switch Speakers with "Speakers" in "AV Adjust" ( →p199). You can connect a Speaker B System that support bi-amping to improve the quality of the bass and treble. Make sure you remove the jumper bar fitted between the woofer jacks and tweeter jacks of the bi-amping speakers. Also refer to the instruction manual for your speakers.

## ■ 5.1 Channel System (Bi-Amping the Speakers)

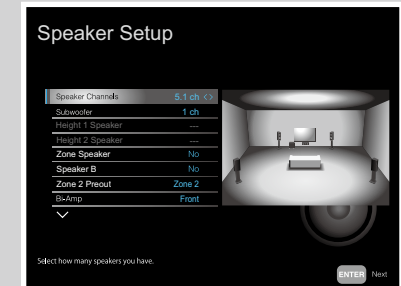


You can build a 5.1 Channel System (→p19) by connecting front speakers, a center speaker, and surround speakers that support Bi-Amping. The Bi-Amping connection can improve the quality of the low and high pitched ranges. Be sure to remove the jumper bar connecting between the woofer jacks and tweeter jacks of the Bi-Amping supported speakers. Refer to the instruction manual of your speakers as well.

The following shows the combinations you can connect with Bi-Amping speakers.

- Front speakers only
- Front speakers and center speaker
- Front speakers and surround speakers
- Center speaker and surround speakers
- Front speakers, center speaker, and surround speakers

### ■ "Speaker Setup" settings during Initial Setup (→p203)

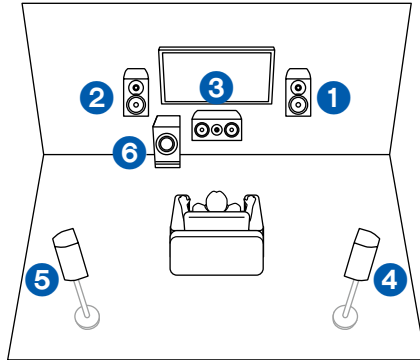


- Speaker Channels: **5.1 ch**
- Subwoofer: **1ch**
- Height 1 Speaker: **---**
- Height 2 Speaker: **---**
- Zone Speaker: **No**
- Speaker B: **No**
- Zone 2 Preout: **Set any value** (→p159)
- Bi-Amp: **Select from the Bi-Amping combinations actually connected.**
- Symmetry / All Channel Adjust / Front Align (→p203)

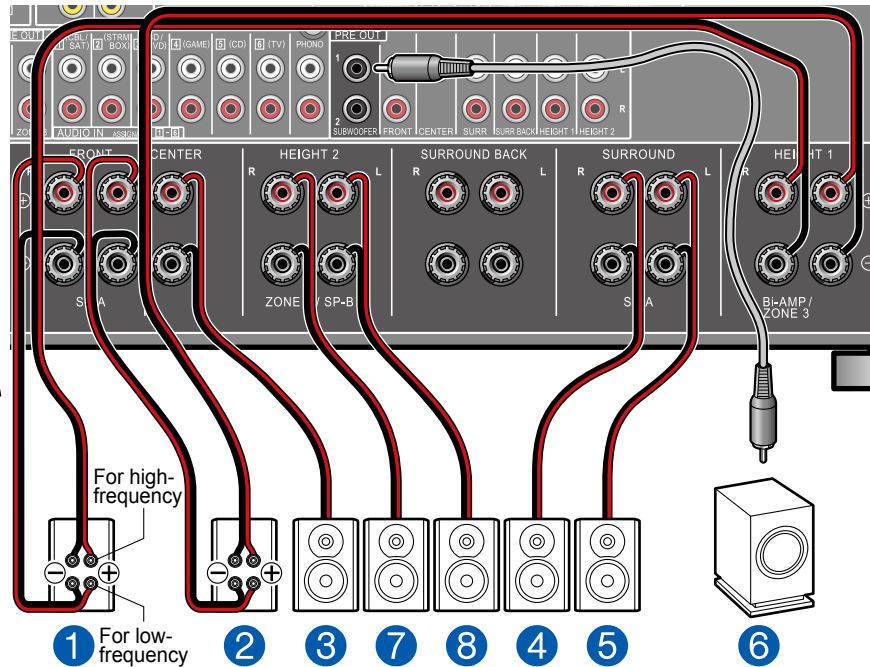
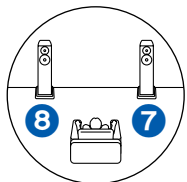


## ■ 5.1 Channel System (Bi-Amping the Speakers) + ZONE SPEAKER

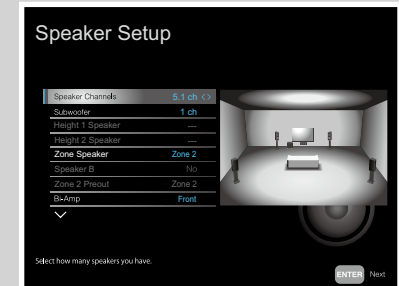
### MAIN ROOM



### ZONE 2



### ■ "Speaker Setup" settings during Initial Setup ( →p203)



- Speaker Channels: 5.1 ch
- Subwoofer: 1ch
- Height 1 Speaker: ---
- Height 2 Speaker: ---
- Zone Speaker: Zone 2
- Speaker B: No
- Zone 2 Preout: Zone 2
- Bi-Amp: Front
- Symmetry / All Channel Adjust / Front Align ( →p203)



### Setup

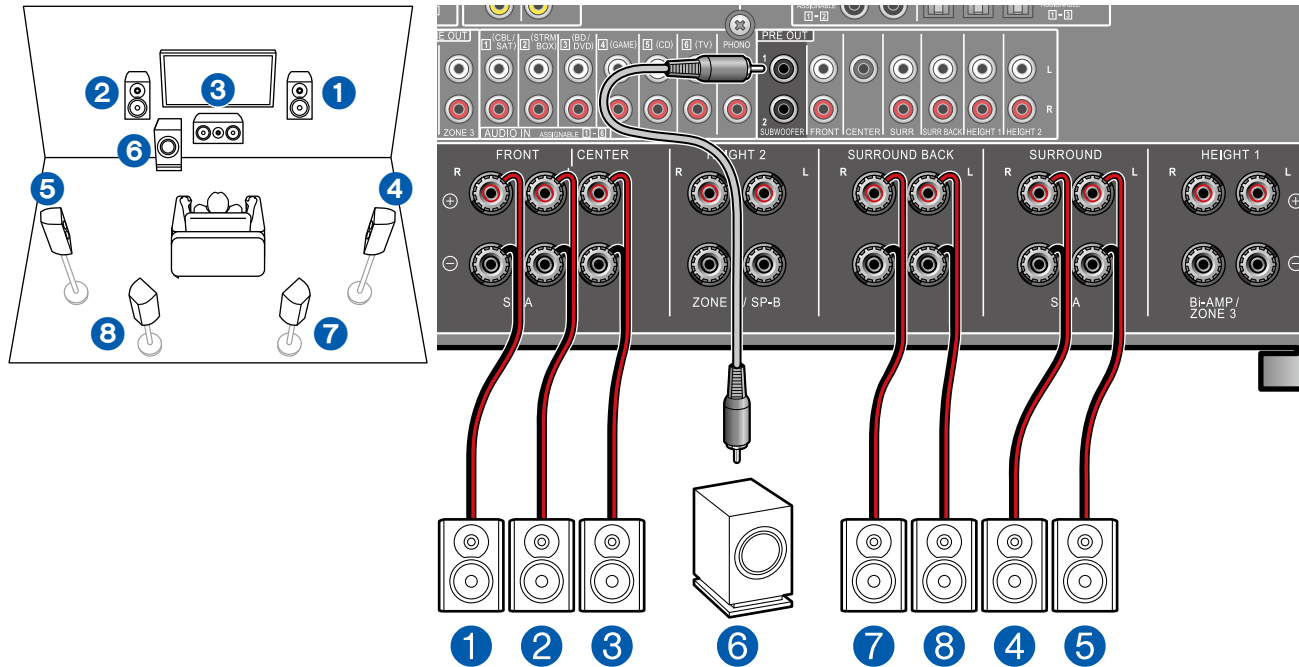
To output the video and audio of the HDMI input to ZONE 2, from the Home screen, set "System Setup" - "Input/Output Assign" - "TV Out/OSD" - "Zone 2 HDMI" ( → p153) to "Use".

You can configure a 5.1 Channel System ( →p19) by connecting front speakers that support Bi-Amping connection. The Bi-Amping connection can improve the quality of the low and high pitched ranges. Be sure to remove the jumper bar connecting between the woofer jacks and tweeter jacks of the Bi-Amping supported speakers. Refer to the instruction manual of your speakers as well.

**MAIN ROOM:** This is a basic 5.1 Channel System.

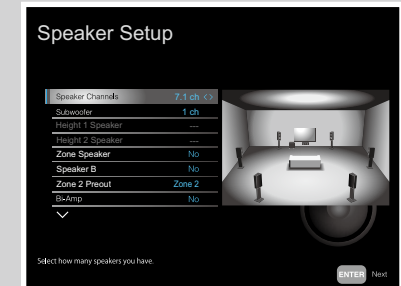
**ZONE 2:** You can enjoy 2-ch audio in the separate room (ZONE 2) while performing 5.1-ch playback in the main room (where this unit is located). The same source can be played back in the main room and ZONE 2 simultaneously. Also, different sources can be played back in both rooms.

## ■ 7.1 Channel System



This is a 7.1 Channel System that consists of the basic 5.1 Channel System and added surround back speakers. For details of the speaker layout, refer to "Speaker Installation" ( →p20).

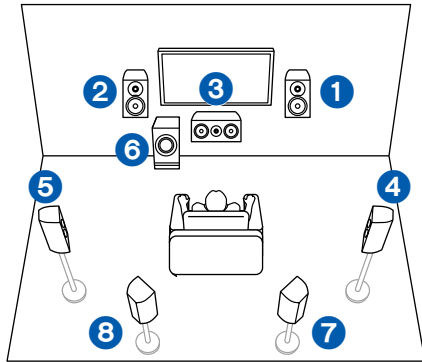
### ■ "Speaker Setup" settings during Initial Setup ( →p203)



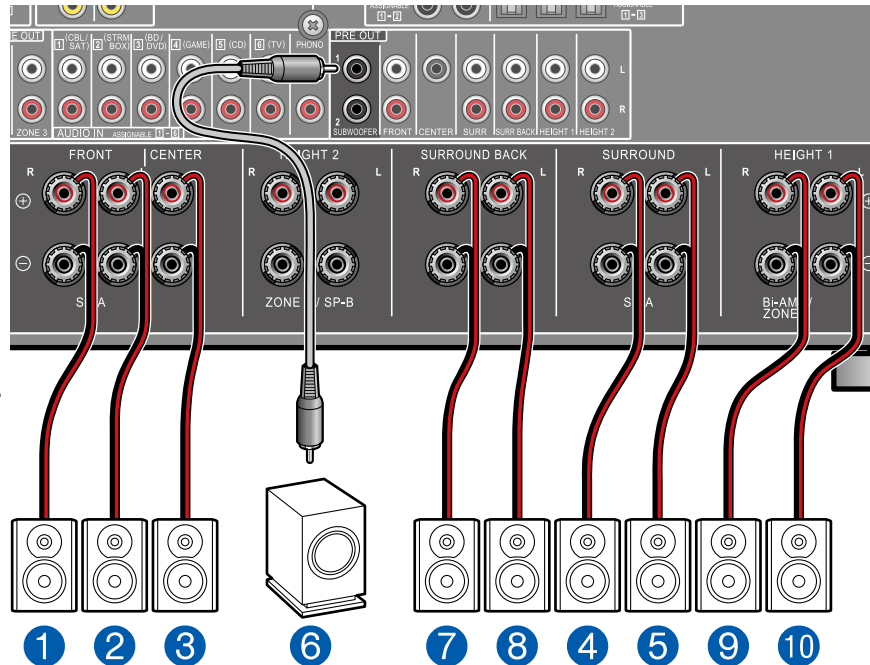
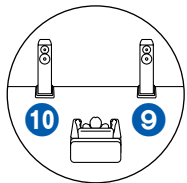
- Speaker Channels: **7.1 ch**
- Subwoofer: **1ch**
- Height 1 Speaker: **---**
- Height 2 Speaker: **---**
- Zone Speaker: **No**
- Speaker B: **No**
- Zone 2 Preout: **Set any value** ( →p159)
- Bi-Amp: **No**
- Symmetry / All Channel Adjust / Front Align ( →p203)

## ■ 7.1 Channel System + ZONE SPEAKER (ZONE 2)

### MAIN ROOM



### ZONE 2

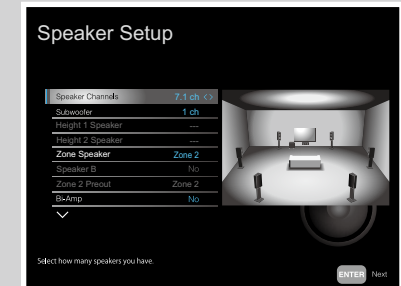


**MAIN ROOM:** This is a 7.1 Channel System that consists of the basic 5.1 Channel System and added surround back speakers. For details of the speaker layout, refer to "Speaker Installation" (→p20).

**ZONE 2:** You can enjoy 2-ch audio in the separate room (ZONE 2) while performing playback in the main room (where this unit is located). The same source can be played back in the main room and ZONE 2 simultaneously. Also, different sources can be played back in both rooms.

- If you have not connected ZONE 3 speakers in another room but have only connected ZONE 2 speakers, connect the ZONE 2 speakers to the HEIGHT 1 jacks.

### ■ "Speaker Setup" settings during Initial Setup (→p203)



- Speaker Channels: 7.1 ch
- Subwoofer: 1ch
- Height 1 Speaker: ---
- Height 2 Speaker: ---
- Zone Speaker: Zone 2
- Speaker B: No
- Zone 2 Preout: Zone 2
- Bi-Amp: No
- Symmetry / All Channel Adjust / Front Align (→p203)

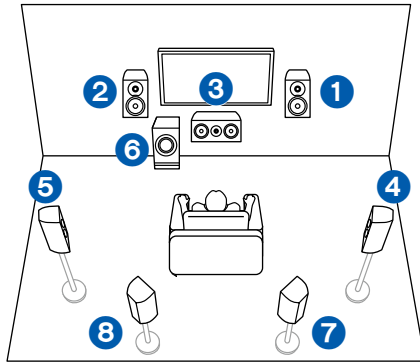


### Setup

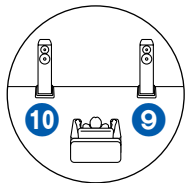
To output the video and audio of the HDMI input to ZONE 2, from the Home screen, set "System Setup" - "Input/Output Assign" - "TV Out/OSD" - "Zone 2 HDMI" (→p153) to "Use".

## ■ 7.1 Channel System + ZONE SPEAKER (ZONE 2/ZONE 3)

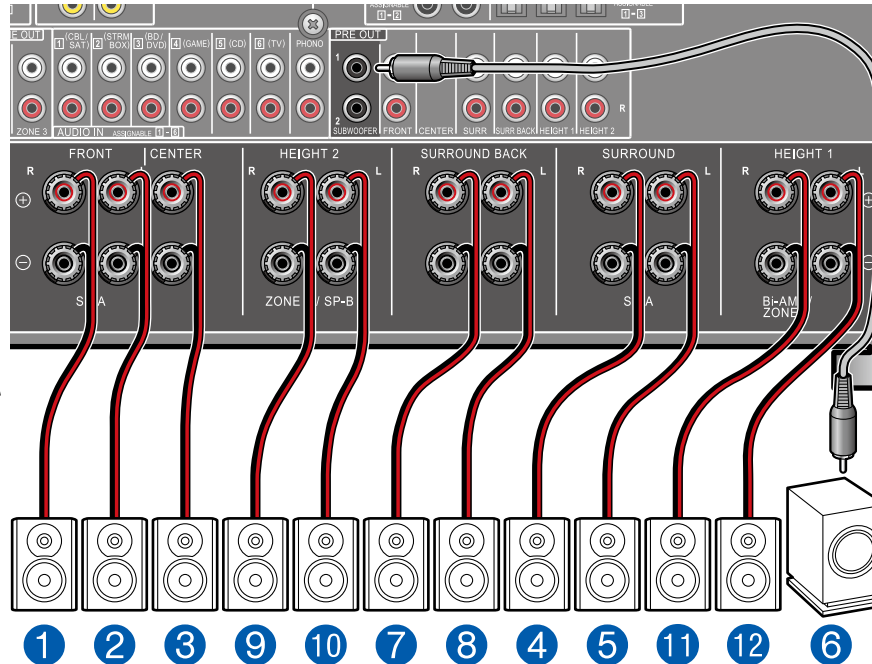
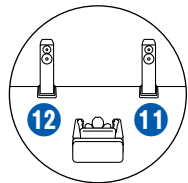
### MAIN ROOM



### ZONE 2



### ZONE 3

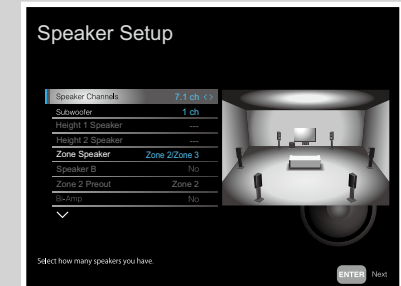


**MAIN ROOM:** This is a 7.1 Channel System that consists of the basic 5.1 Channel System and added surround back speakers. For details of the speaker layout, refer to "Speaker Installation" ( →p20).

**ZONE 2/ZONE 3:** You can enjoy 2-ch audio in the separate room (ZONE 2/ZONE 3) while performing playback in the main room (where this unit is located). The same source can be played back in the main room and ZONE 2/ZONE 3 simultaneously. Also, different sources can be played back in both rooms.

To output audio from an externally connected AV component to ZONE 3, use an analog audio cable for connection. Note that ZONE 3 output is not possible with the connection using a HDMI cable, digital coaxial cable, or digital optical cable.

### ■ "Speaker Setup" settings during Initial Setup ( →p203)



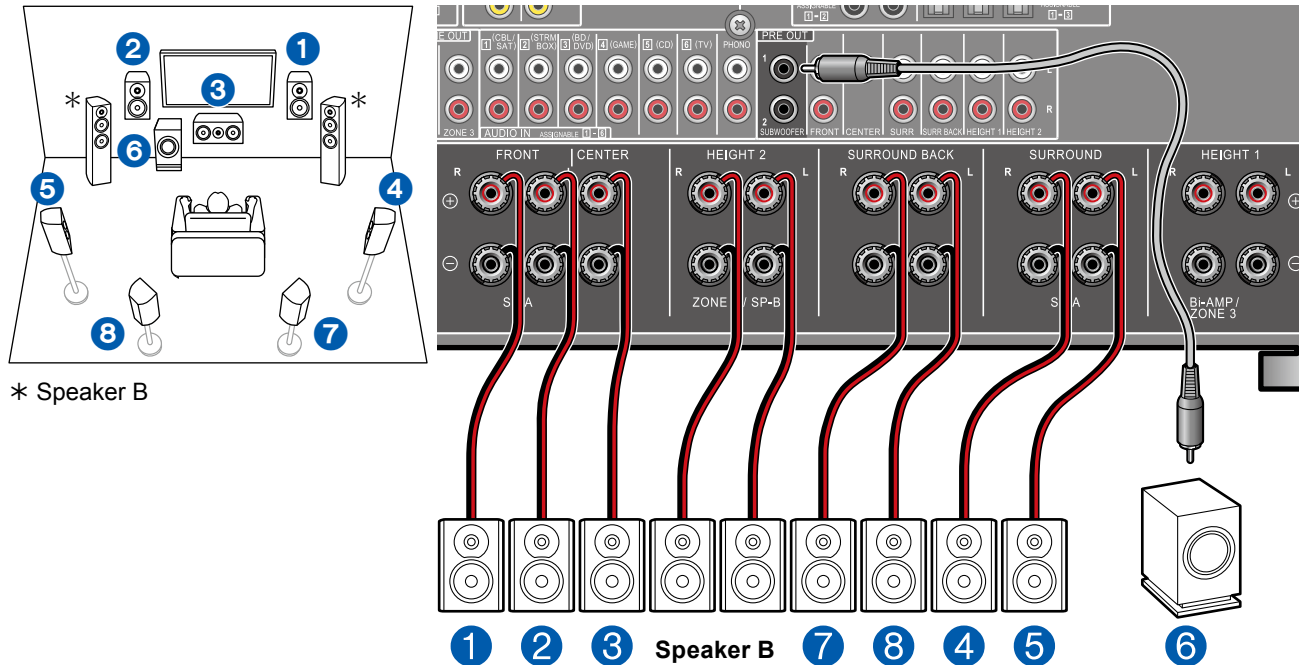
- Speaker Channels: 7.1 ch
- Subwoofer: 1ch
- Height 1 Speaker: ---
- Height 2 Speaker: ---
- Zone Speaker: Zone 2/Zone 3
- Speaker B: No
- Zone 2 Preout: Zone 2
- Bi-Amp: No
- Symmetry / All Channel Adjust / Front Align ( →p203)



### Setup

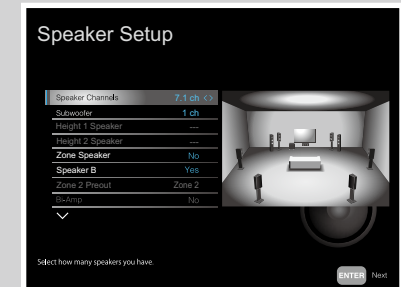
To output the video and audio of the HDMI input to ZONE 2, from the Home screen, set "System Setup" - "Input/Output Assign" - "TV Out/OSD" - "Zone 2 HDMI" ( → p153) to "Use".

## ■ 7.1 Channel System + SPEAKER B



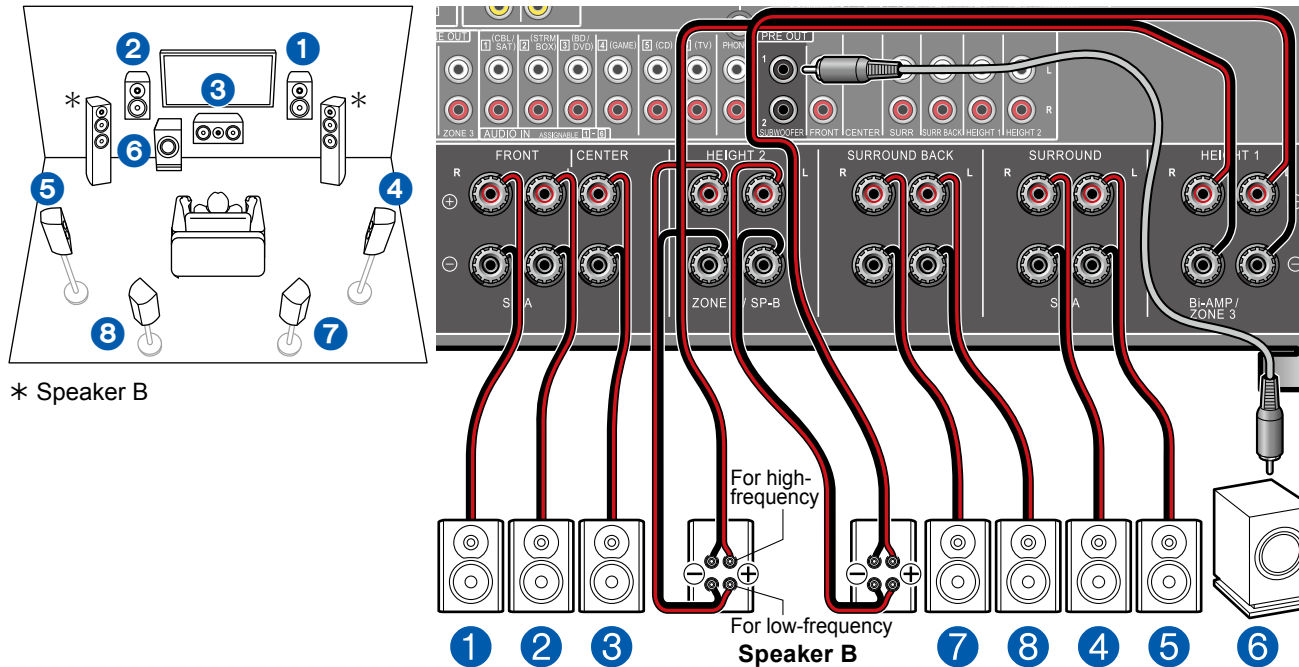
Apart from the main speaker system (Speaker A System), you can also connect another system of front speakers to be the Speaker B System and build a 7.1 Channel System (→p20). When connected as a Speaker B System, you can switch the same audio for output with Speaker A/B/A+B. Switch Speakers with "Speakers" in "AV Adjust" (→p199).

### ■ "Speaker Setup" settings during Initial Setup (→p203)



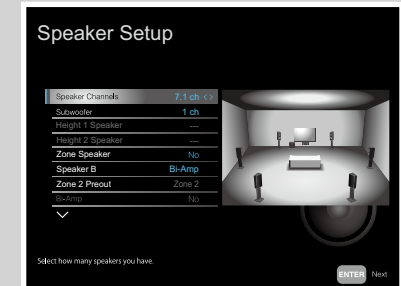
- Speaker Channels: **7.1 ch**
- Subwoofer: **1ch**
- Height 1 Speaker: **---**
- Height 2 Speaker: **---**
- Zone Speaker: **No**
- Speaker B: **Yes**
- Zone 2 Preout: **Zone 2**
- Bi-Amp: **No**
- Symmetry / All Channel Adjust / Front Align (→p203)

## ■ 7.1 Channel System + SPEAKER B (Bi-Amping the Speakers)



\* Speaker B

■ "Speaker Setup" settings during Initial Setup ( →p203)

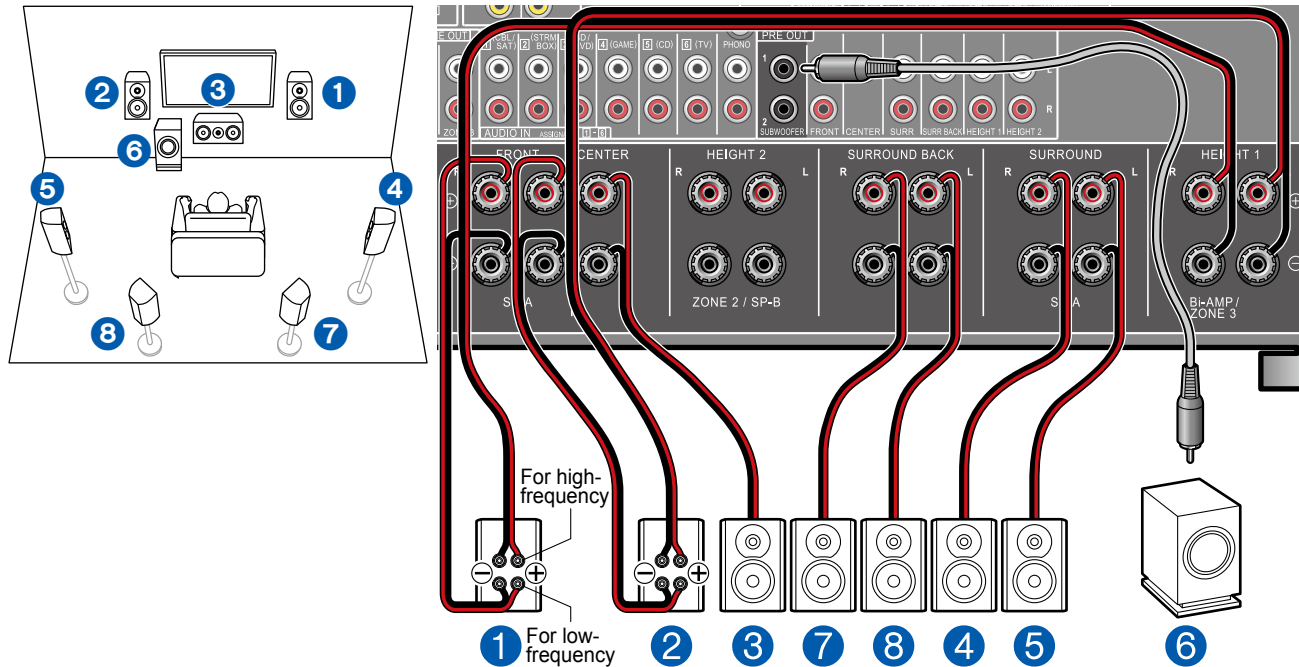


- Speaker Channels: 7.1 ch
- Subwoofer: 1ch
- Height 1 Speaker: ---
- Height 2 Speaker: ---
- Zone Speaker: No
- Speaker B: Bi-Amp
- Zone 2 Preout: Zone 2
- Bi-Amp: No
- Symmetry / All Channel Adjust / Front Align ( →p203)

Apart from the main speaker system (Speaker A System), you can also connect another system of front speakers to be the Speaker B System and build a 7.1 Channel System ( →p20). When connected as a Speaker B System, you can switch the same audio for output with Speaker A/B/A+B. Switch Speakers with "Speakers" in "AV Adjust" ( →p199). You can connect a Speaker B System that support bi-amping to improve the quality of the bass and treble. Make sure you remove the jumper bar fitted between the woofer jacks and tweeter jacks of the bi-amping speakers. Also refer to the instruction manual for your speakers.

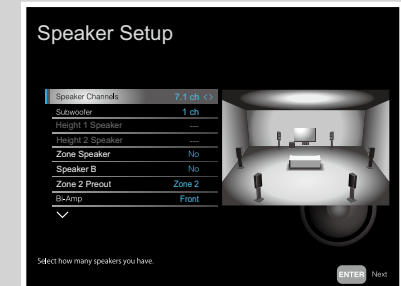


## ■ 7.1 Channel System (Bi-Amping the Speakers)



You can configure a 7.1 Channel System (→p20) by connecting front speakers that support Bi-Amping connection. The Bi-Amping connection can improve the quality of the low and high pitched ranges. Be sure to remove the jumper bar connecting between the woofer jacks and tweeter jacks of the Bi-Amping supported speakers. Refer to the instruction manual of your speakers as well.

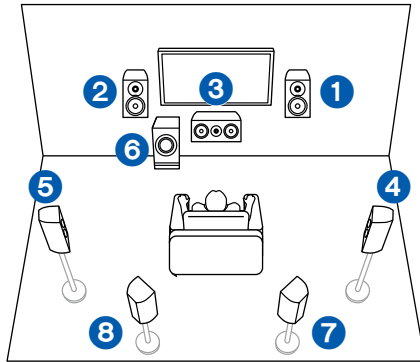
### ■ "Speaker Setup" settings during Initial Setup (→p203)



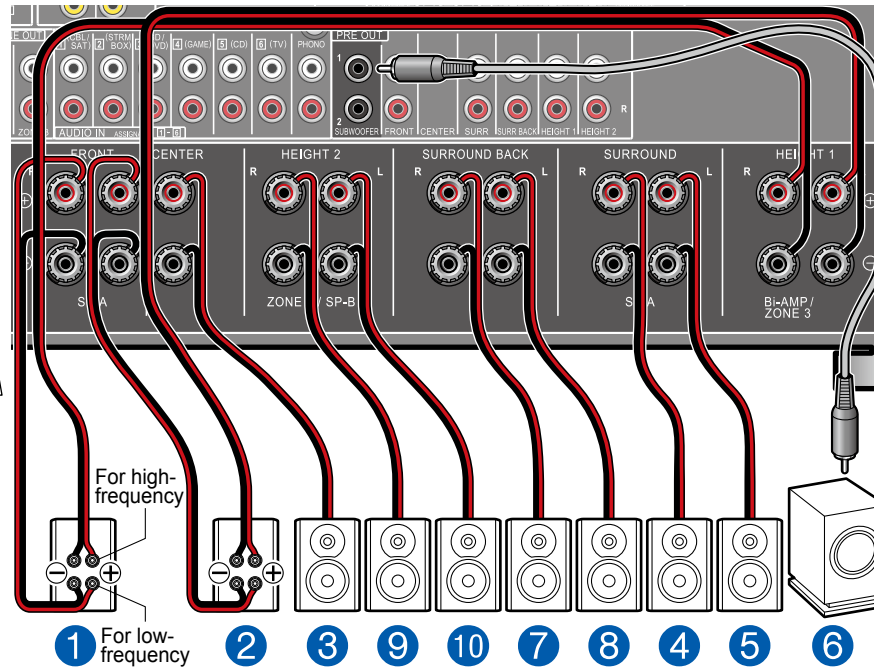
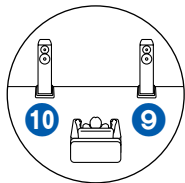
- Speaker Channels: **7.1 ch**
- Subwoofer: **1ch**
- Height 1 Speaker: **---**
- Height 2 Speaker: **---**
- Zone Speaker: **No**
- Speaker B: **No**
- Zone 2 Preout: **Set any value** (→p159)
- Bi-Amp: **Front**
- Symmetry / All Channel Adjust / Front Align (→p203)

## ■ 7.1 Channel System (Bi-Amping the Speakers) + ZONE SPEAKER

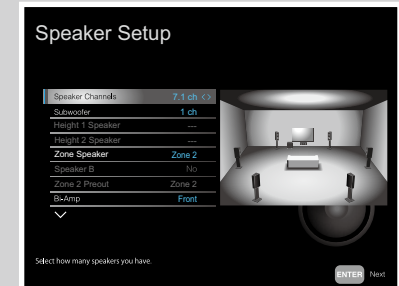
### MAIN ROOM



### ZONE 2



### ■ "Speaker Setup" settings during Initial Setup ( →p203)



- Speaker Channels: **7.1 ch**
- Subwoofer: **1ch**
- Height 1 Speaker: **---**
- Height 2 Speaker: **---**
- Zone Speaker: **Zone 2**
- Speaker B: **No**
- Zone 2 Preout: **Zone 2**
- Bi-Amp: **Front**
- Symmetry / All Channel Adjust / Front Align ( →p203)

You can configure a 7.1 Channel System ( →p20) by connecting front speakers that support Bi-Amping connection.

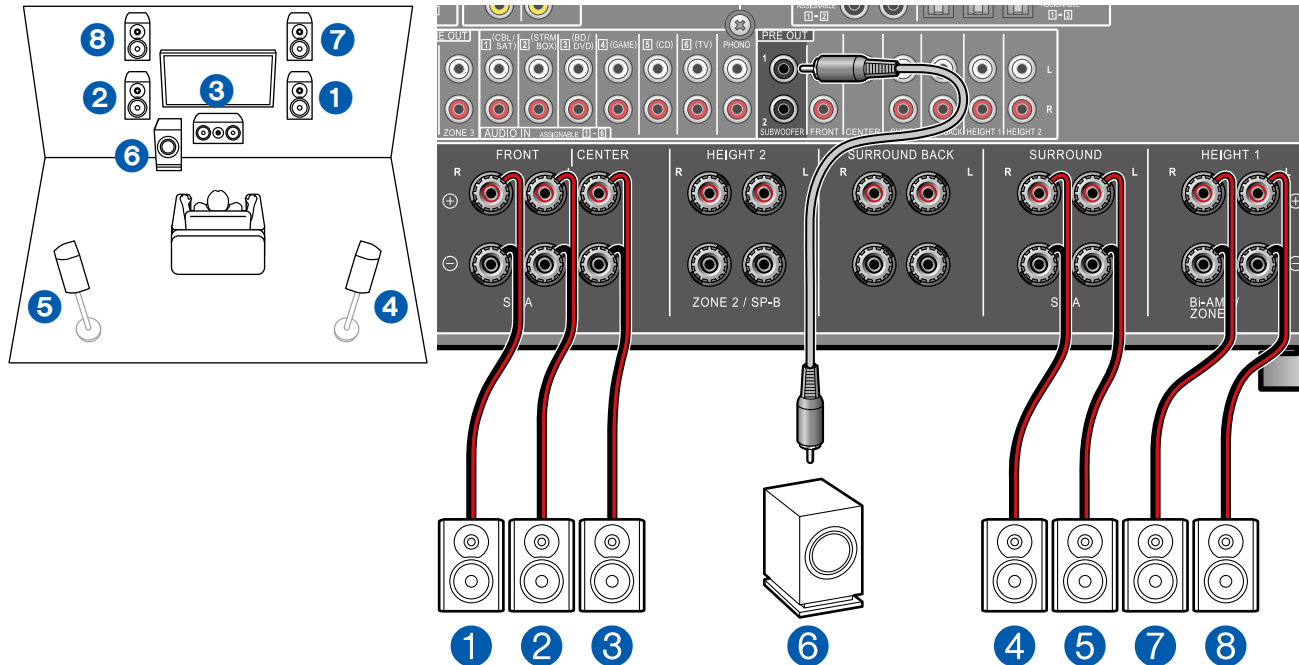
The Bi-Amping connection can improve the quality of the low and high pitched ranges. Be sure to remove the jumper bar connecting between the woofer jacks and tweeter jacks of the Bi-Amping supported speakers. Refer to the instruction manual of your speakers as well.

**MAIN ROOM:** This is a 7.1 Channel System that consists of the basic 5.1 Channel System and added surround back speakers.

**ZONE 2:** You can enjoy 2-ch audio in the separate room (ZONE 2) while performing playback in the main room (where this unit is located). The same source can be played back in the main room and ZONE 2 simultaneously. Also, different sources can be played back in both rooms.



## ■ 5.1.2 Channel System

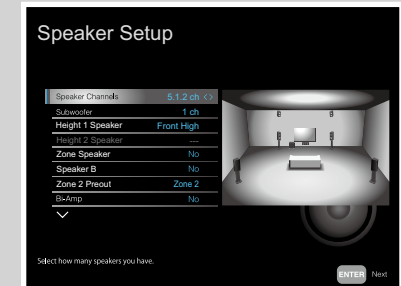


This is a combination of the 5.1 Channel System and front high speakers. A front high speaker is a type of height speaker.

You can select only one set of height speakers from the following three types for connection.

- Front High Speakers/Rear High Speakers Installation Example ( →p22)
- Ceiling Speakers Installation Example ( →p23)
- Dolby Enabled Speakers (Dolby Speakers) Installation Example ( →p24)

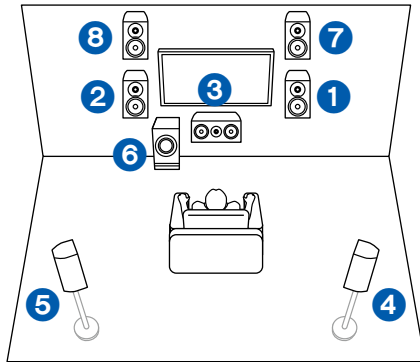
### ■ "Speaker Setup" settings during Initial Setup ( →p203)



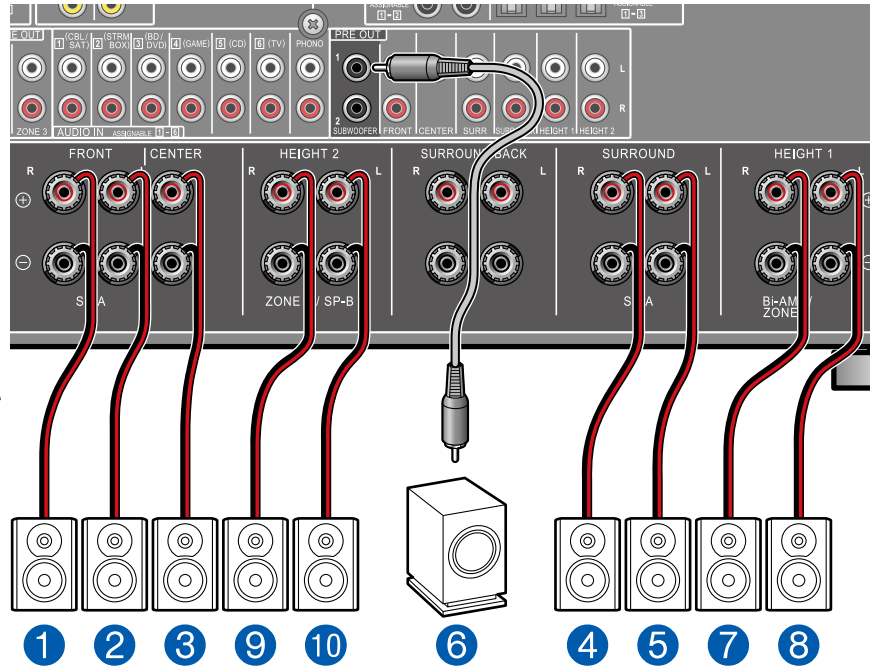
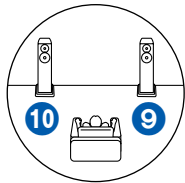
- Speaker Channels: **5.1.2 ch**
- Subwoofer: **1ch**
- Height 1 Speaker: **Select the type of height speaker actually installed.**
- Height 2 Speaker: **---**
- Zone Speaker: **No**
- Speaker B: **No**
- Zone 2 Preout: **Set any value** ( →p159)
- Bi-Amp: **No**
- Symmetry / All Channel Adjust / Front Align ( →p203)

## 5.1.2 Channel System + ZONE SPEAKER (ZONE 2)

### MAIN ROOM



### ZONE 2

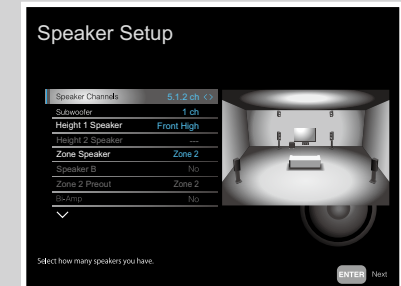


**MAIN ROOM:** This is a combination of the 5.1 Channel System and front high speakers. A front high speaker is a type of height speaker. You can select only one set of height speakers from the following three types for connection.

- Front High Speakers/Rear High Speakers Installation Example (→p22)
- Ceiling Speakers Installation Example (→p23)
- Dolby Enabled Speakers (Dolby Speakers) Installation Example (→p24)

**ZONE 2:** You can enjoy 2-ch audio in the separate room (ZONE 2) while performing playback in the main room (where this unit is located). The same source can be played back in the main room and ZONE 2 simultaneously. Also, different sources can be played back in both rooms.

■ "Speaker Setup" settings during Initial Setup (→p203)



- Speaker Channels: 5.1.2 ch
- Subwoofer: 1ch
- Height 1 Speaker: Select the type of height speaker actually installed.
- Height 2 Speaker: ---
- Zone Speaker: Zone 2
- Speaker B: No
- Zone 2 Preout: Zone 2
- Bi-Amp: No
- Symmetry / All Channel Adjust / Front Align (→p203)

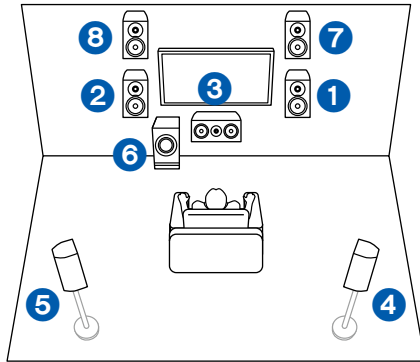


### Setup

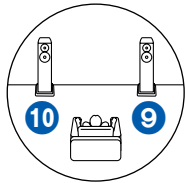
To output the video and audio of the HDMI input to ZONE 2, from the Home screen, set "System Setup" - "Input/Output Assign" - "TV Out/OSD" - "Zone 2 HDMI" (→p153) to "Use".

## ■ 5.1.2 Channel System + ZONE SPEAKER (ZONE 2/ZONE 3)

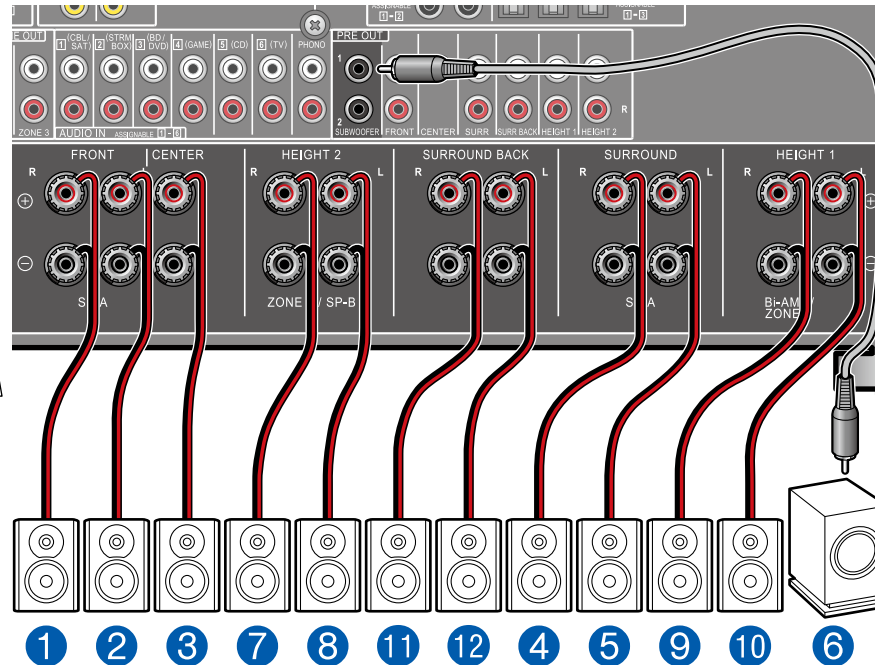
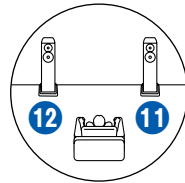
### MAIN ROOM



### ZONE 2



### ZONE 3



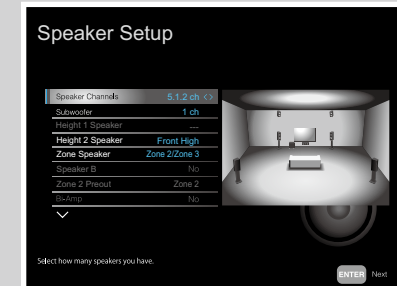
**MAIN ROOM:** This is a combination of the 5.1 Channel System and front high speakers. A front high speaker is a type of height speaker. You can select only one set of height speakers from the following three types for connection.

- Front High Speakers/Rear High Speakers Installation Example (→p22)
- Ceiling Speakers Installation Example (→p23)
- Dolby Enabled Speakers (Dolby Speakers) Installation Example (→p24)

**ZONE 2/ZONE 3:** You can enjoy 2-ch audio in the separate room (ZONE 2/ZONE 3) while performing 5.1-ch playback in the main room (where this unit is located). The same source can be played back in the main room and ZONE 2/ZONE 3 simultaneously. Also, different sources can be played back in both rooms.

To output audio from an externally connected AV component to ZONE 3, use an analog audio cable for connection. Note that ZONE 3 output is not possible with the connection using a HDMI cable, digital coaxial cable, or digital optical cable.

■ "Speaker Setup" settings during Initial Setup (→p203)



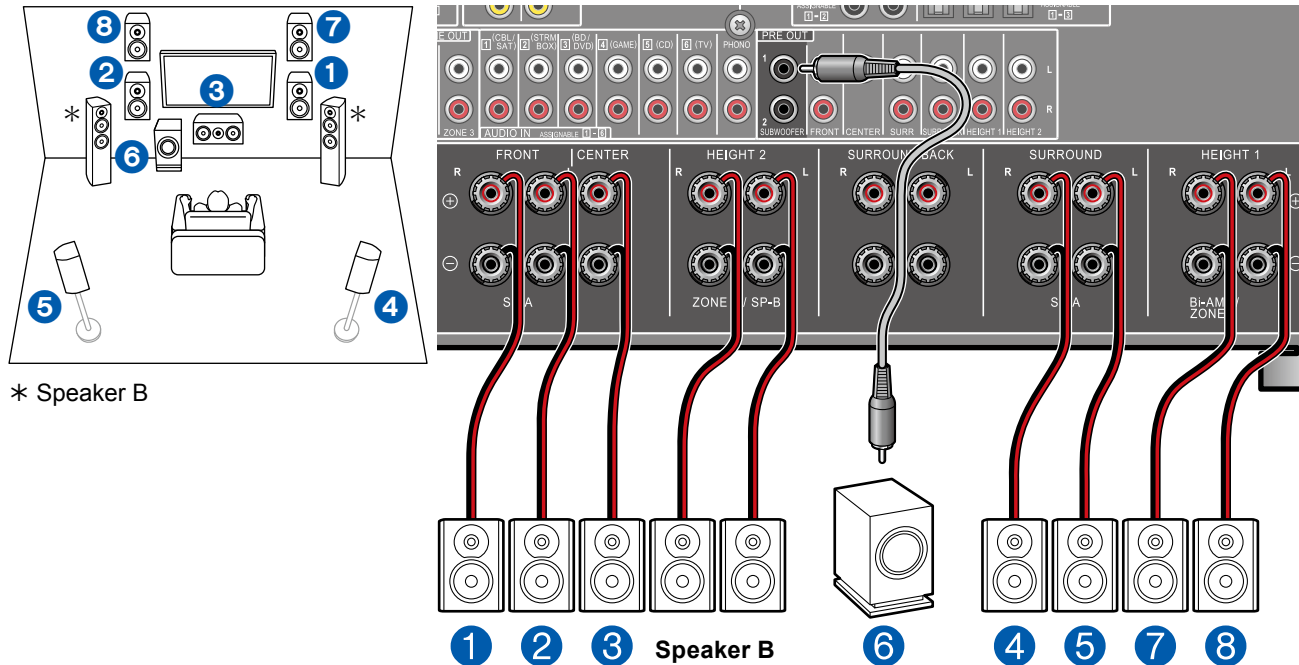
- Speaker Channels: 5.1.2 ch
- Subwoofer: 1ch
- Height 1 Speaker: ---
- Height 2 Speaker: Select the type of height speaker actually installed.
- Zone Speaker: Zone 2/Zone 3
- Speaker B: No
- Zone 2 Preout: Zone 2
- Bi-Amp: No
- Symmetry / All Channel Adjust / Front Align (→p203)



### Setup

To output the video and audio of the HDMI input to ZONE 2, from the Home screen, set "System Setup" - "Input/Output Assign" - "TV Out/OSD" - "Zone 2 HDMI" (→p153) to "Use".

## ■ 5.1.2 Channel System + SPEAKER B



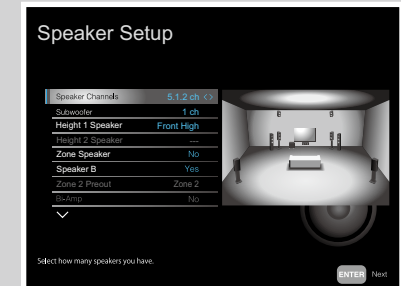
\* Speaker B

This is a combination of the 5.1 Channel System and front high speakers. A front high speaker is a type of height speaker. You can select only one set of height speakers from the following three types for connection.

- Front High Speakers/Rear High Speakers Installation Example (→p22)
- Ceiling Speakers Installation Example (→p23)
- Dolby Enabled Speakers (Dolby Speakers) Installation Example (→p24)

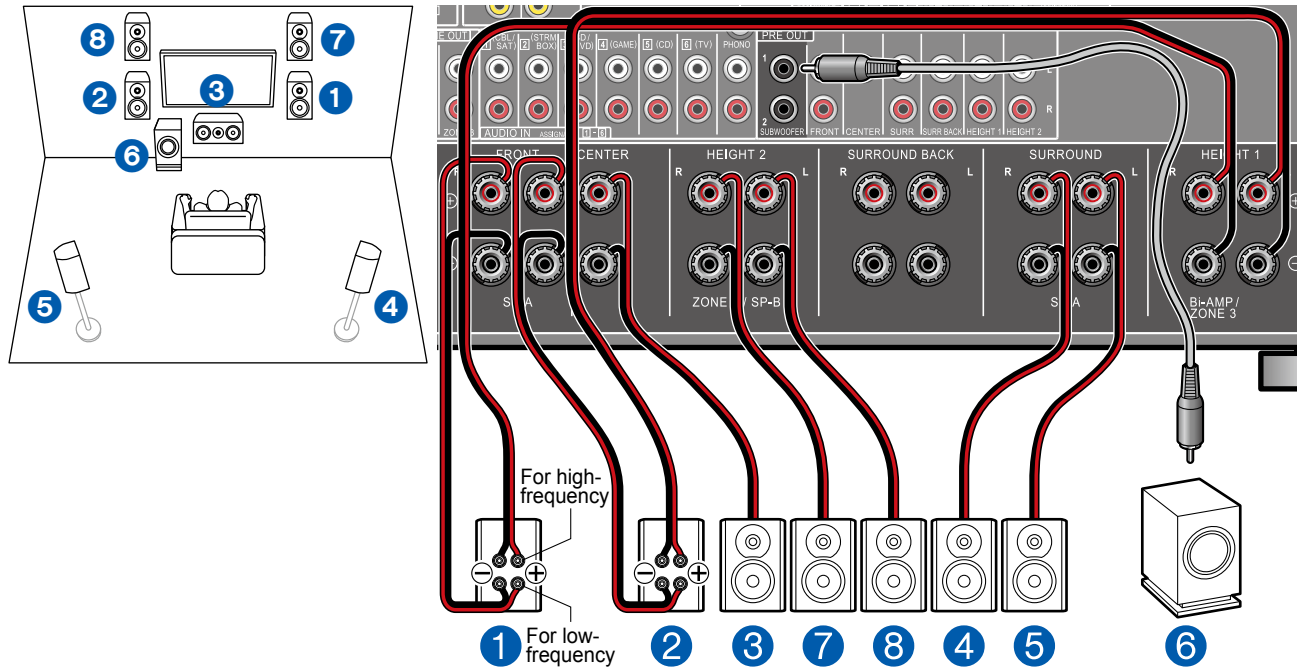
Apart from the main speaker system (Speaker A System), you can also connect another system of front speakers to be the Speaker B System and build a 5.1.2 Channel System. When connected as a Speaker B System, you can switch the same audio for output with Speaker A/B/A+B. Switch Speakers with "Speakers" in "AV Adjust" (→p199).

### ■ "Speaker Setup" settings during Initial Setup (→p203)



- Speaker Channels: 5.1.2 ch
- Subwoofer: 1ch
- Height 1 Speaker: Select the type of height speaker actually installed.
- Height 2 Speaker: ---
- Zone Speaker: No
- Speaker B: Yes
- Zone 2 Preout: Zone 2
- Bi-Amp: No
- Symmetry / All Channel Adjust / Front Align (→p203)

## ■ 5.1.2 Channel System (Bi-Amping the Speakers)

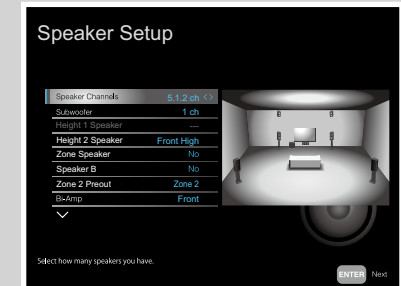


This is a combination of the 5.1 Channel System and front high speakers. A front high speaker is a type of height speaker. You can select only one set of height speakers from the following three types for connection.

- Front High Speakers/Rear High Speakers Installation Example ( →p22)
- Ceiling Speakers Installation Example ( →p23)
- Dolby Enabled Speakers (Dolby Speakers) Installation Example ( →p24)

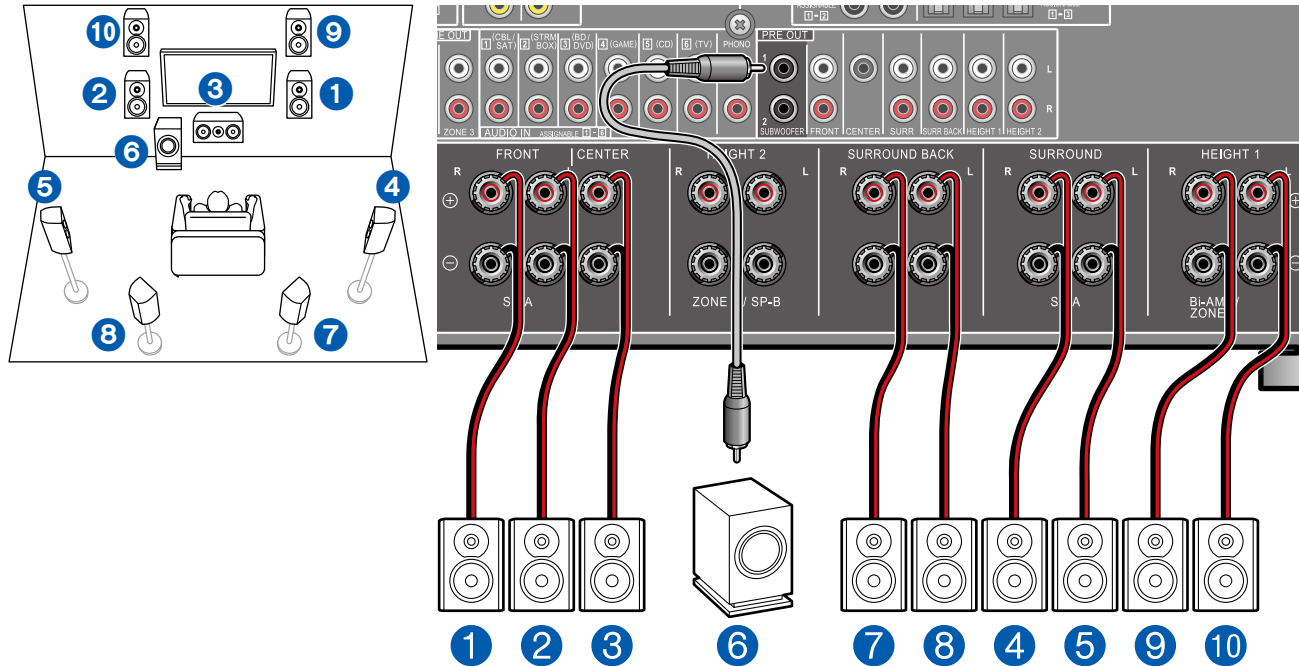
You can configure a 5.1.2 Channel System by connecting front speakers that support Bi-Amping connection. The Bi-Amping connection can improve the quality of the low and high pitched ranges. Be sure to remove the jumper bar connecting between the woofer jacks and tweeter jacks of the Bi-Amping supported speakers. Refer to the instruction manual of your speakers as well.

### ■ "Speaker Setup" settings during Initial Setup ( →p203)



- Speaker Channels: 5.1.2 ch
- Subwoofer: 1ch
- Height 1 Speaker: ---
- Height 2 Speaker: Select the type of height speaker actually installed.
- Zone Speaker: No
- Speaker B: No
- Zone 2 Preout: Set any value ( →p159)
- Bi-Amp: Front
- Symmetry / All Channel Adjust / Front Align ( →p203)

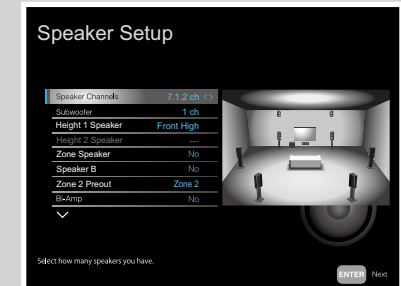
## 7.1.2 Channel System



This is a combination of the 7.1 Channel System and front high speakers. A front high speaker is a type of height speaker. You can select only one set of height speakers from the following three types for connection.

- Front High Speakers/Rear High Speakers Installation Example ( →p26)
- Ceiling Speakers Installation Example ( →p27)
- Dolby Enabled Speakers (Dolby Speakers) Installation Example ( →p28)

### ■ "Speaker Setup" settings during Initial Setup ( →p203)

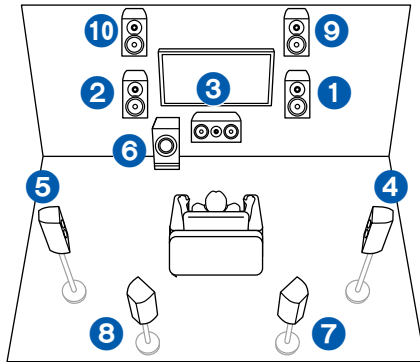


- Speaker Channels: 7.1.2 ch
- Subwoofer: 1ch
- Height 1 Speaker: Select the type of height speaker actually installed.
- Height 2 Speaker: ---
- Zone Speaker: No
- Speaker B: No
- Zone 2 Preout: Set any value ( →p159)
- Bi-Amp: No
- Symmetry / All Channel Adjust / Front Align ( →p203)

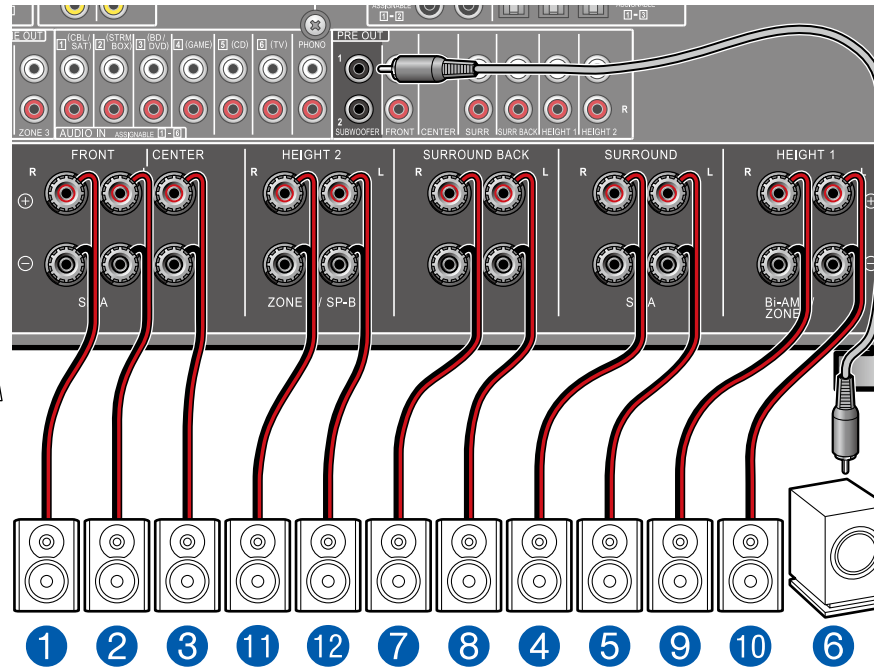
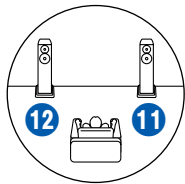


## 7.1.2 Channel System + ZONE SPEAKER

### MAIN ROOM



### ZONE 2

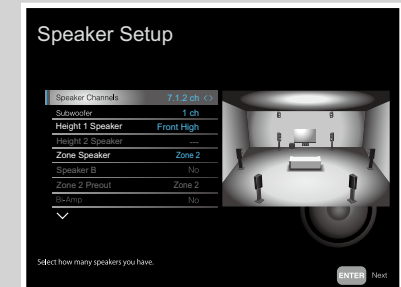


**MAIN ROOM:** This is a combination of the 7.1 Channel System and front high speakers. A front high speaker is a type of height speaker. You can select only one set of height speakers from the following three types for connection.

- Front High Speakers/Rear High Speakers Installation Example (→p26)
- Ceiling Speakers Installation Example (→p27)
- Dolby Enabled Speakers (Dolby Speakers) Installation Example (→p28)

**ZONE 2:** You can enjoy 2-ch audio in the separate room (ZONE 2) while performing playback in the main room (where this unit is located). The same source can be played back in the main room and ZONE 2 simultaneously. Also, different sources can be played back in both rooms.

■ "Speaker Setup" settings during Initial Setup (→p203)



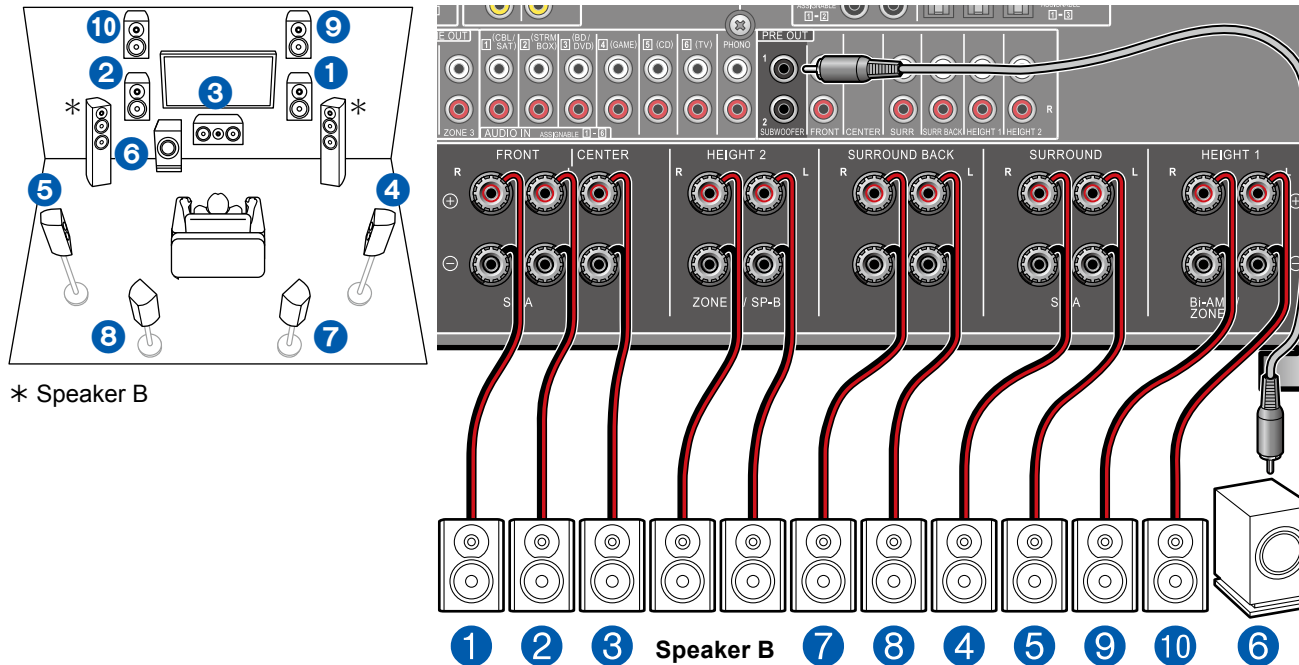
- Speaker Channels: 7.1.2 ch
- Subwoofer: 1ch
- Height 1 Speaker: Select the type of height speaker actually installed.
- Height 2 Speaker: ---
- Zone Speaker: Zone 2
- Speaker B: No
- Zone 2 Preout: Zone 2
- Bi-Amp: No
- Symmetry / All Channel Adjust / Front Align (→p203)



### Setup

To output the video and audio of the HDMI input to ZONE 2, from the Home screen, set "System Setup" - "Input/Output Assign" - "TV Out/OSD" - "Zone 2 HDMI" (→p153) to "Use".

## ■ 7.1.2 Channel System + SPEAKER B



\* Speaker B

This is a combination of the 7.1 Channel System and front high speakers. A front high speaker is a type of height speaker. You can select only one set of height speakers from the following three types for connection.

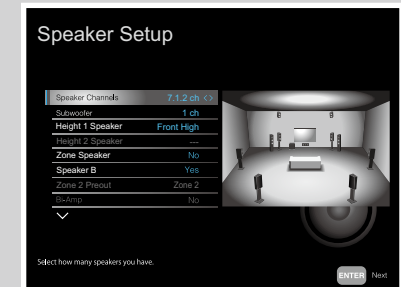
□ Front High Speakers/Rear High Speakers Installation Example (→p26)

□ Ceiling Speakers Installation Example (→p27)

□ Dolby Enabled Speakers (Dolby Speakers) Installation Example (→p28)

Apart from the main speaker system (Speaker A System), you can also connect another system of front speakers to be the Speaker B System and build a 7.1.2 Channel System. When connected as a Speaker B System, you can switch the same audio for output with Speaker A/B/A+B. Switch Speakers with "Speakers" in "AV Adjust" (→p199).

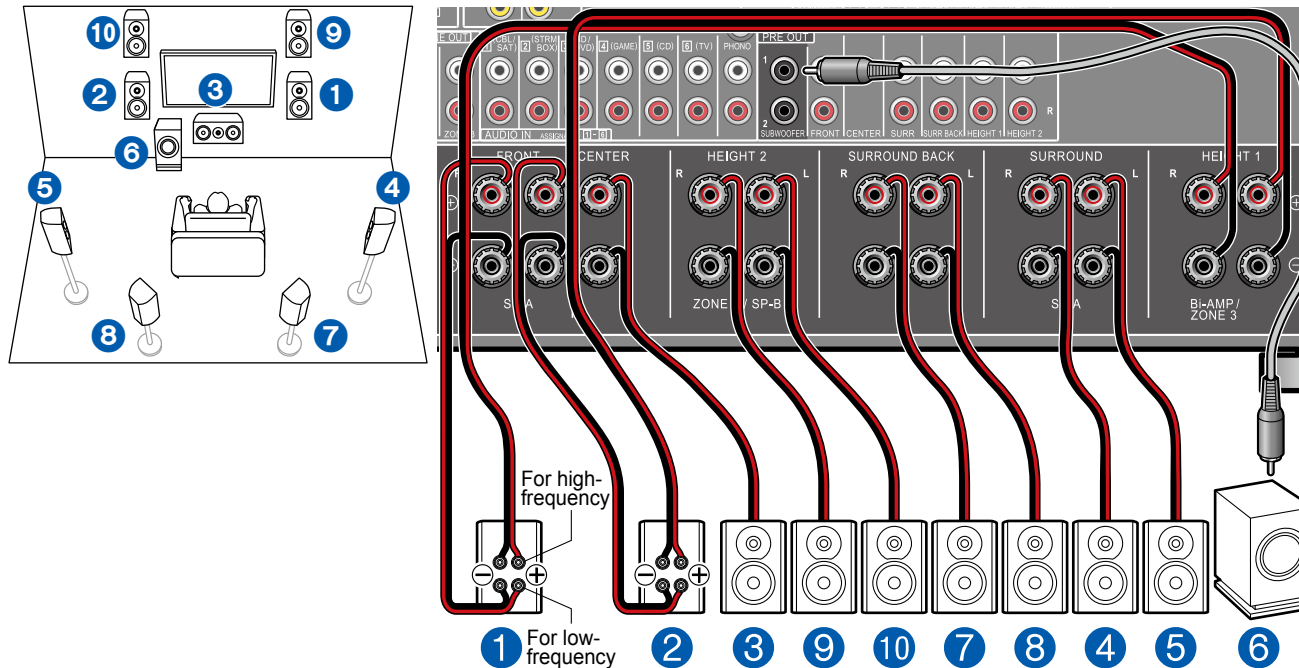
■ "Speaker Setup" settings during Initial Setup (→p203)



- Speaker Channels: 7.1.2 ch
- Subwoofer: 1ch
- Height 1 Speaker: Select the type of height speaker actually installed.
- Height 2 Speaker: ---
- Zone Speaker: No
- Speaker B: Yes
- Zone 2 Preout: Zone 2
- Bi-Amp: No
- Symmetry / All Channel Adjust / Front Align (→p203)



## ■ 7.1.2 Channel System(Bi-Amping the Speakers)

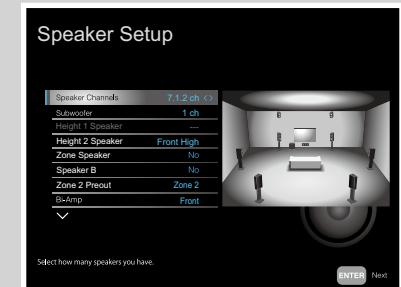


This is a combination of the 7.1 Channel System and front high speakers. A front high speaker is a type of height speaker. You can select only one set of height speakers from the following three types for connection.

- Front High Speakers/Rear High Speakers Installation Example ( →p26)
- Ceiling Speakers Installation Example ( →p27)
- Dolby Enabled Speakers (Dolby Speakers) Installation Example ( →p28)

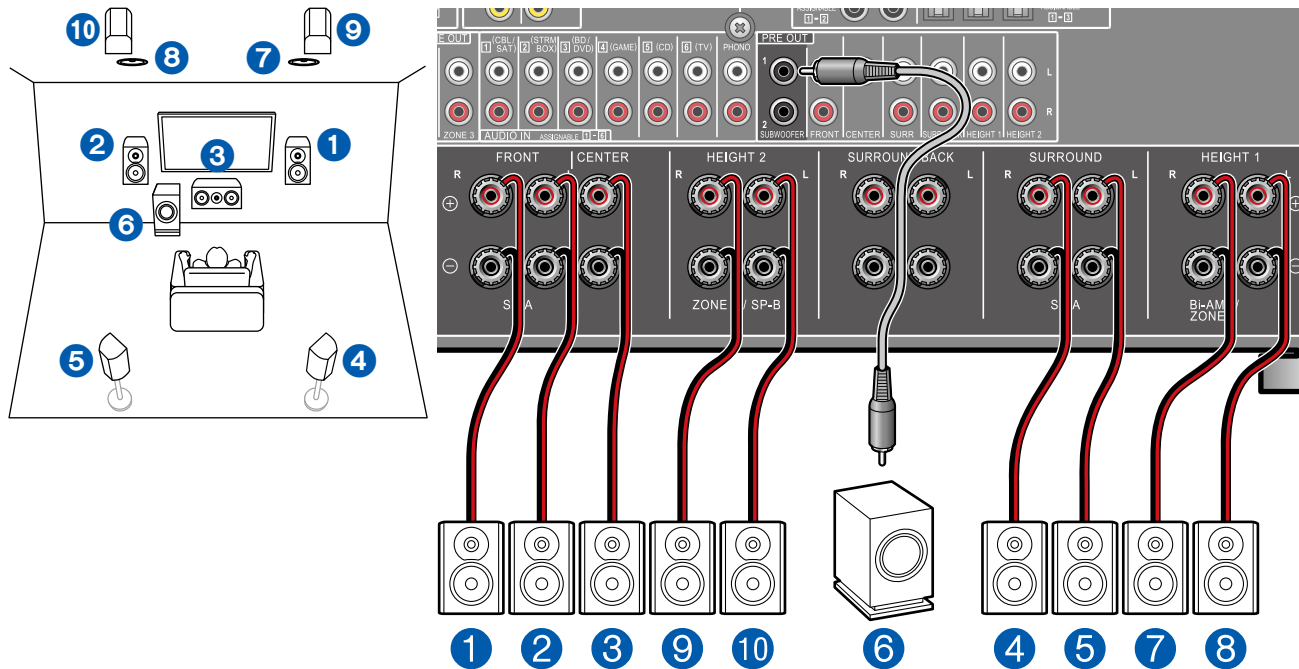
You can configure a 7.1.2 Channel System by connecting front speakers that support Bi-Amping connection. The Bi-Amping connection can improve the quality of the low and high pitched ranges. Be sure to remove the jumper bar connecting between the woofer jacks and tweeter jacks of the Bi-Amping supported speakers. Refer to the instruction manual of your speakers as well.

### ■ "Speaker Setup" settings during Initial Setup ( →p203)



- Speaker Channels: 7.1.2 ch
- Subwoofer: 1ch
- Height 1 Speaker: ---
- Height 2 Speaker: Select the type of height speaker actually installed.
- Zone Speaker: No
- Speaker B: No
- Zone 2 Preout: Set any value ( → p159)
- Bi-Amp: Front
- Symmetry / All Channel Adjust / Front Align ( →p203)

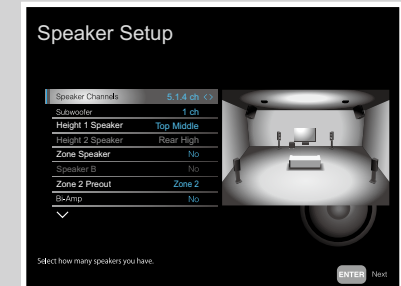
### 5.1.4 Channel System



This is an example of combining the top middle speakers at the front and the rear high speakers at the rear to the 5.1 Channel System. The height speakers in front can be selected from following 4 types. The height speakers that can be combined at the rear differ depending on the height speakers used at the front.

- Combination example when Top Front Speakers are used at the front ( →p30)
- Combination example when Top Middle Speakers are used at the front ( →p32)
- Combination example when Front High Speakers are used at the front ( →p33)
- Combination example when Dolby Enabled Speakers (Front) are used at the front ( →p35)

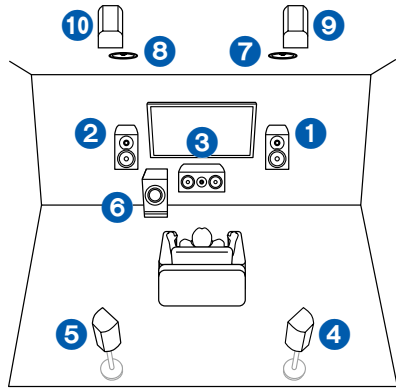
#### ■ "Speaker Setup" settings during Initial Setup ( →p203)



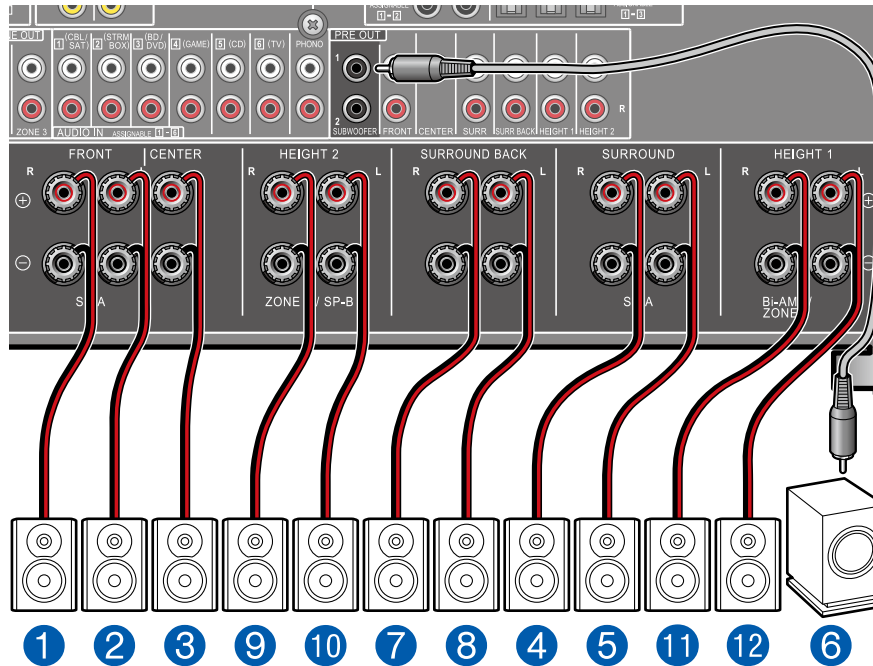
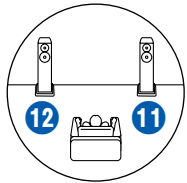
- Speaker Channels: 5.1.4 ch
- Subwoofer: 1ch
- Height 1 Speaker: Select the type of height speaker actually installed.
- Height 2 Speaker: Select the type of height speaker actually installed.
- Zone Speaker: No
- Speaker B: No
- Zone 2 Preout: Set any value ( →p159)
- Bi-Amp: No
- Symmetry / All Channel Adjust / Front Align ( →p203)

### 5.1.4 Channel System + ZONE SPEAKER

#### MAIN ROOM



#### ZONE 2

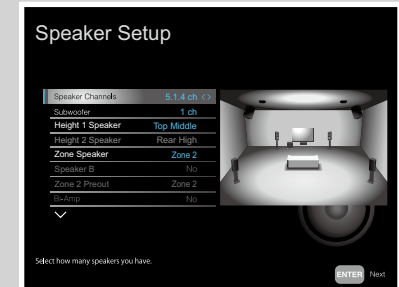


**MAIN ROOM:** This is an example of combining the top middle speakers at the front and the rear high speakers at the rear to the 5.1 Channel System. The height speakers in front can be selected from following 4 types. The height speakers that can be combined at the rear differ depending on the height speakers used at the front.

- Combination example when Top Front Speakers are used at the front ( →p30)
- Combination example when Top Middle Speakers are used at the front ( →p32)
- Combination example when Front High Speakers are used at the front ( →p33)
- Combination example when Dolby Enabled Speakers (Front) are used at the front ( →p35)

**ZONE 2:** You can enjoy 2-ch audio in the separate room (ZONE 2) while performing playback in the main room (where this unit is located). The same source can be played back in the main room and ZONE 2 simultaneously. Also, different sources can be played back in both rooms.

#### "Speaker Setup" settings during Initial Setup ( →p203)



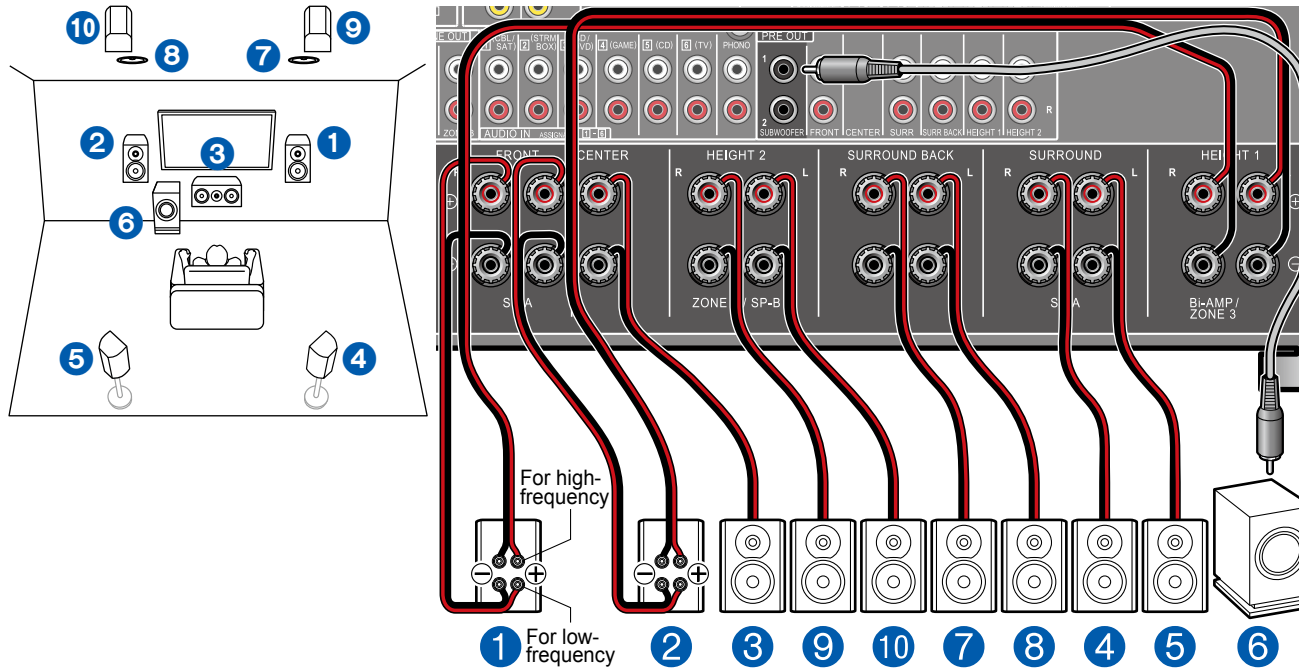
- Speaker Channels: 5.1.4 ch
- Subwoofer: 1ch
- Height 1 Speaker: Select the type of height speaker actually installed.
- Height 2 Speaker: Select the type of height speaker actually installed.
- Zone Speaker: Zone 2
- Speaker B: No
- Zone 2 Preout: Zone 2
- Bi-Amp: No
- Symmetry / All Channel Adjust / Front Align ( →p203)



#### Setup

To output the video and audio of the HDMI input to ZONE 2, from the Home screen, set "System Setup" - "Input/ Output Assign" - "TV Out/OSD" - "Zone 2 HDMI" ( →p153) to "Use".

### ■ 5.1.4 Channel System (Bi-Amping the Speakers)

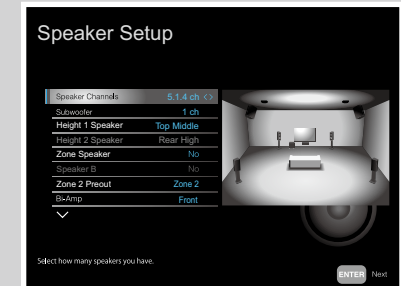


This is an example of combining the top middle speakers at the front and the rear high speakers at the rear to the 5.1 Channel System. The height speakers in front can be selected from following 4 types. The height speakers that can be combined at the rear differ depending on the height speakers used at the front.

- ❑ Combination example when Top Front Speakers are used at the front ( →p30)
- ❑ Combination example when Top Middle Speakers are used at the front ( →p32)
- ❑ Combination example when Front High Speakers are used at the front ( →p33)
- ❑ Combination example when Dolby Enabled Speakers (Front) are used at the front ( →p35)

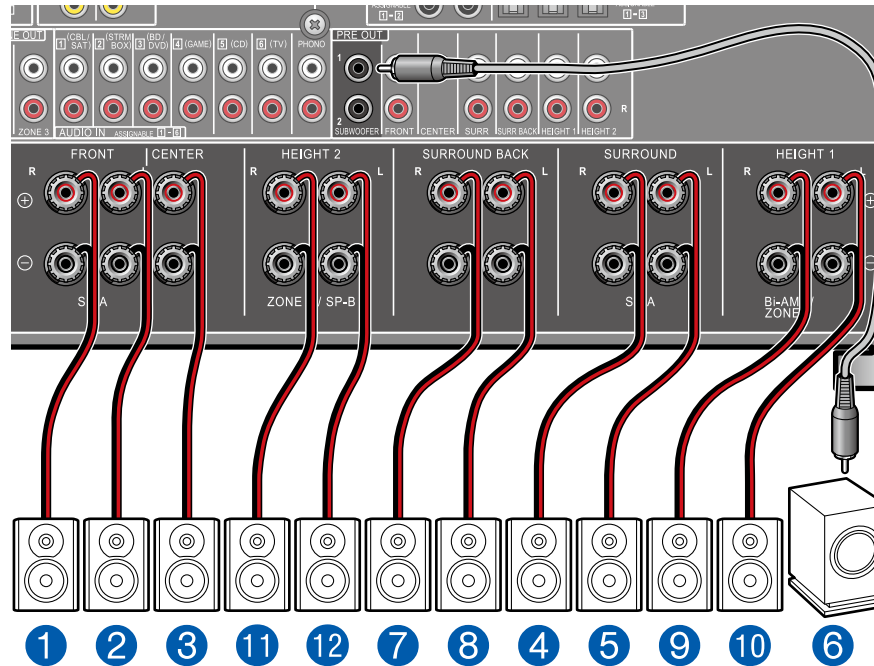
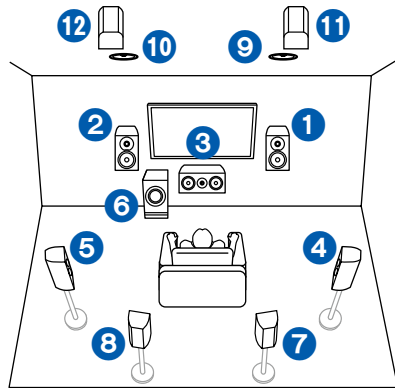
You can configure a 5.1.4 Channel System by connecting front speakers that support Bi-Amping connection. The Bi-Amping connection can improve the quality of the low and high pitched ranges. Be sure to remove the jumper bar connecting between the woofer jacks and tweeter jacks of the Bi-Amping supported speakers. Refer to the instruction manual of your speakers as well.

#### ■ "Speaker Setup" settings during Initial Setup ( →p203)

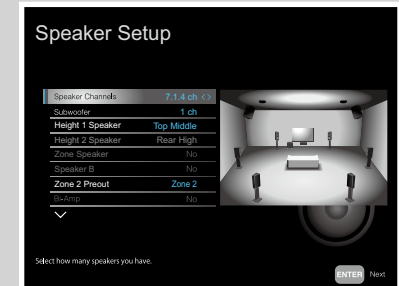


- Speaker Channels: 5.1.4 ch
- Subwoofer: 1ch
- Height 1 Speaker: Select the type of height speaker actually installed.
- Height 2 Speaker: Select the type of height speaker actually installed.
- Zone Speaker: No
- Speaker B: No
- Zone 2 Preout: Set any value ( → p159)
- Bi-Amp: Front
- Symmetry / All Channel Adjust / Front Align ( →p203)

## 7.1.4 Channel System



### "Speaker Setup" settings during Initial Setup ( →p203)

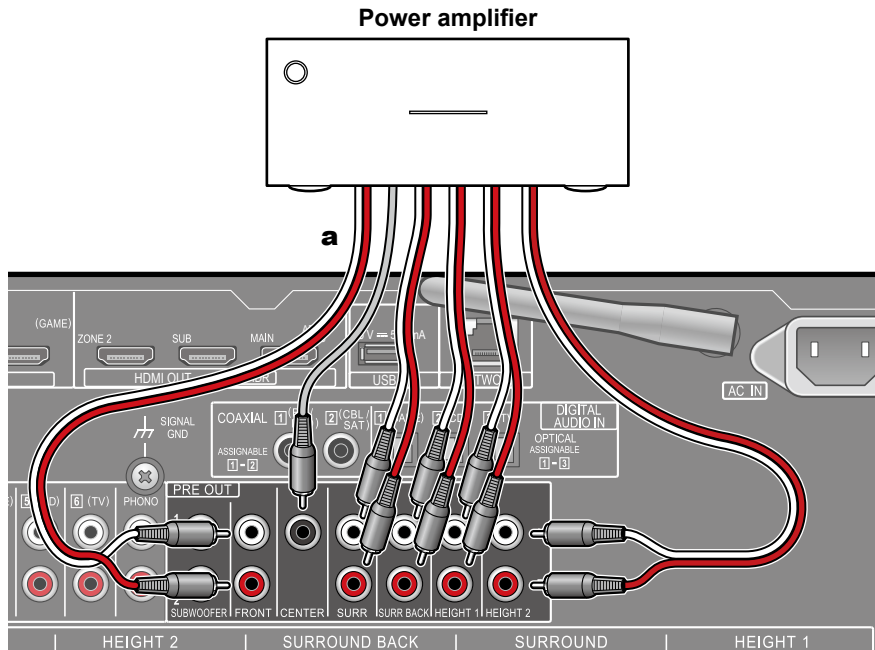


- Speaker Channels: 7.1.4 ch
- Subwoofer: 1ch
- Height 1 Speaker: Select the type of height speaker actually installed.
- Height 2 Speaker: Select the type of height speaker actually installed.
- Zone Speaker: No
- Speaker B: No
- Zone 2 Preout: Set any value ( → p159)
- Bi-Amp: No
- Symmetry / All Channel Adjust / Front Align ( →p203)

This is an example of combining the top middle speakers at the front and the rear high speakers at the rear to the 7.1 Channel System. The height speakers in front can be selected from following 4 types. The height speakers that can be combined at the rear differ depending on the height speakers used at the front.

- ❑ Combination example when Top Front Speakers are used at the front ( →p38)
- ❑ Combination example when Top Middle Speakers are used at the front ( →p40)
- ❑ Combination example when Front High Speakers are used at the front ( →p41)
- ❑ Combination example when Dolby Enabled Speakers (Front) are used at the front ( →p44)

## Connecting a Power Amplifier



**a** Analog audio cable

You can connect a power amplifier to the unit and use the unit as a pre-amplifier in order to produce a large volume that cannot be output with the unit only. Connect the speakers to the power amplifier. For details, refer to the power amplifier's instruction manual.

- Connect as shown on the left using the PRE OUT jacks.



### Setup

- Set "System Setup" - "Speaker" - "Configuration" - "Speaker Channels" in accordance to the number of channels for the connected speakers.
- You can reduce power consumption by turning off the power of the SPEAKERS terminals you are not using on this unit. Make the setting in "System Setup" - "Miscellaneous" - "Preamp Mode".

## Speaker combinations

- Up to two powered subwoofers can be connected in either combination.

Speaker Channels	FRONT	CENTER	SURROUND	SURROUND BACK	HEIGHT 1	HEIGHT 2	SP B (*1) (SPEAKER B)	Bi-AMP (*1)	ZONE 2 (*1) (ZONE SPEAKER)	ZONE 3 (*1) (ZONE SPEAKER)
2.1 ch	✓						✓ (*2)	FRONT	✓	✓
3.1 ch	✓	✓					✓ (*2)	FRONT, FRONT/CENTER	✓	✓
4.1 ch	✓		✓				✓ (*2)	FRONT, FRONT/SURROUND	✓	✓
5.1 ch	✓	✓	✓				✓ (*2)	FRONT, FRONT/CENTER, FRONT/SURROUND, CENTER/SURROUND, FRONT/CENTER/ SURROUND	✓	✓
6.1 ch	✓		✓	✓			✓ (*2)	FRONT	✓ (*3)	✓
7.1 ch	✓	✓	✓	✓			✓ (*2)	FRONT	✓ (*3)	✓
2.1.2 ch	✓				✓ (*4)		✓	FRONT	✓ (*5)	✓ (*6)
3.1.2 ch	✓	✓			✓ (*4)		✓	FRONT	✓ (*5)	✓ (*6)
4.1.2 ch	✓		✓		✓ (*4)		✓	FRONT	✓ (*5)	✓ (*6)
5.1.2 ch	✓	✓	✓		✓ (*4)		✓	FRONT	✓ (*5)	✓ (*6)
6.1.2 ch	✓		✓	✓	✓ (*4)		✓	FRONT	✓	
7.1.2 ch	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓ (*4)		✓	FRONT	✓	
4.1.4 ch	✓		✓		✓	✓		FRONT	✓	
5.1.4 ch	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓		FRONT	✓	
6.1.4 ch	✓		✓	✓	✓	✓				
7.1.4 ch	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓				

(\*1) It is not possible to use Speaker B, Bi-AMP, and ZONE speakers at the same time. However, with 2.1 ch to 7.1 ch, it is possible to use Bi-AMP (FRONT) and ZONE 2 speakers at the same time.

(\*2) You can also use Bi-Amping connections with Speakers B.

(\*3) If you have not connected ZONE 3 speakers in another room but have only connected ZONE 2 speakers, connect the ZONE 2 speakers to the HEIGHT 1 jacks. However, if you want to use at the same time as Bi-AMP (FRONT), connect the ZONE 2 speakers to the HEIGHT 2 jacks.

(\*4) If front speakers are to be Bi-Amping connected, height speakers need to be connected to the HEIGHT 2 jacks.

(\*5) If you have not connected ZONE 3 speakers in another room but have only connected ZONE 2 speakers, connect the ZONE 2 speakers to the HEIGHT 2 jacks.



(\*6) ZONE 2 speakers need to be connected to the HEIGHT 1 jack, ZONE 3 speakers need to be connected to the SURROUND BACK jacks, and height speakers need to be connected to the HEIGHT 2 jacks.

**About the HEIGHT 1/HEIGHT 2**

When connecting 2 sets of the height speakers, the combination of the height speakers that can be selected is as follows.

- Height 1 Speaker: Top Middle, Height 2 Speaker: Rear High
- Height 1 Speaker: Front High; Height 2 Speaker: One of Rear High/Top Middle/Top Rear/Dolby Enabled Speaker (Surround)/Dolby Enabled Speaker (Surround Back)
- Height 1 Speaker: Top Front or Dolby Enabled Speaker (Front), Height 2 Speaker: One of Rear High/Top Rear/Dolby Enabled Speaker (Surround)/Dolby Enabled Speaker (Surround Back)

When only 1 set of the height speakers is connected, 1 from the height speakers types can be selected.



## Connecting the TV

Connect this unit between a TV and AV component. Connecting this unit with the TV can output the video and audio signals of the AV component to the TV, or play the audio of the TV on this unit. Connection with the TV differs depending on whether the TV supports the ARC (Audio Return Channel) function or eARC (Enhanced Audio Return Channel) function. The ARC function and eARC function transmit the audio signals of the TV via an HDMI cable, and plays the audio of the TV on this unit. To check if the TV supports the ARC function and eARC function, refer to the instruction manual of the TV, etc.

- The eARC function is a newly added function for HDMI 2.1. This is an expanded function from the existing ARC function, and is able to send audio formats such as Dolby TrueHD and DTS-HD Master Audio that cannot be sent with the ARC function, from an eARC-compatible TV to this unit. (→[p220](#))

Does your TV support the ARC function?

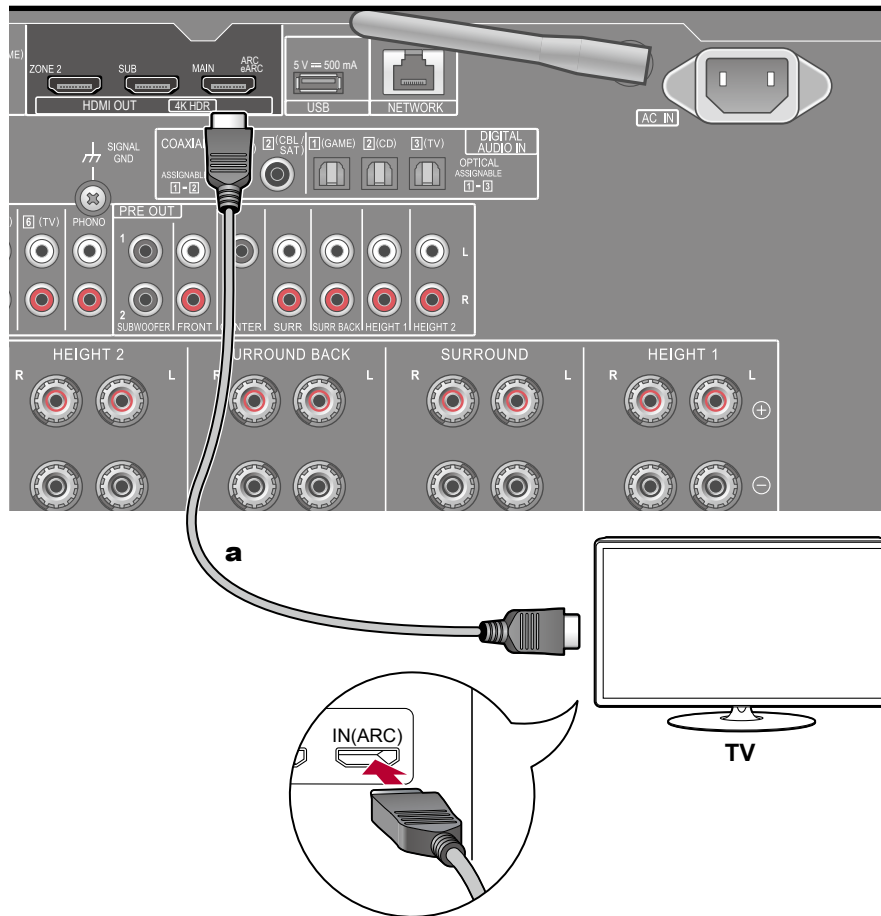
Yes

- To ARC/eARC TV (→[p78](#))

No


- To Non-ARC TV (→[p79](#))

## To ARC/eARC TV




**a** HDMI cable

If the TV supports the ARC (Audio Return Channel) function (\*), use only the HDMI cable to connect with the TV. Use the ARC-compatible HDMI IN jack of the TV for connection. You connect the HDMI cable to the port labeled OUT on the receiver side.

- Another TV or projector can be connected to the HDMI OUT SUB jack. Switch between MAIN and SUB using the HDMI MAIN/SUB button (→[p15](#)) on the remote controller or "AV Adjust" (→[p198](#)). Note that this jack is not ARC-compatible.
- If devices with different resolutions are connected to HDMI OUT MAIN jack and SUB jack, images are output with the lower resolution.
- If a 4K high-quality video is played, use a Premium High Speed HDMI Cable or Premium High Speed HDMI Cable with Ethernet whose package has a "PREMIUM Certified Cable" label. Furthermore, in Home, displayed by pressing  on the remote controller, set "System Setup" - "Input/Output Assign" - "TV Out/OSD" - "HDMI 4K Signal Format" (→[p153](#)) to "Enhanced".

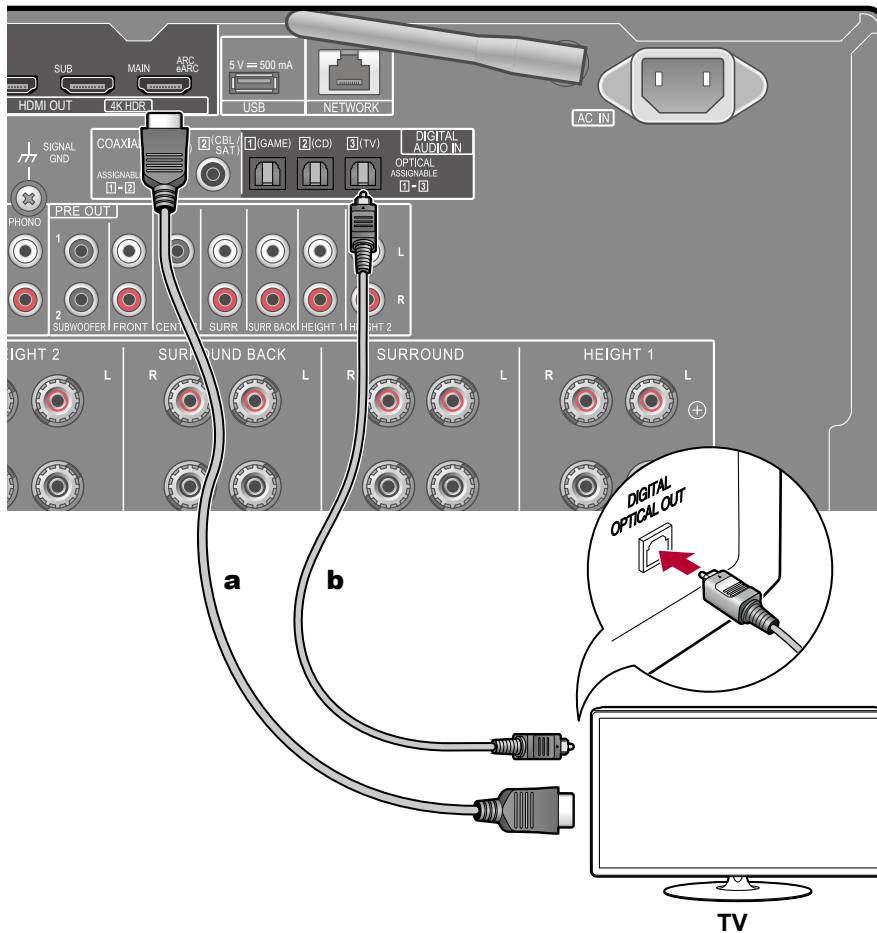


### Setup

- Settings are required to use the ARC function. Select "Yes" for "4. ARC Setup" in Initial Setup (→[p202](#)). If "No, Skip" is selected, settings are required in the System Setup menu after Initial Setup is completed. Press the  button on the remote controller to display the Home screen, then set "System Setup" - "Hardware" - "HDMI" - "Audio Return Channel (eARC supported)" to "On". (→[p168](#))
- For detailed settings for TV connection, CEC function and audio output, refer to the instruction manual of the TV.


(\* ) ARC function: This function transmits the audio signals of the TV via an HDMI cable, and plays the audio of the TV on this unit. Connection to an ARC-compatible TV is complete with one HDMI cable. To check if the TV supports the ARC function, refer to the instruction manual of the TV, etc.

## To Non-ARC TV



**a** HDMI cable, **b** Digital optical cable

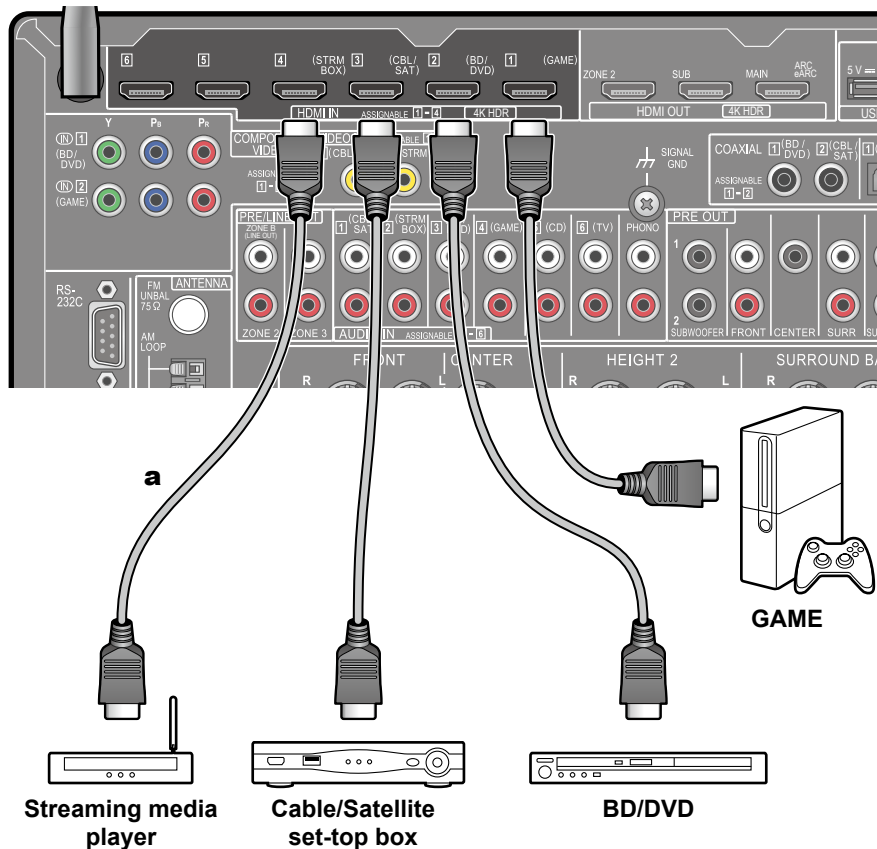
If the TV does not support the ARC (Audio Return Channel) function (\*), connect an HDMI cable and digital optical cable.

- If you use a cable set-top box, etc. connected to the input jack of this unit to watch TV (without using a TV's built-in tuner), connection with a digital optical cable or analog audio cable is not required.
- Another TV or projector can be connected to the HDMI OUT SUB jack. Switch between MAIN and SUB using the HDMI MAIN/SUB button (→[p15](#)) on the remote controller or "AV Adjust" (→[p198](#)). Note that this jack is not ARC-compatible.
- If devices with different resolutions are connected to HDMI OUT MAIN jack and SUB jack, images are output with the lower resolution.
- If a 4K high-quality video is played, use a Premium High Speed HDMI Cable or Premium High Speed HDMI Cable with Ethernet whose package has a "PREMIUM Certified Cable" label. Furthermore, in Home, displayed by pressing  on the remote controller, set "System Setup" - "Input/Output Assign" - "TV Out/OSD" - "HDMI 4K Signal Format" (→[p153](#)) to "Enhanced".

(\* ) ARC function: This function transmits the audio signals of the TV via an HDMI cable, and plays the audio of the TV on this unit. Connection to an ARC-compatible TV is complete with one HDMI cable. To check if the TV supports the ARC function, refer to the instruction manual of the TV, etc.


## Connecting Playback Devices

### Connecting an AV Component with HDMI Jack Mounted




**a** HDMI cable

This is a connection example of an AV component equipped with an HDMI jack. When connecting with an AV component that conforms to the CEC (Consumer Electronics Control) standard, you can use the HDMI CEC function (\*) that enables linking with input selectors, etc. and the HDMI Standby Through function that can transmit video and audio signals of the AV component to the TV even if this unit is in standby mode.

- If a 4K high-quality video is played, use a Premium High Speed HDMI Cable or Premium High Speed HDMI Cable with Ethernet whose package has a "PREMIUM Certified Cable" label. Furthermore, in Home, displayed by pressing  on the remote controller, set "System Setup" - "Input/Output Assign" - "TV Out/OSD" - "HDMI 4K Signal Format" ( →[p153](#)) to "Enhanced".

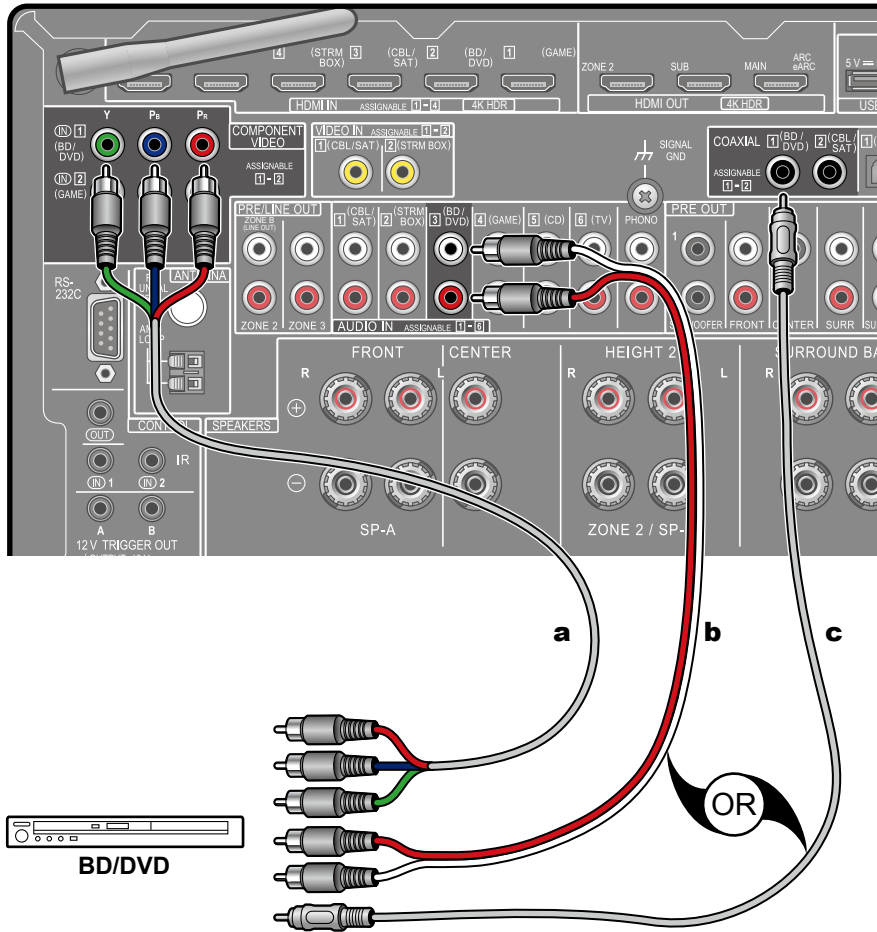


#### Setup

- The HDMI CEC function and HDMI Standby Through function are automatically enabled if you select "Yes" for "4. ARC Setup" in Initial Setup ( →[p202](#)). If "No, Skip" is selected, settings are required in the System Setup menu after Initial Setup is completed. Settings are made in "System Setup" - "Hardware" - "HDMI" in Home displayed by pressing  on the remote controller. ( →[p167](#))
- To enjoy digital surround sound including Dolby Digital, set the audio output of the connected Blu-ray Disc player etc. to the Bitstream output.

(\*)The HDMI CEC function: This function enables various linking operations with CEC-compliant devices, such as switching input selectors interlocking with a CEC-compliant player, switching audio output between TV and this unit or adjusting the volume using the remote controller of a CEC-compliant TV, and automatically switching this unit to standby when the TV is turned off.

## Connecting an AV Component without HDMI Jack Mounted



**a** Component video cable, **b** Analog audio cable, **c** Digital coaxial cable

This is a connection example of an AV component unequipped with an HDMI jack. Select cables that match the jacks of the AV component for connection. For example, when video input is connected to the BD/DVD jack, connect the audio input to BD/DVD jack, too. Thus, video input jacks and audio input jacks should have the same name for connection. Note that video signals input to the VIDEO IN jack or the COMPONENT VIDEO IN jack are converted to HDMI video signals, and then output from the HDMI OUT jack.

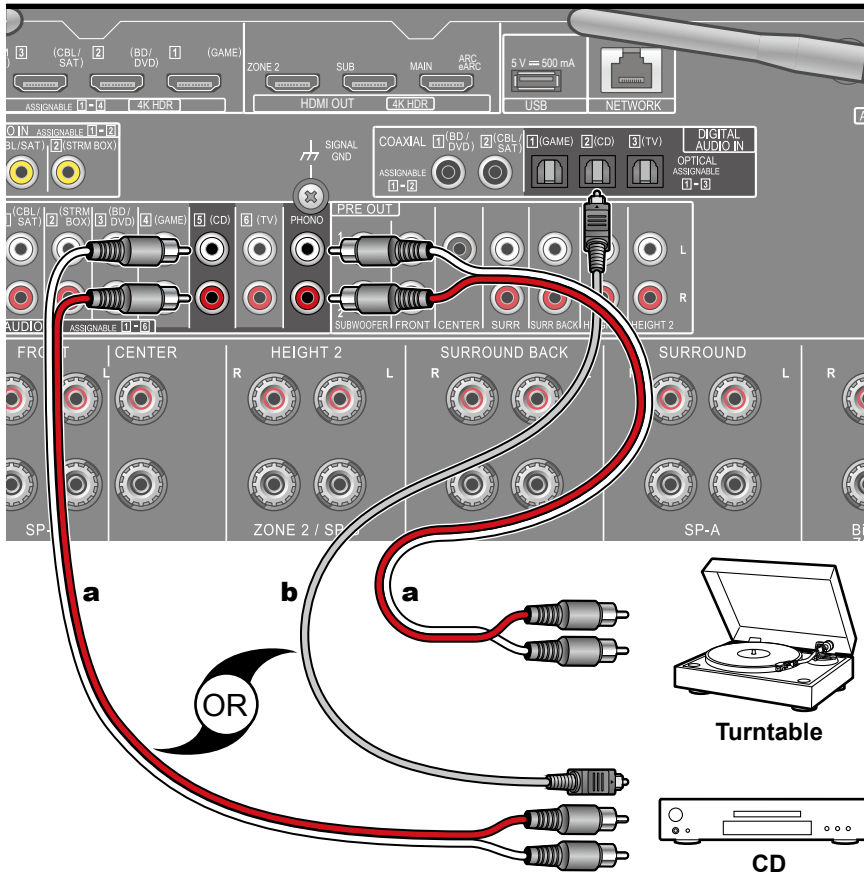
- To enjoy digital surround playback in formats such as Dolby Digital, you need to make a connection for audio signals with a digital coaxial cable or a digital optical cable.
- According to the illustration, changing the input assignment ( →[p154](#)) enables connection to jacks other than the BD/DVD jack.



### Setup

- The COMPONENT VIDEO IN jacks are compatible only with 480i or 576i resolution. When connecting to the COMPONENT VIDEO IN jacks, set the output resolution of the player to 480i or 576i. If there is no option such as 480i, select interlace. If your player does not support 480i or 576i output, use the VIDEO IN jack.
- To enjoy digital surround sound including Dolby Digital, set the audio output of the connected Blu-ray Disc player etc. to the Bitstream output.

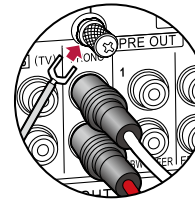
## Connecting an Audio Component



**a** Analog audio cable, **b** Digital optical cable

This is a connection example of an audio component. Connect a CD player using a digital optical cable or analog audio cable. You can also connect a turntable that has an MM-type cartridge to the PHONO jack.

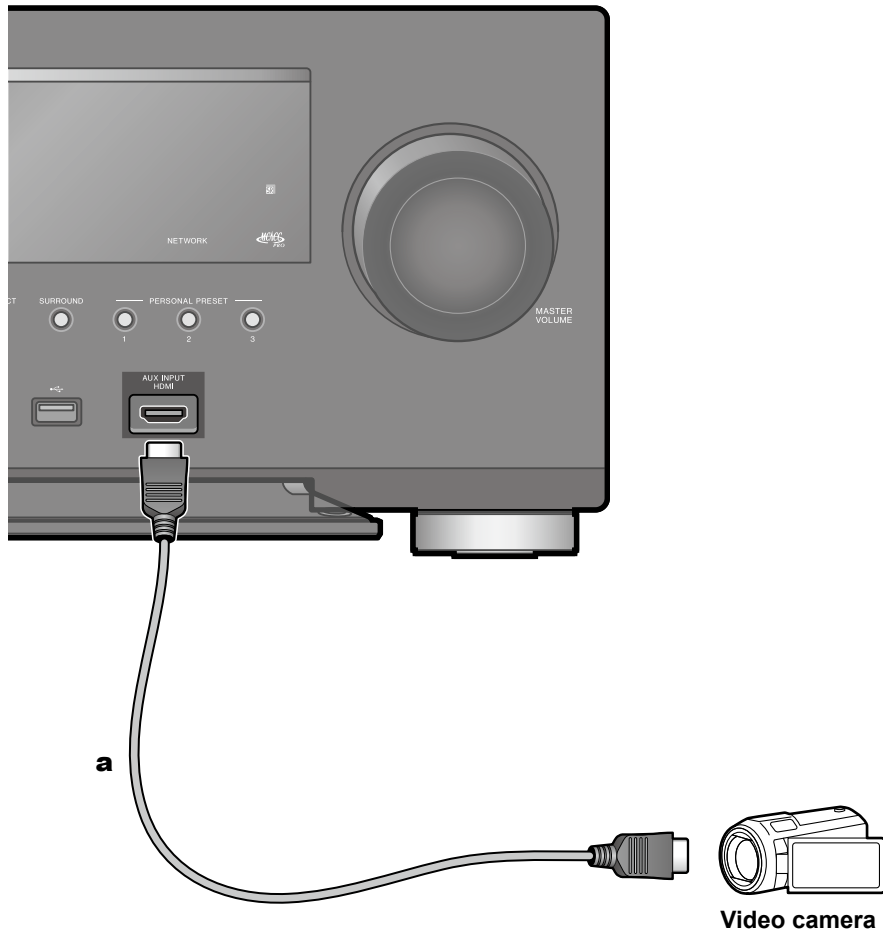
- If the turntable has a built-in phono equalizer, connect it to any of the AUDIO IN jacks other than the PHONO jack. Further, if the turntable uses an MC type cartridge, install a phono equalizer compatible with the MC type cartridge between the unit and the turntable, and then connect it to any of the AUDIO IN jacks other than the PHONO jack.



If the turntable has a ground wire, connect it to the GND terminal of this unit.

## Connecting a Video Camera, etc.

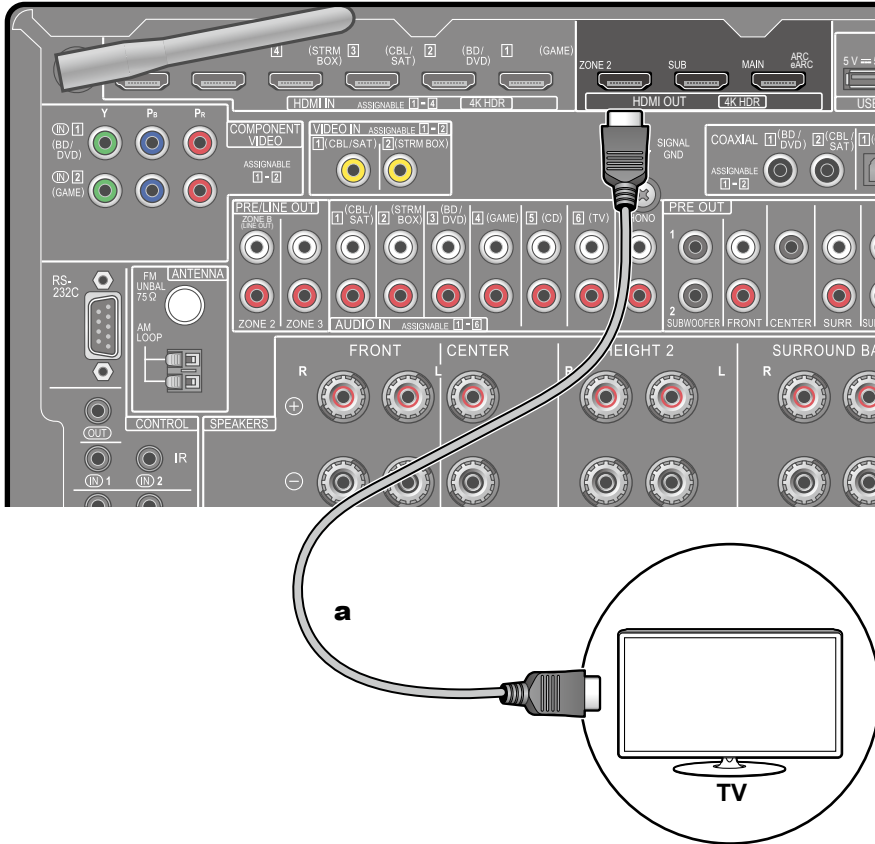
Connect a video camera, etc. to the AUX INPUT HDMI jack on the front panel using an HDMI cable.



**a** HDMI cable

## Connecting an AV Component in a Separate Room (Multi-zone Connection)

### Connecting a TV (ZONE 2)



**a** HDMI cable

While a disc is played on a Blu-ray Disc player in the main room (where this unit is located), you can play the video and audio of the same Blu-ray Disc player or another AV component on the TV equipped with an HDMI IN jack in a separate room (ZONE 2). Note that only the devices connected to the HDMI IN1 to IN3 jacks can be played on the TV in the separate room.

- The audio from externally connected AV components can be output only when the signal is 2ch PCM audio. It may also be necessary to convert the audio output of the AV component to PCM output.

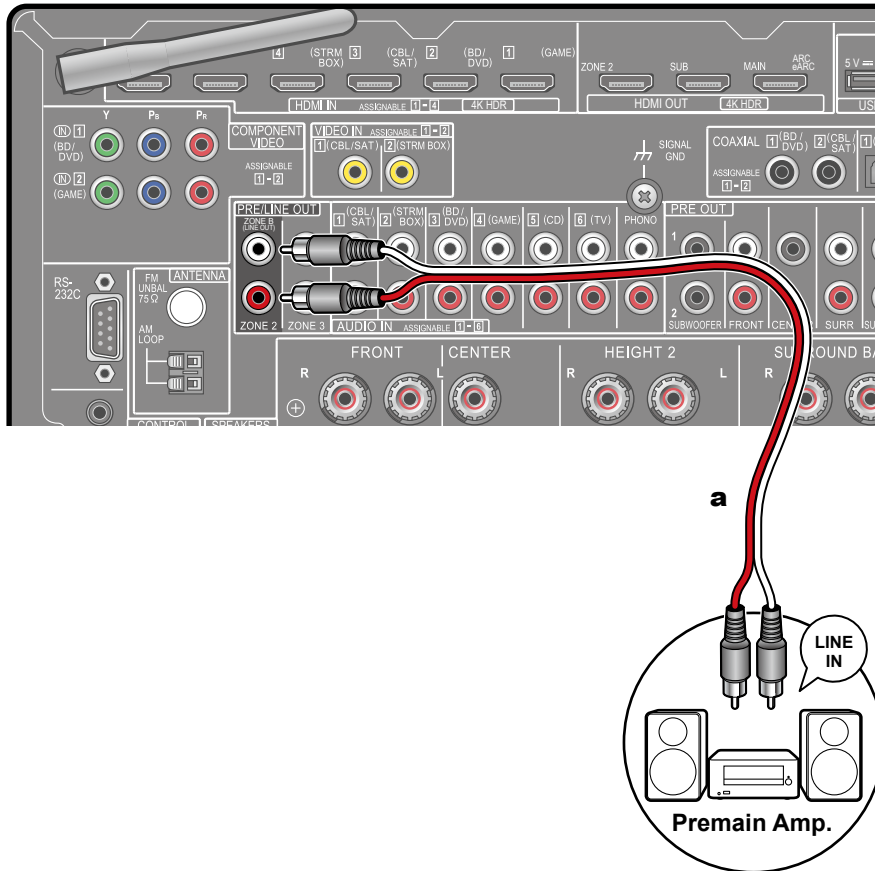


#### Setup

- When video and audio via HDMI input are output to ZONE 2, set "Input/Output Assign" - "TV Out / OSD" - "Zone 2 HDMI" ( → [p153](#) ) to "Use" on the System Setup menu.



## Connecting a Pre-main Amplifier (ZONE 2)




**a** Analog audio cable

You can enjoy 2-ch audio in the separate room (ZONE 2) while performing playback in the main room (where this unit is located). Connect the ZONE 2 PRE LINE OUT jacks of the unit and the LINE IN jacks of the pre-main amplifier or power amplifier in a separate room with an analog audio cable. The same source can be played back in the main room and ZONE 2 simultaneously. Also, different sources can be played back in both rooms.

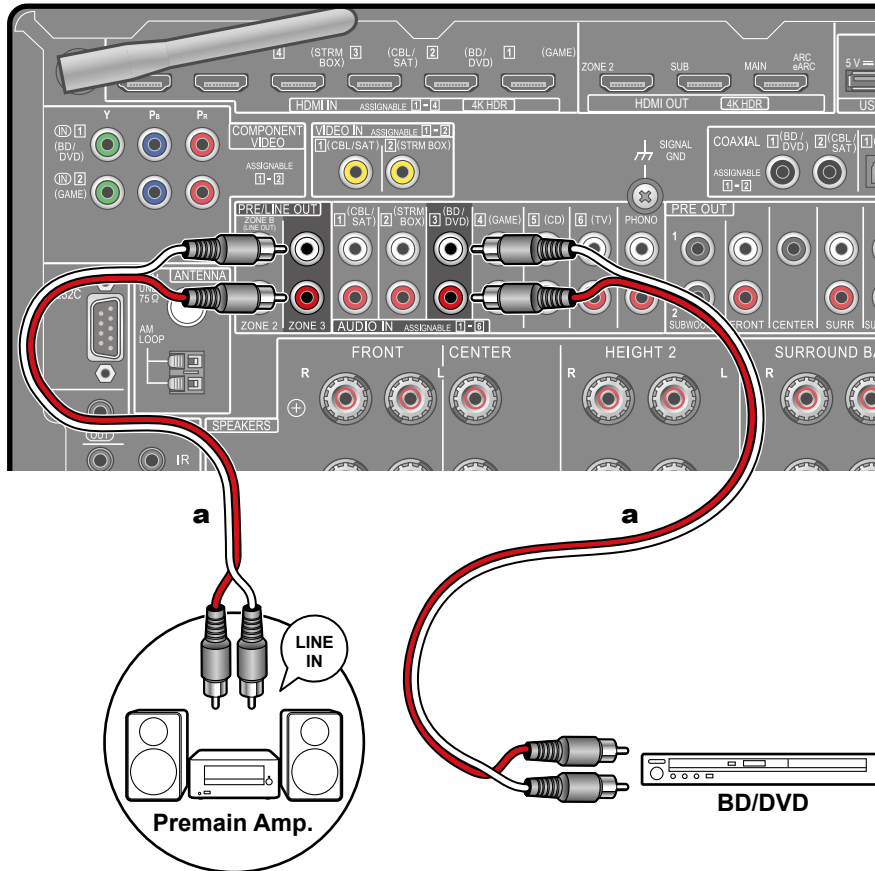
- To output audio from an externally connected AV component to ZONE 2, connect it to any of HDMI IN1 to IN3 jacks. If the AV component is not equipped with an HDMI jack, use a digital coaxial cable, digital optical cable or analog audio cable. Also, the audio from externally connected AV components can be output to ZONE 2 only when the audio is analog or 2ch PCM signal. When the AV component is connected to this unit with a digital coaxial cable or digital optical cable, change the audio output of the AV component to the PCM output.



### Setup

- Settings are required to output audio to ZONE 2. Press  on the remote controller to display the Home screen, then set "System Setup" - "Speaker" - "Configuration" - "Zone 2 Preout" (→[p159](#)) to "Zone 2".
- When connecting the power amplifier, set "Multi Zone" - "Zone 2" - "Output Level" (→[p174](#)) to "Variable" on the System Setup menu. If it is not set, a large volume is output and the power amplifier, speakers, etc. may be damaged.

## Connecting a Pre-main Amplifier (ZONE 3)



**a** Analog audio cable

You can enjoy 2-ch audio in the separate room (ZONE 3) while performing playback in the main room (where this unit is located). Use an analog cable to connect the ZONE 3 PRE/LINE OUT jack of this unit and the LINE IN jack of the pre-main amplifier or power amplifier in the separate room. The same source can be played back in the main room and ZONE 3 simultaneously. Also, different sources can be played back in both rooms.

- To output audio from an externally connected AV component to ZONE 3, use an analog audio cable for connection. Note that ZONE 3 output is not possible with the connection using a HDMI cable, digital coaxial cable, or digital optical cable.

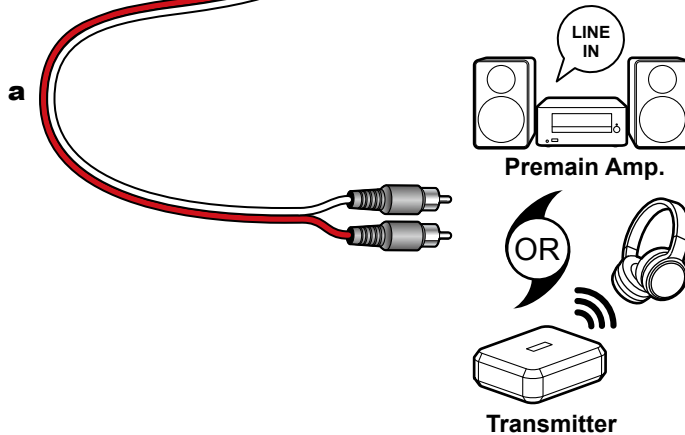
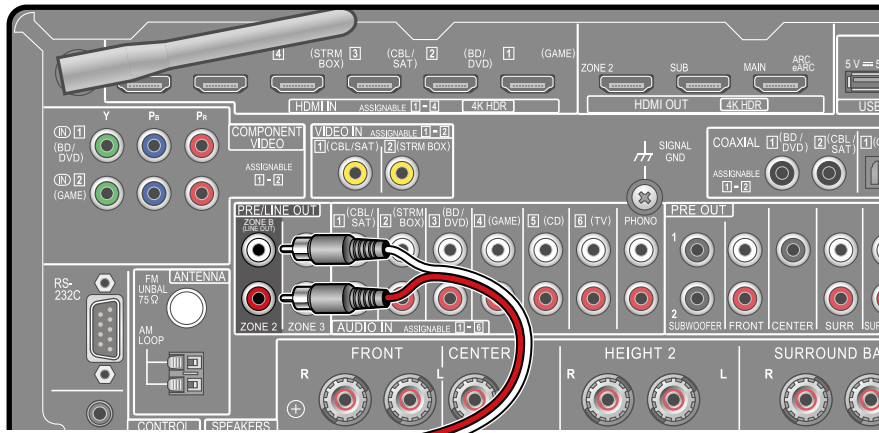


### Setup

- This function can be used when any of the combinations among 2.1 ch, 3.1 ch, 4.1 ch, 5.1 ch, 6.1 ch 7.1 ch, 2.1.2 ch, 3.1.2 ch, 4.1.2 ch, and 5.1.2 ch in "Speaker combinations" ( →p75) is used.
- When connecting the power amplifier, set "Multi Zone" - "Zone 3" - "Output Level" ( →p175) to "Variable" on the System Setup menu. If it is not set, a large volume is output and the power amplifier, speakers, etc. may be damaged.


## Connecting ZONE B

### Connecting a Pre-main Amplifier, etc. (ZONE B)




**a** Analog audio cable

While performing playback through speakers (ZONE A) connected to the unit, you can enjoy the audio of the same source at the same time with the pre-main amplifier or the transmitter of the wireless headphones connected to the ZONE B LINE OUT jack. Use an analog audio cable to connect the ZONE B LINE OUT jack of this unit and the LINE IN jack of the pre-main amplifier or the transmitter of the wireless headphones.

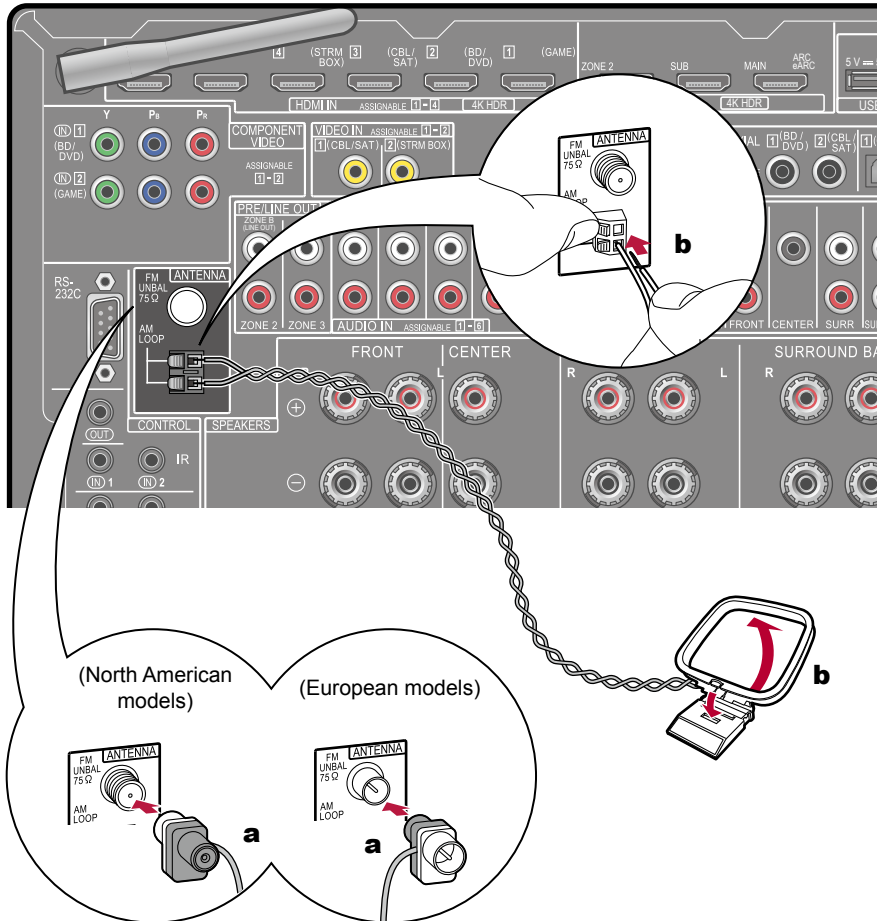
For playback, press the  button on the remote controller to display "AV Adjust", and select the audio output destination. ( → [p126](#) )



#### Setup

- A setting must be made in order to output the audio to ZONE B. Press  on the remote controller to display the Home screen, then set "System Setup" - "Speaker" - "Configuration" - "Zone 2 Preout" ( → [p159](#) ) to "Zone B".

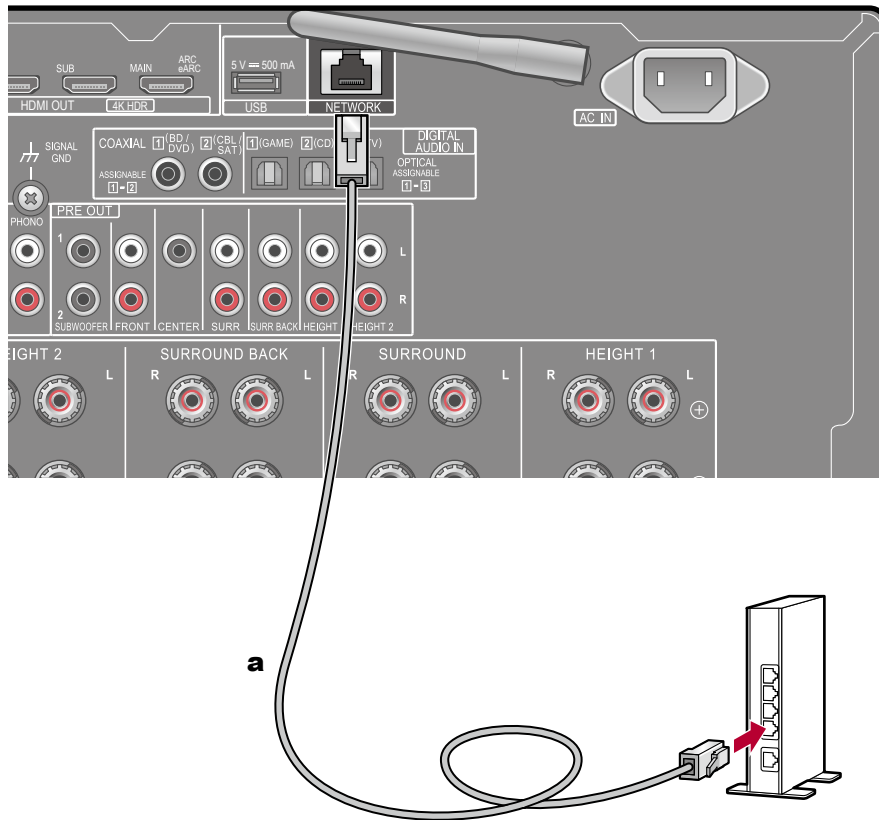
## Connecting Antennas




**a** Indoor FM antenna, **b** AM loop antenna

Connect the antenna to this unit, and set up the antenna at the best position for listening while receiving radio signals. Attach the indoor FM antenna to the wall using push pins or adhesive tape.

## Network Connection

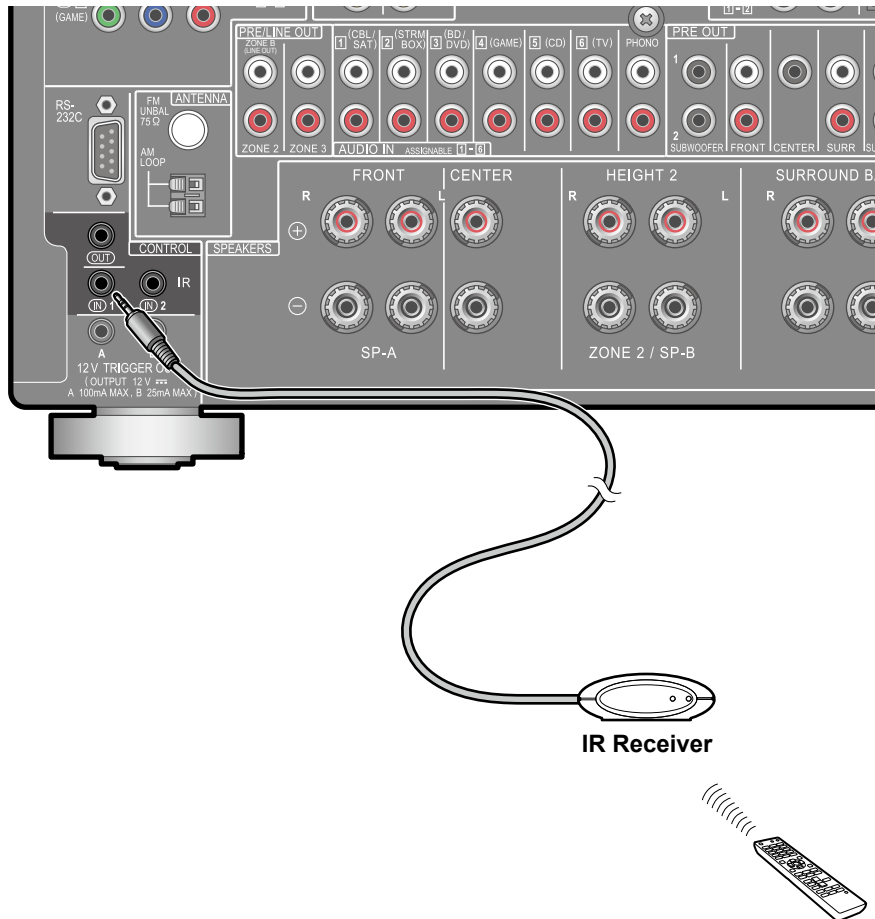


**a** LAN cable

This unit can be connected to the network using a wired LAN or Wi-Fi (wireless LAN). You can enjoy network functions such as Internet radio by network connection. If connection is made by the wired LAN, connect the router and the NETWORK jack with the LAN cable as shown in the illustration. To connect by Wi-Fi, then after selecting "5. Network Connection" in Initial Setup ( →p204), select the desired setting method and follow the on-screen instructions to configure the connection. To configure the setting on the System Setup menu after the completion of Initial Setup, press the  button on the remote controller to display the Home screen, and select "Network/ Bluetooth" - "Network" to make the setting. ( →p195) For the Wi-Fi connection, stand the wireless antenna for use.

## Connecting External Control Devices

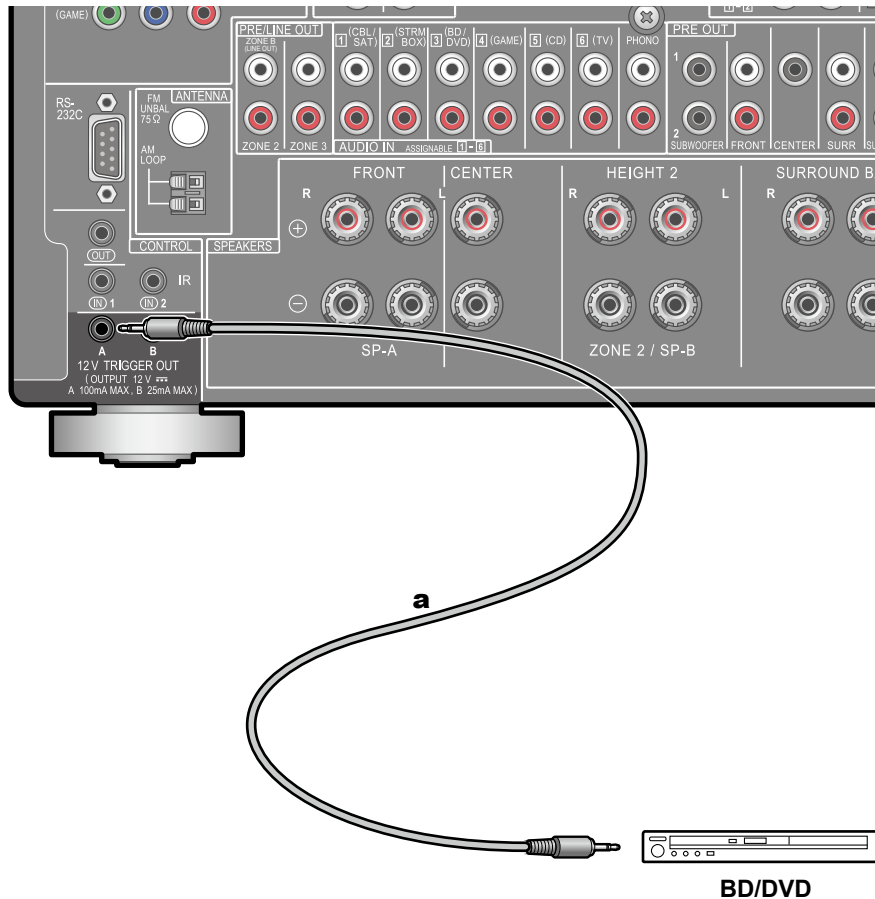
### IR IN/OUT port



When connecting a remote control receiver unit consisting of an IR Receiver, etc. to this unit, operation using the remote controller is possible even if the remote control signal is difficult to reach (due to installation in the cabinet, etc.). It is also possible to operate this unit from other room such as ZONE 2 with a remote controller, or operate other devices with the remote controller by connecting other devices to this unit. For adopting a remote control receiver unit, contact the specialized stores.

- For the type of cable required for connection, refer to the operation manual, etc. of the remote control receiver unit.

## 12V TRIGGER OUT jack

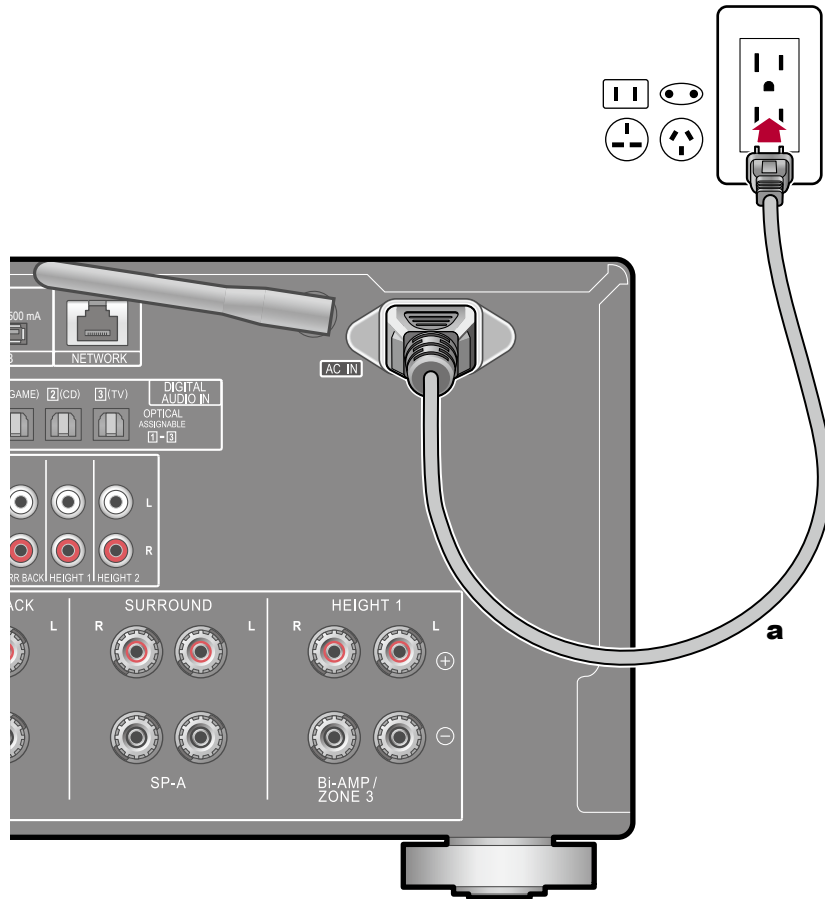


When connecting a device equipped with a TRIGGER IN jack such as a BD/DVD player to this unit, the device can be turned on or set to standby by interlocking the operation on this unit. When the desired input is selected on the unit, power link operation will be activated with a control signal of maximum 12 V/100 mA from the 12V TRIGGER OUT A jack or maximum 12 V/25 mA when using the 12V TRIGGER OUT B jack. You can select the zone to output the control signal by setting each of the inputs.

- For connection, use a monaural mini plug cable ( $\phi 1/8''/3.5$  mm) without resistance. Do not use a stereo mini plug cable.

**a** Monaural mini plug cable ( $\phi 1/8''/3.5$  mm)

## Connecting the Power Cord



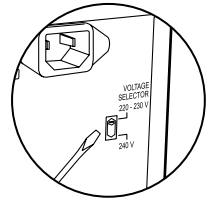
**a** Power cord

Connect the power cord after all the connections are completed.

- This unit includes a removable power cord. Be sure to connect the power cord to the AC IN of the unit first, and then connect it to the outlet. Always disconnect the outlet side first when disconnecting the power cord.

### **VOLTAGE SELECTOR (multi-voltage models only)**

Use a medium-sized screwdriver to switch the voltage to the one appropriate for your region. Before changing the voltage, first disconnect the power cord.





## **Playback**

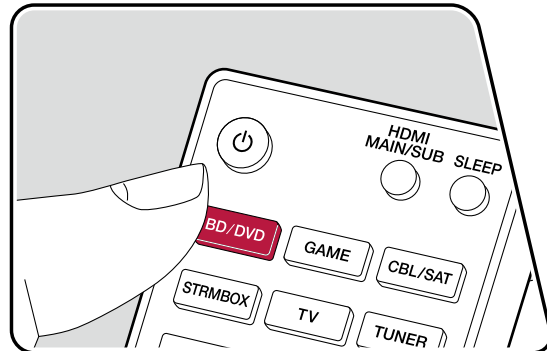
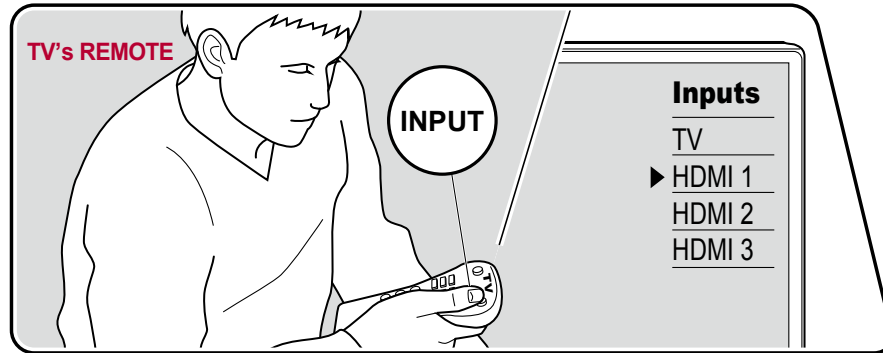
<b>AV Component Playback</b>	<b>94</b>
<b>BLUETOOTH® Playback</b>	<b>95</b>
<b>Internet Radio</b>	<b>96</b>
<b>Spotify</b>	<b>98</b>
<b>AirPlay®</b>	<b>99</b>
<b>DTS Play-Fi®</b>	<b>101</b>
<b>FlareConnect™</b>	<b>102</b>
<b>USB Storage Device</b>	<b>103</b>
<b>Playing back files on a PC and NAS (Music Server)</b>	<b>106</b>
<b>Play Queue</b>	<b>111</b>
<b>Amazon Music</b>	<b>113</b>
<b>Connecting the Sonos System for Playback</b>	<b>115</b>
<b>Listening To the AM/FM Radio</b>	<b>117</b>
<b>Multi-zone</b>	<b>122</b>
<b>ZONE B Playback</b>	<b>126</b>
<b>Convenience functions</b>	<b>127</b>
<b>Listening Mode</b>	<b>133</b>
<b>Inputting Characters</b>	<b>148</b>

## AV Component Playback

You can play the audio from AV components, such as Blu-ray disc players through this unit.

- When a TV is connected to the HDMI OUT SUB jack, use the HDMI MAIN/SUB button or "AV Adjust" (→p198) to switch between MAIN and SUB.

### Basic Operations



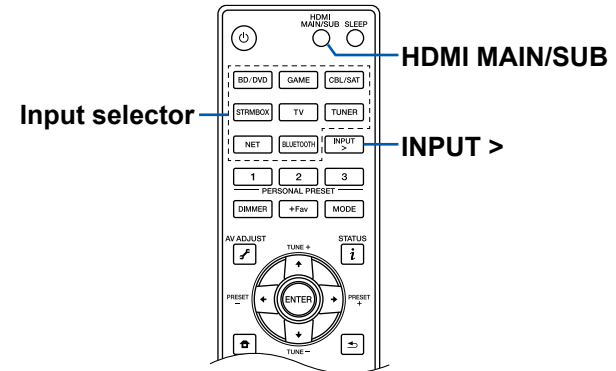
Perform the following procedure when this unit is on.

1. Switch the input on the TV to the input connected to the unit.
2. Press the input selector whose name is the same as that of the jack to which the player is connected.

For example, press BD/DVD to play the player connected to the BD/DVD jack. Press TV to listen the sound of the TV. To play a device connected to the CD, USB, PHONO, HDMI5, HDMI6 jack or the AUX INPUT HDMI jack on the front panel, press INPUT > repeatedly to select the input.

- When the CEC link function works, the input switches automatically when a CEC compliant TV or player is connected to this unit using HDMI connection.

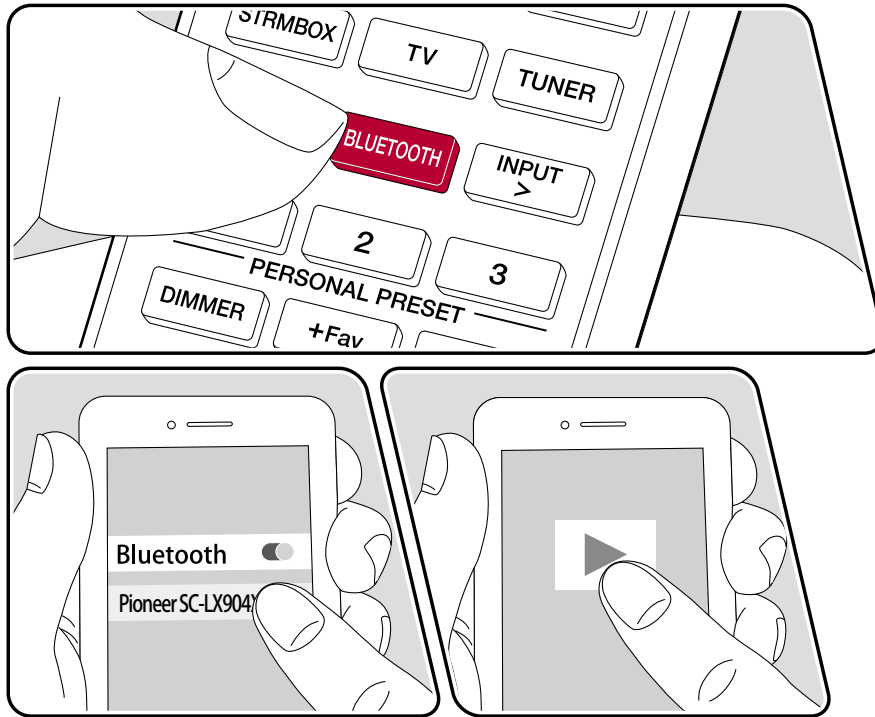
3. Start play on the AV component.



## BLUETOOTH® Playback

You can wirelessly play the audio on a BLUETOOTH-enabled device, such as a smartphone.

### Basic Operations



Perform the following procedure when this unit is on.

### Pairing

1. When you press the BLUETOOTH button, "Now Pairing..." is displayed on this unit's display, and the pairing mode is enabled.

Now Pairing...

2. Enable (turn on) the BLUETOOTH function of the BLUETOOTH-enabled device, and then select this unit from among the devices displayed. If a password is requested, enter "0000".
  - This unit is displayed as "Pioneer SC-LX904 XXXXXX". This display can be changed with the Friendly Name function (→[p195](#)) or the Pioneer Remote App (can be used with the iOS or Android™).
  - To connect another BLUETOOTH-enabled device, press and hold the BLUETOOTH button until "Now Pairing..." is displayed, and then perform step 2. This unit can store the pairing information of up to 8 paired devices.
  - The coverage area is approx. 48'/15 m. Note that connection is not always guaranteed with all BLUETOOTH-enabled devices.

### Playing Back

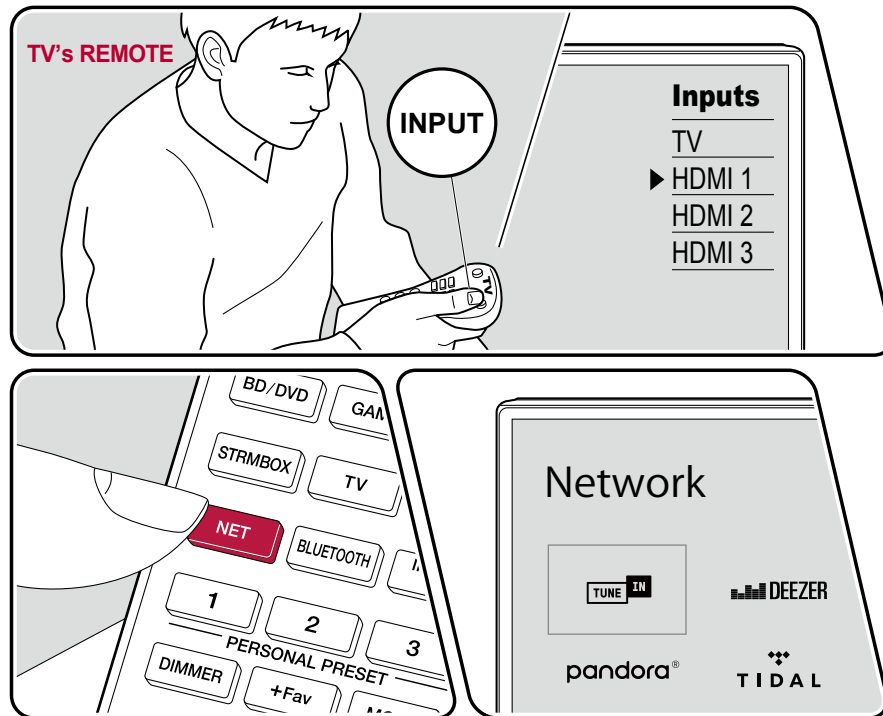
1. Perform the connection procedure on the BLUETOOTH-enabled device.
2. Playing the music file.  
The input on this unit automatically switches to "BLUETOOTH".  
Turn up the volume of the BLUETOOTH-enabled device to an appropriate level.
  - Due to the characteristics of BLUETOOTH wireless technology, the sound produced on this unit may slightly be behind the sound played on the BLUETOOTH-enabled device.

## Internet Radio

By connecting this unit to an Internet-connected network, you can enjoy Internet radio services, such as TuneIn Radio, etc.

- To play Internet radio services, the network needs to be connected to the Internet.
- Depending on the Internet radio service, a user registration may be required on your PC beforehand. For details of each service, visit the website of each service.

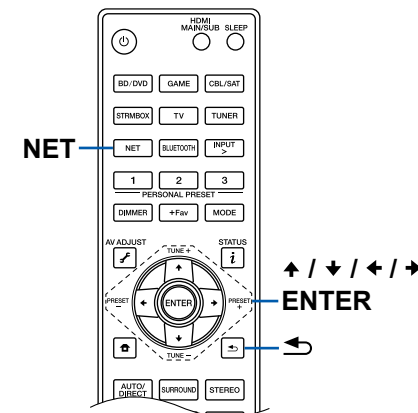
## Playing Back





The illustration shows an image.

Perform the following procedure when this unit is on.

1. Switch the input on the TV to the input connected to the unit.
2. Pressing NET will display the Network Functions list screen on the TV.
3. Select your preferred Internet radio service using cursor, and press ENTER to confirm the selection.
4. Following the on-screen instructions, select a radio station and program using cursor, and then press ENTER to play.
  - To return to the previous screen, press



## Internet Radio Service Menu

You can bookmark specific stations, or delete stations that have been bookmarked. The displayed menu varies according to the service being selected. The menu icon  is displayed while a station is being played. When only this icon is displayed, pressing ENTER will display the menu on the screen. When multiple icons are displayed, select the  icon with the cursor, and press ENTER.

## Regarding the TuneIn Radio Account

If you create an account on the TuneIn Radio website (tunein.com), and log in it from this unit, your favorite radio stations or programs you have followed on the website are automatically added to your "My Presets" on this unit. "My Presets" is displayed on the next level in the hierarchical structure of TuneIn Radio. To display a radio station added to "My Presets", you need log into TuneIn Radio from the unit. To log in, select "Login" - "I have a TuneIn account" in the "TuneIn Radio" top list on the unit, and then enter your user name and password.

- If you select "Login" on this unit, a registration code is displayed. By using this code, you can associate the device on the My Page section of the TuneIn Radio website so that you can log in from "Login" - "Login with a registration code" without entering the user name and password.

## Spotify



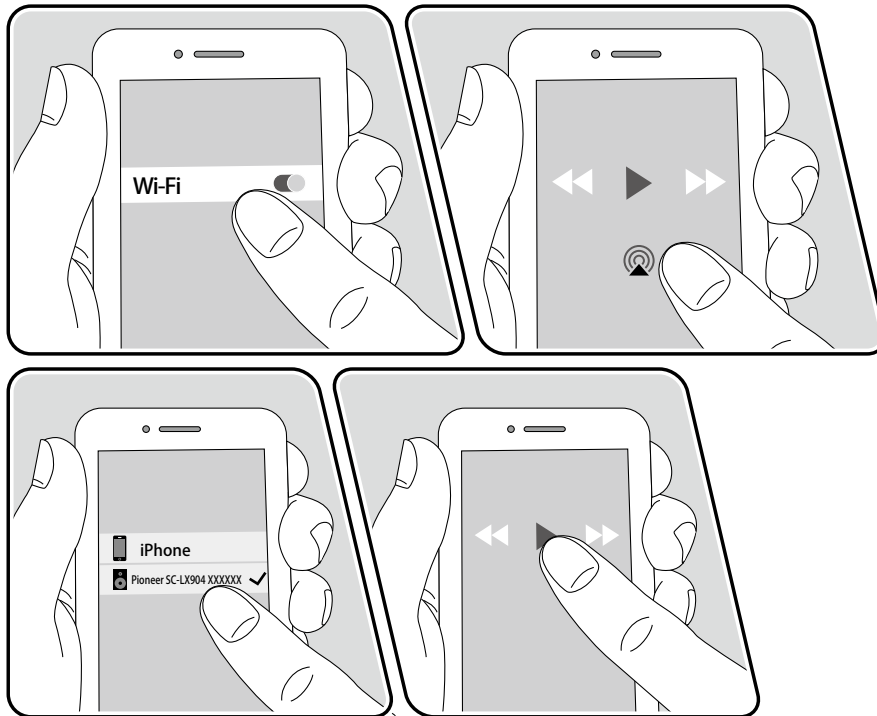
Use your phone, tablet or computer as a remote control for Spotify.  
Go to [spotify.com/connect](https://spotify.com/connect) to learn how.

## AirPlay®


By connecting this unit to the same network as iOS devices, such as iPhone®, iPod touch® and iPad®, you can enjoy music files on iOS devices wirelessly.


- Update the OS version on your iOS device to the latest version.
- Depending on the iOS version, operation screens or operation procedures on the iOS device may be different. For details, refer to the operating instructions for the iOS device.

### Playing Back on This Unit

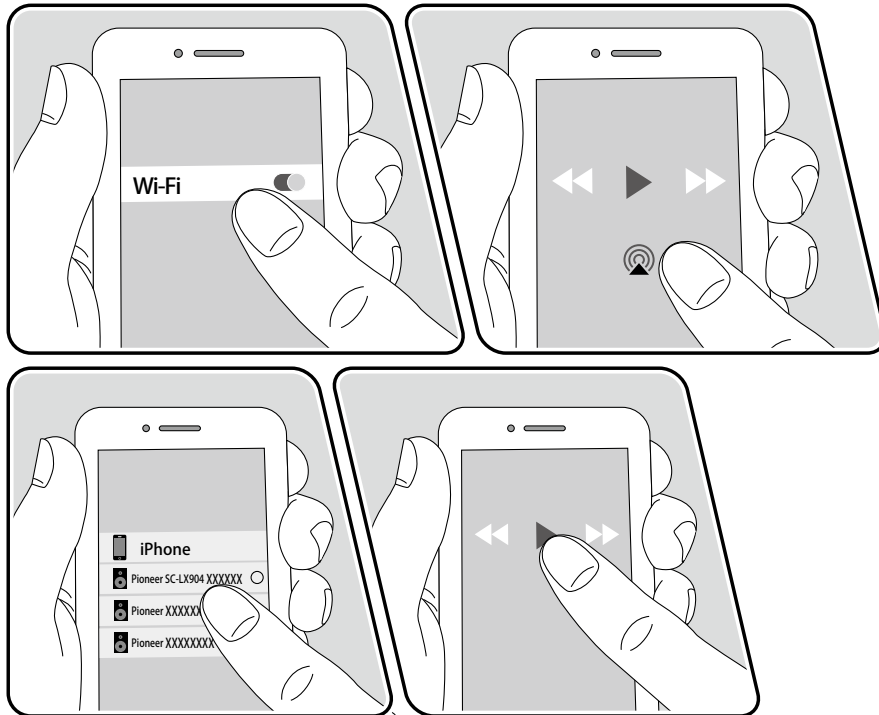


e.g., iOS 10

1. Connect the iOS device to the access point where this unit is connected via network.
2. Tap the AirPlay icon  in the play screen of the music app on an iOS device that supports Airplay and select this unit from the list of devices displayed.
3. Play the music file on the iOS device.
  - If "System Setup" - "Hardware" - "Power Management" - "Network Standby" is set to "Off" in the Home, manually turn the unit on and then press NET on the remote controller. In the factory default setting, the Network Standby function (→p169) is set to On.
  - Due to the characteristics of AirPlay wireless technology, the sound produced on this unit may slightly be behind the sound played on the AirPlay-enabled device.


You can also play the music files on a PC with iTunes (Ver. 10.2 or later) equipped. Confirm that this unit and the PC are connected to the same network beforehand. Then, press NET on the remote controller. Next, click the AirPlay icon  in iTunes, select this unit from the displayed devices, and start play of a music file.


## Playing Back on multiple devices (AirPlay2)



e.g., iOS 11.4

This unit supports AirPlay2. If the version of the iOS device is iOS11.4 or later, you can play the music of the iOS device on this unit and other devices that support AirPlay2.

1. Connect the iOS device to the access point where this unit is connected via network.
2. Tap the AirPlay icon  on the play screen of the music play application on the iOS device, and select this unit and AirPlay2-supported devices to play from the displayed devices.
  - AirPlay2-supported devices are displayed with white circle on the right side.
  - Multiple AirPlay2-supported devices can be selected.
  - The volume can be adjusted on individual devices.
3. Play the music file on the iOS device.
  - If "System Setup" - "Hardware" - "Power Management" - "Network Standby" is set to "Off" in the Home, manually turn the unit on and then press NET on the remote controller. In the factory default setting, the Network Standby function ([→p169](#)) is set to On.
  - Due to the characteristics of AirPlay wireless technology, the sound produced on this unit may slightly be behind the sound played on the AirPlay-enabled device.

You can also play the music files on a PC with iTunes (Ver. 12.8 or later) equipped. Confirm that this unit and the PC are connected to the same network beforehand. Then, press NET on the remote controller. Next, click the AirPlay icon  in iTunes, select this unit and AirPlay2-supported devices to play from the displayed devices, and start play of a music file.



## DTS Play-Fi®



<https://play-fi.com/>

When connecting this unit to the same network as mobile devices, such as a smartphone and tablet, you can enjoy music played on the mobile device wirelessly. Music from a streaming distribution service or music in the music library on a mobile device can be played. This function also supports a playlist on iTunes. Also, connecting multiple speakers supporting DTS Play-Fi on the same network will enable "Group playback" that plays the same music in separate rooms at home. To enjoy this function, download Pioneer Music Control App (available on iOS or Android™).



## Playing Back

1. Download Pioneer Music Control App using your mobile device.  
[http://intl.pioneer-audiovisual.com/playfi/app\\_p.html](http://intl.pioneer-audiovisual.com/playfi/app_p.html)



2. Connect the mobile device to the network where this unit is connected.
  3. Starting up Pioneer Music Control App will automatically display compatible devices.
  4. Select this device from the compatible devices. Then, a list of applications such as a music streaming distribution service is displayed. Select the content to play, and perform operation according to the on-screen instructions.
- If "System Setup" - "Hardware" - "Power Management" - "Network Standby" is set to "Off" in the Home, manually turn the unit on and then press NET on the remote controller. In the factory default setting, the Network Standby function (→[p169](#)) is set to On.
  - For detailed operation and FAQ, visit the following URL.  
[http://intl.pioneer-audiovisual.com/playfi/info\\_p.html](http://intl.pioneer-audiovisual.com/playfi/info_p.html)
  - To use a music streaming distribution service, user registration may be required.
  - This unit does not support the following DTS Play-Fi functions.
    - Spotify
    - Wireless Surround Sound
    - Line In Rebroadcast
    - Internet Radio
  - Some of the settings in the "Setup menu" cannot be changed on this unit. To change those settings, cancel the connection of this unit from the application.
  - Listening modes cannot be selected during playback.

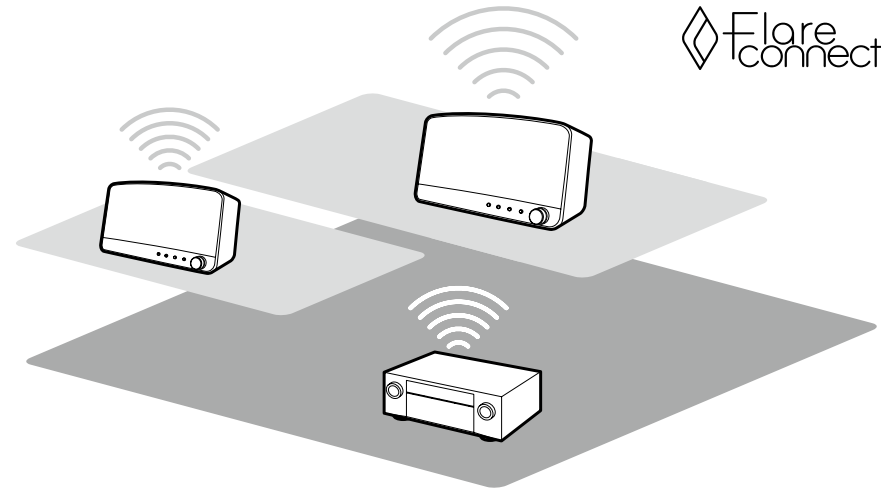
## FlareConnect™



When downloading Pioneer Remote App (available on iOS or Android™) to mobile devices, such as a smartphone and tablet, you can enjoy the group playback that plays the same music on multiple audio products supporting the FlareConnect function. You can play audio from external playback devices connected to each product, music from an Internet radio or network audio service such as a music streaming distribution service, and music in the music library on a mobile device.

### Playing Back

1. Connect this unit and other devices supporting FlareConnect to the same network.
2. Download Pioneer Remote App from App Store or Google Play™ Store.
3. Connect the mobile device to the network where this unit is connected.
4. Starting up Pioneer Remote App will automatically recognize compatible devices.
5. Select the screen of the compatible device to operate, and tap the Group icon at the bottom of the screen.
6. Add a check mark for the audio product on which you want to play the same music.
7. Select the content to play, and operate according to the on-screen instructions.
  - If "System Setup" - "Hardware" - "Power Management" - "Network Standby" is set to "Off" in the Home, manually turn the unit on and then press NET on the remote controller. In the factory default setting, the Network Standby function (→p169) is set to On. For other devices, check their respective instruction manuals.

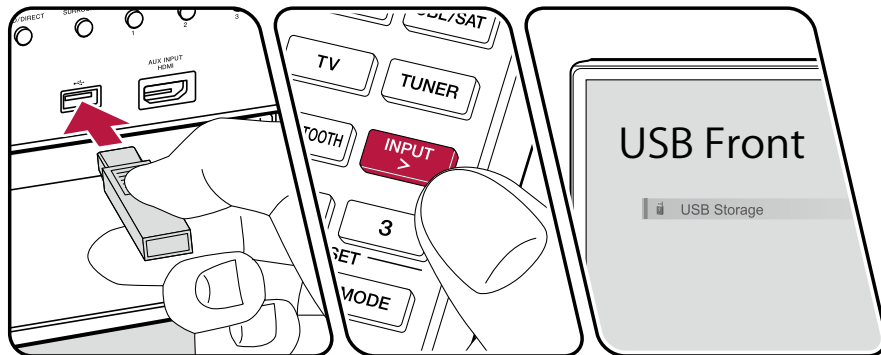
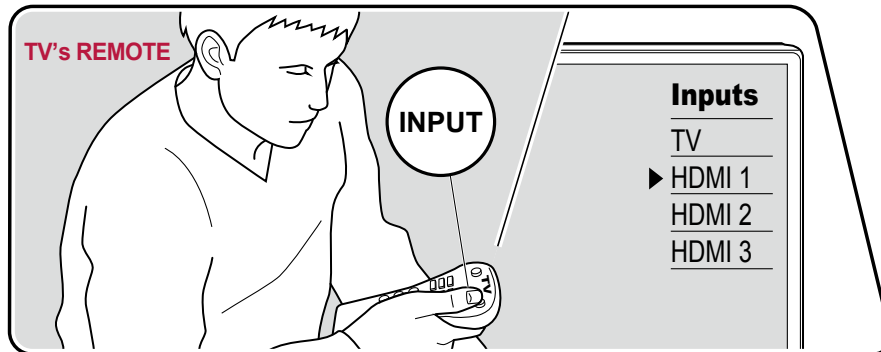


The illustration shows an image.

## USB Storage Device

You can play music files stored on a USB storage device.

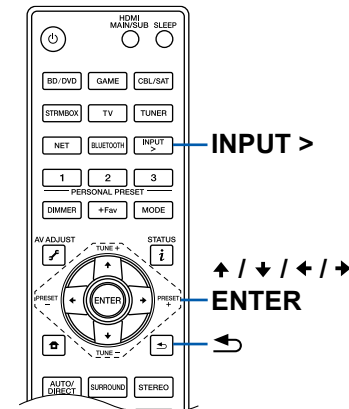
### Basic Operations




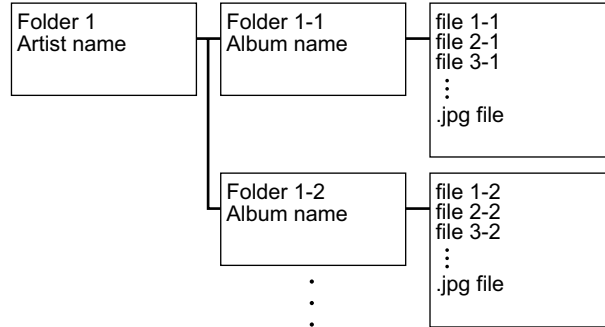
The illustration shows an image.

Perform the following procedure when this unit is on.

1. Switch the input on the TV to the input connected to the unit.
2. Plug your USB storage device with the music files into the USB port either on the front panel or rear panel of this unit.
3. Press **INPUT >** and select "USB Front" or "USB Rear".
  - If the "USB" indicator blinks on the display, check whether the USB storage device is plugged in properly.
  - Do not unplug the USB storage device while "Connecting..." is being displayed on the display. This may cause data corruption or malfunction.
4. Press **ENTER** in the next screen. The list of folders and music files on the USB storage device is displayed. Select the folder with the cursors, and press **ENTER** to confirm your selection.
5. Select the music file with the cursors, and then press **ENTER** to start playback.



- To return to the previous screen, press .
- To display an album title, artist name and album art of a file in WAV format, make the folder structure and file names as shown below when saving music files. The album art can be displayed by saving a .jpg file to display on the screen in the folder of bottom level. Note that a large volume of .jpg file may take time to be displayed, or may not be displayed.



- Characters that cannot be displayed on this unit appear with "\*"
- The USB port of this unit complies with the USB 2.0 standard. The transfer speed may be insufficient for some content you play, and sound interruptions, etc. may occur.
- Note that operation is not always guaranteed for all USB storage devices.
- This unit can use USB storage devices that comply with the USB mass storage class standard. Also the format of USB storage devices supports FAT16 or FAT32 file system format.

**□ Device and Supported Format ( →[p105](#))**

## Device and Supported Format

### USB Storage Device Requirements

- This unit can use USB storage devices that comply with the USB mass storage class standard.
- The format of USB storage devices supports FAT16 or FAT32 file system format.
- If the USB storage device has been partitioned, each section will be treated as an independent device.
- Up to 20,000 tracks per folder are supported, and folders can be nested up to 16 levels deep.
- USB hubs and USB storage devices with hub functions are not supported. Do not connect these devices to the unit.
- USB storage devices with security functions are not supported on this unit.
- If an AC adapter is supplied with the USB storage device, connect the AC adapter, and use it with a household outlet.
- Media inserted to the USB card reader may not be available in this function. Furthermore, depending on the USB storage device, proper reading of the contents may not be possible.
- In use of a USB storage device, Our company accepts no responsibility whatsoever for the loss or modification of data stored on a USB storage device, or malfunction of the USB storage device. We recommend that you back up the data stored on a USB storage device before using it with this unit.

### Supported Audio Formats

This unit supports the following music file formats. Note that sound files that are protected by copyright cannot be played on this unit.

#### MP3 (.mp3/.MP3):

- Supported formats: MPEG-1/MPEG-2 Audio Layer 3
- Supported sampling rates: 44.1 kHz, 48 kHz
- Supported bitrates: Between 8 kbps and 320 kbps, and VBR

#### WMA (.wma/.WMA):

- Supported sampling rates: 44.1 kHz, 48 kHz
- Supported bitrates: Between 5 kbps and 320 kbps, and VBR
- WMA Pro/Voice/WMA Lossless formats are not supported.

#### WAV (.wav/.WAV):

WAV files contain uncompressed PCM digital audio.

- Supported sampling rates: 44.1 kHz, 48 kHz, 88.2 kHz, 96 kHz, 176.4 kHz, 192 kHz
- Quantization bit: 8 bit, 16 bit, 24 bit

#### AIFF (.aiff/.aif/.AIFF/.AIF):

AIFF files contain uncompressed PCM digital audio.

- Supported sampling rates: 44.1 kHz, 48 kHz, 88.2 kHz, 96 kHz, 176.4 kHz, 192 kHz
- Quantization bit: 8 bit, 16 bit, 24 bit

#### AAC (.aac/.m4a/.mp4/.3gp/.3g2/.AAC/.M4A/.MP4/.3GP/.3G2):

- Supported formats: MPEG-2/MPEG-4 Audio
- Supported sampling rates: 44.1 kHz, 48 kHz, 88.2 kHz, 96 kHz
- Supported bitrates: Between 8 kbps and 320 kbps, and VBR

#### FLAC (.flac/.FLAC):

- Supported sampling rates: 44.1 kHz, 48 kHz, 88.2 kHz, 96 kHz, 176.4 kHz, 192 kHz
- Quantization bit: 8 bit, 16 bit, 24 bit

#### Apple Lossless (.m4a/.mp4/.M4A/.MP4):

- Supported sampling rates: 44.1 kHz, 48 kHz, 88.2 kHz, 96 kHz, 176.4 kHz, 192 kHz
- Quantization bit: 16 bit, 24 bit

#### DSD (.dsf/.dff/.DSF/.DFF):

- Supported formats: DSF/DSDIFF
- Supported sampling rates: 2.8 MHz, 5.6 MHz, 11.2 MHz

- When playing files recorded with VBR (Variable bit-rate), the playback time may not be displayed correctly.
- This unit supports the gapless playback of the USB storage device in the following conditions.

When continuously playing WAV, FLAC and Apple Lossless files with the same format, sampling frequency, the number of channels and quantization bit rate.

## Playing back files on a PC and NAS (Music Server)

Streaming play of music files stored on PCs or NAS devices connected to the same network as this unit is supported.

- The network servers supported by this unit are PCs that incorporate players equipped with the server functions such as Windows Media® Player 11 or 12, or NASes supporting the home network function. When using Windows Media® Player 11 or 12, you need to make the settings beforehand. Note that with PCs, only music files registered in the library of Windows Media® Player can be played.

### Windows Media® Player settings

#### On Windows Media® Player 11

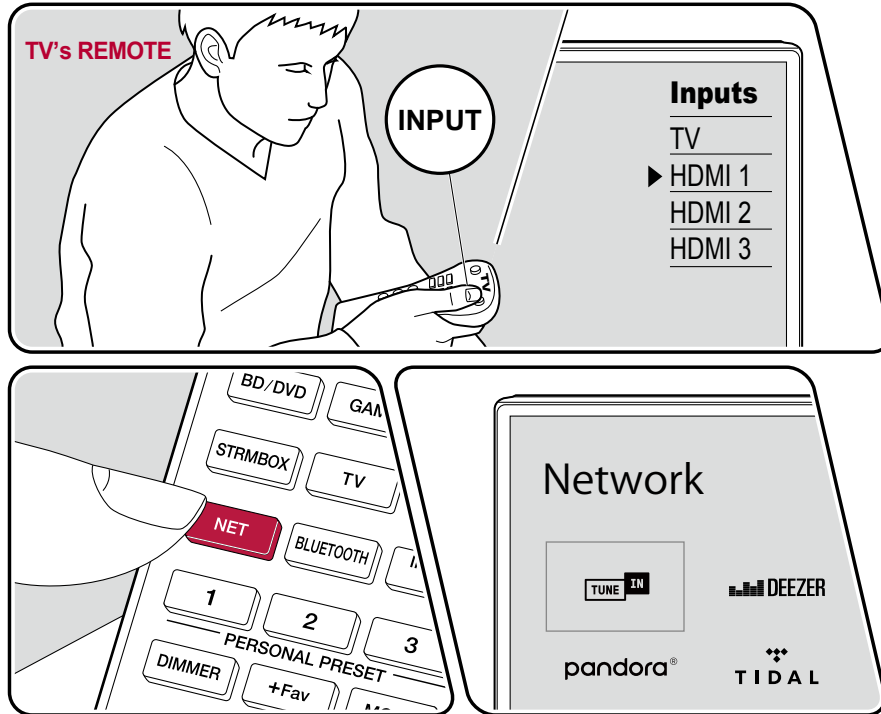
1. Turn on your PC, and start Windows Media® Player 11.
2. In the "Library" menu, select "Media Sharing" to display a dialog box.
3. Select the "Share my media" check box, and then click "OK" to display the compatible devices.
4. Select this unit, and then click "Allow".
  - When it is clicked, the corresponding icon is checked.
5. Click "OK" to close the dialog.
  - Depending on the version of Windows Media® Player, the names of items to select may differ from the above description.

#### On Windows Media® Player 12

1. Turn on your PC, and start Windows Media® Player 12.
2. In the "Stream" menu, select "Turn on media streaming" to display a dialog box.
  - If the media streaming is already turned on, select "More streaming options..." in the "Stream" menu to display the list of playback devices in the network, and then go to step 4.
3. Click "Turn on media streaming" to display the list of playback devices in the network.
4. Select this unit in "Media streaming options" and check that it is set to "Allow".
5. Click "OK" to close the dialog.
  - Depending on the version of Windows Media® Player, the names of items to select may differ from the above description.

□ **Playing Back** ( →[p107](#))

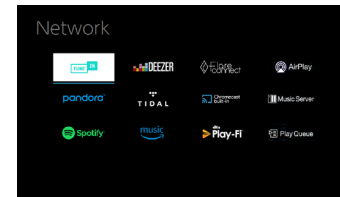
## Playing Back



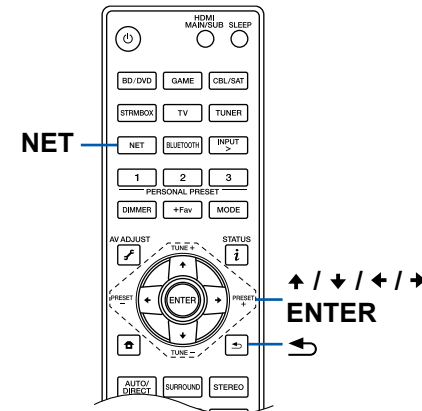
The illustration shows an image.

Perform the following procedure when this unit is on.

1. Switch the input on the TV to the input connected to the unit.
2. Start the server (Windows Media® Player 11, Windows Media® Player 12, or NAS device) containing the music files to play.
3. Make sure that the PC or NAS is properly connected to the same network as this unit.
4. Press NET to display the network service list screen.
  - If the "NET" indicator on the display blinks, the unit is not properly connected to the network. Check the connection.



5. With the cursors, select "Music Server", and then press ENTER.



6. Select the target server with the cursors, and press ENTER to display the items list screen.
  - This unit cannot access pictures and videos stored on servers.
  - Depending on the server sharing settings, contents stored on the server may not be displayed.
7. With the cursors, select the music file to play, and then press ENTER to start playback.
  - If "No Item" is displayed on the screen, check whether the network is properly connected.
  - To return to the previous screen, press ⏪.
  - For music files on a server, up to 20,000 tracks per folder are supported, and folders can be nested up to 16 levels deep.
  - Depending on the type of media server, the unit may not recognize it, or may not be able to play its music files.

## Searching music files to select

If the server you use supports search functions, the following search function can be used.

Perform the following procedure with available servers displayed using Music Server.

1. With ▲ / ▼, select the server containing music files you want to play, and select ENTER.
2. With ▲ / ▼, select the Search folder, and press ENTER. The Search folder contains the following three folders.
  - "Search by Artist": Select this when searching by artist name.
  - "Search by Album": Select this when searching by album title.
  - "Search by Track": Select this when searching by track title.
3. With ▲ / ▼, select the folder, and press ENTER.
4. Input a character string to search for, and press ENTER. Then, the search result is displayed.
5. With ▲ / ▼, select the music files to play, and select ENTER.

## Controlling Remote Playback from a PC

You can use this unit to play music files stored on your PC by operating the PC in your home network. The unit supports remote playback via Windows Media® Player 12. To use the remote playback function of this unit with Windows Media®

Player 12, it must be configured beforehand.

### Setting PC

1. Turn on your PC, and start Windows Media® Player 12.
2. In the "Stream" menu, select "Turn on media streaming" to display a dialog box.
  - If the media streaming is already turned on, select "More streaming options..." in the "Stream" menu to display the list of playback devices in the network, and then go to step 4.
3. Click "Turn on media streaming" to display the list of playback devices in the network.
4. Select this unit in "Media streaming options" and check that it is set to "Allow".
5. Click "OK" to close the dialog box.
6. Open the "Stream" menu and confirm that "Allow remote control of my Player..." is checked.
  - Depending on the version of Windows Media® Player, the names of items to select may differ from the above description.

### Remote playback

1. Turn on the power of the unit.
2. Turn on your PC, and start Windows Media® Player 12.
3. Select and right-click the music file to play with Windows Media® Player 12.
  - To remotely play a music file on another server, open the target server from "Other Libraries", and select the music file to play.
4. Select this unit in "Play to" to open the "Play to" window of Windows Media® Player 12, and start playback on this unit.
  - If your PC is running on Windows® 8.1, click "Play to", and select this unit. If your PC is running on Windows® 10, click "Cast to Device", and select this unit. Operations during remote playback are possible from the "Play to" window on the PC. The playback screen is displayed on the HDMI-connected TV.
5. Adjust the volume using the volume bar on the "Play to" window.
  - Sometimes, the volume displayed on the remote playback window may differ from the volume displayed on the display of this unit.
  - When the volume is changed on this unit, the value is not reflected in the "Play to" window.
  - This unit cannot play music files remotely in the following conditions.
    - It is using a network service.



- It is playing a music file on a USB storage device.
- Depending on the version of Windows Media® Player, the names of items to select may differ from the above description.

□ **Supported Audio Formats ( →[p110](#))**

## Supported Audio Formats

This unit supports the following music file formats. Remote play of FLAC and DSD is not supported.

### MP3 (.mp3/.MP3):

- Supported formats: MPEG-1/MPEG-2 Audio Layer 3
- Supported sampling rates: 44.1 kHz, 48 kHz
- Supported bitrates: Between 8 kbps and 320 kbps, and VBR

### WMA (.wma/.WMA):

- Supported sampling rates: 44.1 kHz, 48 kHz
- Supported bitrates: Between 5 kbps and 320 kbps, and VBR
- WMA Pro/Voice/WMA Lossless formats are not supported.

### WAV (.wav/.WAV):

WAV files contain uncompressed PCM digital audio.

- Supported sampling rates: 44.1 kHz, 48 kHz, 88.2 kHz, 96 kHz, 176.4 kHz, 192 kHz
- Quantization bit: 8 bit, 16 bit, 24 bit

### AIFF (.aiff/.aif/.AIFF/.AIF):

AIFF files contain uncompressed PCM digital audio.

- Supported sampling rates: 44.1 kHz, 48 kHz, 88.2 kHz, 96 kHz, 176.4 kHz, 192 kHz
- Quantization bit: 8 bit, 16 bit, 24 bit

### AAC (.aac/.m4a/.mp4/.3gp/.3g2/.AAC/.M4A/.MP4/.3GP/.3G2):

- Supported formats: MPEG-2/MPEG-4 Audio
- Supported sampling rates: 44.1 kHz, 48 kHz, 88.2 kHz, 96 kHz
- Supported bitrates: Between 8 kbps and 320 kbps, and VBR

### FLAC (.flac/.FLAC):

- Supported sampling rates: 44.1 kHz, 48 kHz, 88.2 kHz, 96 kHz, 176.4 kHz, 192 kHz
- Quantization bit: 8 bit, 16 bit, 24 bit

### LPCM (Linear PCM):

- Supported sampling rates: 44.1 kHz, 48 kHz
- Quantization bit: 16 bit

### Apple Lossless (.m4a/.mp4/.M4A/.MP4):

- Supported sampling rates: 44.1 kHz, 48 kHz, 88.2 kHz, 96 kHz
- Quantization bit: 16 bit, 24 bit

### DSD (.dsf/.dff/.DSF/.DFF):

- Supported formats: DSF/DSDIFF
- Supported sampling rates: 2.8 MHz, 5.6 MHz, 11.2 MHz
- When playing files recorded with VBR (Variable bit-rate), the playback time may not be displayed correctly.
- Remote playback does not support the gapless playback.

## Play Queue



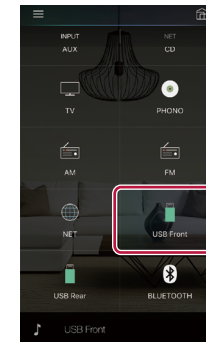
When downloading Pioneer Remote App (available on iOS or Android™) to mobile devices, such as a smartphone and tablet, you can save your favorite playlist (Play Queue information) among music files stored in the USB storage device connected to this unit and music files stored in PC or NAS connected to the same network as this unit, and you can play the music on the playlist. The Play Queue information is effective until the power cord of this unit is removed from the outlet.

### Initial Setup

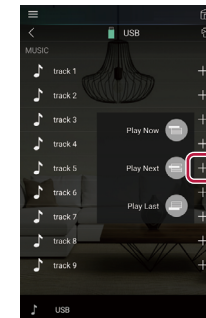
1. Connect this unit to your home network by the network settings on this unit.
2. Download Pioneer Remote App from App Store or Google Play™ Store.
3. Connect the mobile device to the network where this unit is connected.
4. Start up Pioneer Remote App, and select this unit.

### Adding Play Queue Information

1. Select the "INPUT" input on the application screen, and tap the "USB" icon. Or, select the "NET" input, and tap the "USB" icon or "Music Server" icon. (Depending on the model, the icon names may be different.)



2. Tapping the "+" icon of the track you want to add will open the pop-up to add the Play Queue information.

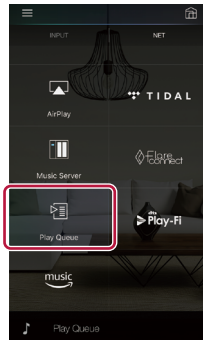


3. Touch the "Play Now" (⏮️), "Play Next" (⏭️) or "Play Last" (⏪️) icon to add the track to Play Queue.

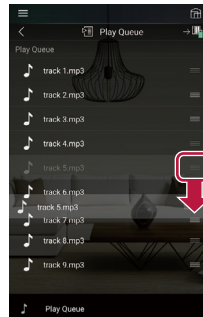
- If there are no tracks on the Play Queue list, only "Play Now" is displayed.

## Sort and Delete

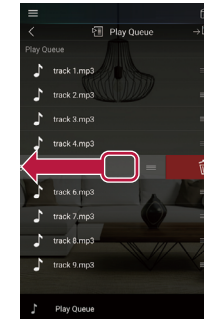
1. Select the "NET" input, tap the "Play Queue" icon, and enter the Play Queue service screen.



2. Tap the "≡" icon of the track to sort, and drag the icon to the destination.



3. To delete a track, slide the track to the left until the trash icon changes to "🗑️". If the device is on iOS, slide the "≡" icon to the left. Releasing your finger will delete the track from Play Queue.



## Playing Back

Playback starts when you select "Play Now" for Play Queue addition, or select the track in the Play Queue service screen.

## Amazon Music



You can use the music distribution service provided by Amazon by registering with Amazon Music. Register this unit by downloading the Pioneer Remote App (available for iOS and Android™) to your mobile device, for example a smartphone or tablet, and register from the Pioneer Remote App screen.

- To play Amazon Music you need to have an Amazon account and to be a member of Amazon Prime and Amazon Music Unlimited. For more information, see the Amazon website.

Amazon Music is now available in several countries. If Amazon Music is not available in your country, please visit <https://music.amazon.com/> for more info.

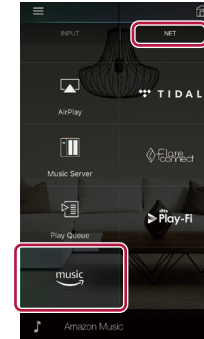


### Registering this unit with Amazon Music

- Use the Pioneer Remote App to register to Amazon Music. Registration is not possible using this unit.
1. Connect this unit to your home network by the network settings on this unit.
  2. Use the mobile device to download the Pioneer Remote App.
  3. Connect the mobile device to the network where this unit is connected.
  4. The unit is automatically displayed when you start the Pioneer Remote App. Tap the unit when displayed to select it.
  5. Tap "NET" or "NETWORK" at the top of the Pioneer Remote App screen, and

after switching to the network screen, tap the "Amazon Music" icon to display the Amazon Music login screen. (Depending on the model, the icon names may be different.)

- If the login screen is not displayed, but rather a screen prompting installation of Service Unlocker, then install that first.



Available services may differ depending on your area.

6. Enter the information required for the Amazon account, such as your email address and password, to log into Amazon. The Amazon Music menu is displayed when login is successful and this unit is registered. To continue to start play, proceed to step 3 in the next section.

### Playing Amazon Music using the Pioneer Remote App

1. Start the Pioneer Remote App. This unit is displayed automatically when the app is started, so tap the unit when displayed to select it.
2. Tap "NET" or "NETWORK" at the top of the screen, and after switching to the network screen, tap the "Amazon Music" icon.
3. Select the content that you want to play in the menu screen for Amazon Music and start play.

## Playing Amazon Music using the remote controller

---

1. Switch the input on the TV to the input connected to the unit.
2. Pressing NET will display the Network Functions list screen on the TV.
3. Select “Amazon Music” with the cursors and press ENTER to confirm.
4. Select the content that you want to play in the menu screen for Amazon Music and start play.

## Connecting the Sonos System for Playback


By connecting this unit and a Sonos Connect, you can transfer music and sound sources on the Sonos App to this unit. By going through the Sonos Connect, you can play this unit through other Sonos devices in the network in the same group, or you can just play on this unit. Furthermore, by connecting this unit and the Sonos Connect to the same network, the power of this unit turns on automatically when music starts playing, and the linked function to switch input works.

- If "System Setup" - "Hardware" - "Power Management" - "Network Standby" is set to "Off" in the Home, manually turn the unit on and then press NET on the remote controller. In the factory default setting, the Network Standby function (→p169) is set to On.

### Necessary Equipment




- Sonos Connect
- RCA Audio Cable (Supplied with Sonos Connect)

### How to Connect This Unit and Sonos Connect



1. Connect the Sonos Connect to the AUDIO IN jack of this unit with the RCA audio cable supplied with the Sonos Connect. Any input can be used other than the PHONO input.
  - You can also connect with a digital cable. For details, refer to the instruction manual of the Sonos.
  - You can rename the input that is displayed on the unit to a more logical name. For example, you can change the name of input that the Sonos Connect is plugged into from "CD" (or other input) to "SONOS". Press the  button on the remote controller to display the Home screen, and select "System Setup" - "Source" - "Name Edit" to change the name.

### Setting Up

A setup is required to play Sonos on this unit. Make the setting according to the following procedure.

1. Press the  button on the remote controller to display the Home screen, select "System Setup" - "Hardware" - "Works with SONOS", and press the ENTER button.
2. Select the following items with the cursors  /  and set each item.

#### Input Selector:

Enable the interlocking function with the Sonos Connect. With the cursors  / , select the input selector to which the Sonos Connect is connected.

#### Connected Device:

Press the ENTER button to display Sonos devices connected to the same network as the network of this unit. Select the Sonos Connect connected to the unit and press the ENTER button.

- Products (e.g. Play:3 unequipped with an output terminal) other than the Sonos Connect are also displayed in the device list and selectable. In that case, when playback on the Sonos side starts, the input is switched, however, audio is not output. Select the room name of the connected Sonos Connect.
- Up to 32 devices can be displayed on the Sonos product list screen. If you cannot find the Sonos Connect to be interlocked, return to the previous screen, turn off the product you do not want to interlock, and try again.

#### Output Zone:

With the cursors  / , select the ZONE where you want to listen to the music.

"Main": Outputs audio only to the main room (where this unit is located).

"Zone 2": Outputs audio only to the separate room (ZONE 2).

"Main/Zone 2": Outputs audio to both the main room and separate room.

"Zone 3": Outputs audio only to the separate room (ZONE 3).

"Main/Zone 3": Outputs audio to both the main room and separate room (ZONE 3).

"Zone 2/Zone 3": Outputs audio to both the separate rooms (ZONE 2 and ZONE 3).

"Main/Zone 2/Zone 3": Outputs audio to the main room and both separate rooms (ZONE 2 and ZONE 3).

**Preset Volume:**

You can set the volume that Sonos Connect will be played at in the main room (where this unit is located) beforehand. Select a value from "Last" (Volume level before entering standby mode), "-∞ dB", and "-81.5 dB" to "+18.0 dB".

## Playing Sonos on This Unit

---

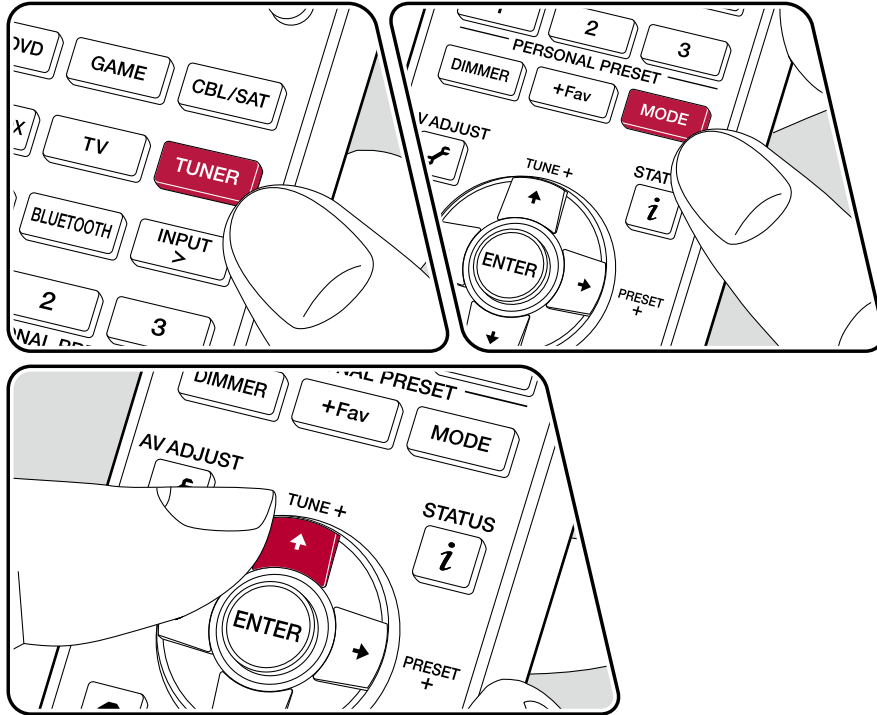
1. Using your Sonos App select the music you want to listen to and send it to the room (or group) where your unit is located. We recommend naming your unit / Sonos Connect combination a friendly name like TV Room or Living Room where the equipment is located.
  - If the input on your unit does not change automatically when play starts, try stopping play, then starting it again.



## Listening To the AM/FM Radio

You can receive AM and FM radio stations on this unit with the built-in tuner.

### Tuning into a Radio Station



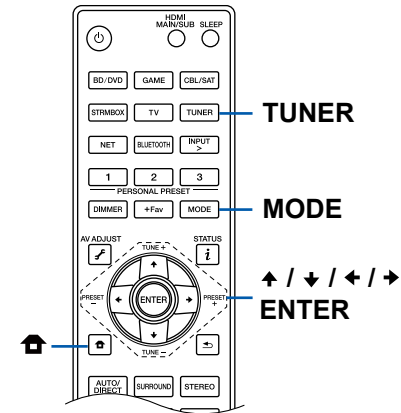
Perform the following procedure when this unit is on.

### Tuning Automatically

1. Press TUNER repeatedly to select either "AM" or "FM".
2. Press MODE repeatedly to display "TunMode: Auto" on the display.

TunMode: Auto

3. When you press the cursors  $\uparrow$  /  $\downarrow$ , automatic tuning starts, and searching stops when a station is found. When tuned in to a radio station, the "TUNED" indicator on the display lights up. When tuned in to an FM radio station, the "STEREO" indicator lights up.



**When FM broadcasts reception is poor:** Perform the procedure for "Tuning Manually" ( →[p118](#)). Note that if you tune manually, the reception for FM broadcasts will be monaural rather than stereo, irrespective of the sensitivity of the reception.

## Tuning Manually

Note that if you tune manually, the reception for FM broadcasts will be monaural rather than stereo, irrespective of the sensitivity of the reception.

1. Press TUNER repeatedly to select either "AM" or "FM".
2. Press MODE repeatedly to display "TunMode: Manual" on the display.

TunMode: Manual

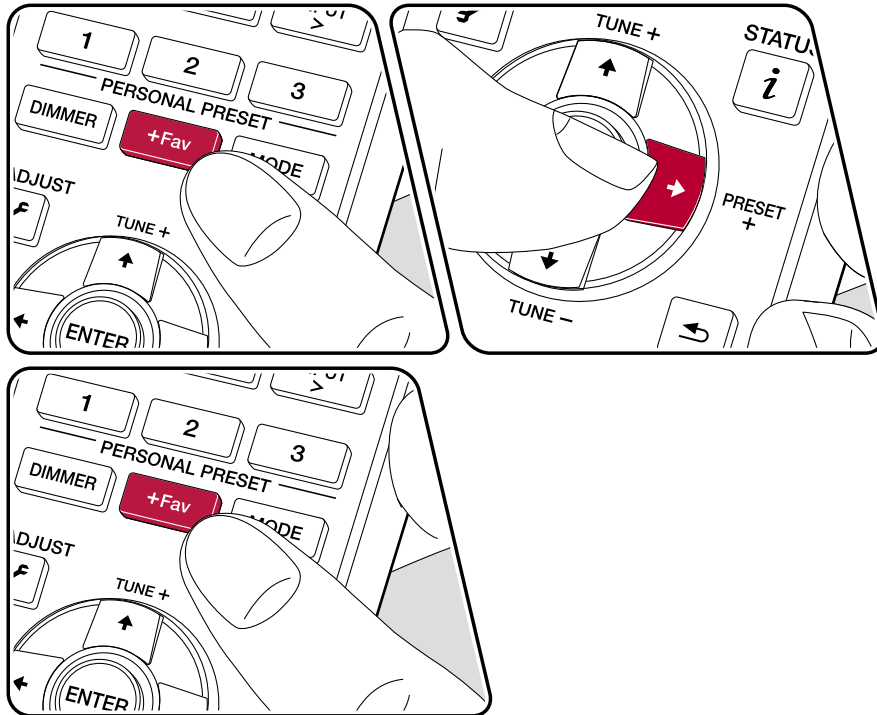
3. While pressing the cursors  $\uparrow$  /  $\downarrow$ , select the desired radio station.
  - Each time you press the cursors  $\uparrow$  /  $\downarrow$ , the frequency changes by 1 step. If the button is held down, the frequency changes continuously, and if the button is released, the frequency stops changing.

## Frequency step setting

Press  $\square$  on the remote controller, and from Home displayed select "System Setup" - "Miscellaneous" - "Tuner" - "AM/FM Frequency Step" or "AM Frequency Step", and then select the frequency step for your area. Note that when this setting is changed, all radio presets are deleted.

## $\square$ Presetting a Radio Station ( →[p119](#))

## Presetting a Radio Station



### Registration Procedure

You can preset up to 40 of your favorite AM/FM radio stations.

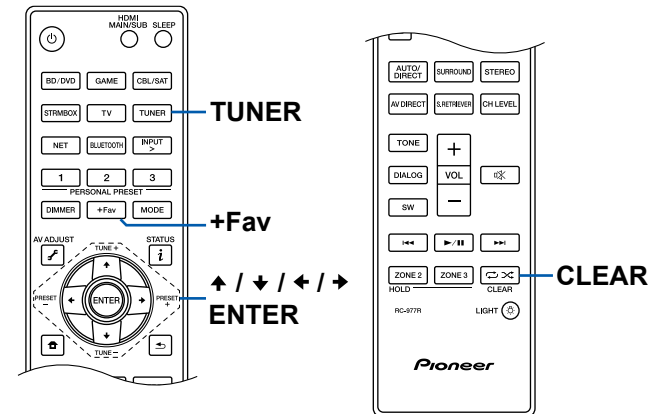
After tuning in to the AM/FM radio station you want to register, perform the following procedure.

1. Press +Fav so that the preset number on the display blinks.

FM 87.5 MHz | | |

2. While the preset number is blinking (approx. 8 seconds), repeatedly press the cursors  $\leftarrow / \rightarrow$  to select a number between 1 and 40.
3. Press +Fav again to register the station.

When the station is registered, the preset number stops blinking. Repeat this steps to register your favorite AM/FM radio stations.



## Selecting a Preset Radio Station

1. Press TUNER.
2. Press the cursors ◀ / ▶ to select a preset number.

## Deleting a Preset Radio Station

1. Press TUNER.
2. Press the cursors ◀ / ▶ to select the preset number to delete.
3. After pressing +Fav, press CLEAR while the preset number is blinking, and delete the preset number. When deleted, the number on the display disappears.

□ **Using RDS (European models)** ( →[p121](#))

## Using RDS (European models)

RDS stands for Radio Data System, and is a method of transmitting data in FM radio signals. In regions where RDS can be used, when you tune in to a radio station broadcasting program information, the radio station name is displayed on the display. When you press **i** on the remote controller in this state, you can use the following functions.

### Display Text Information (Radio Text)

1. While the name of the station is being displayed on the display, press **i** on the remote controller once. The Radio Text (RT), which is text information delivered by the station, is displayed scrolling across the display. "No Text Data" is displayed when no text information is delivered.

### Search for Stations by Program Type

1. While the name of the station is being displayed on the display, press **i** on the remote controller twice.
  - If none of the Program Types are set for the radio station under reception, "None" is displayed.
2. Press the cursors **◀** / **▶** on the remote controller to select the Program Type you want to search for, and then press the ENTER button to start the search.
  - The Program Types displayed are as follows: None / News (News reports) / Affairs (Current affairs) / Info (Information) / Sport / Educate (Education) / Drama / Culture / Science (Science and technology) / Varied / Pop M (Pop music) / Rock M (Rock music) / Easy M (Middle of the road music) / Light M (Light classics) / Classics (Serious classics) / Other M (Other music) / Weather / Finance / Children (Children's programmes) / Social (Social affairs) / Religion / Phone In / Travel / Leisure / Jazz (Jazz music) / Country (Country music) / Nation M (National music) / Oldies (Oldies music) / Folk M (Folk music) / Document (Documentary)
  - The information displayed may not match the content delivered by the station.
3. When a station is found, the station blinks on the display. Pressing the ENTER button in this state will receive that station. If you don't press the ENTER button, the unit starts to search for another station.
  - If no stations are found, the message "Not Found" is displayed.

- Unusual characters may be displayed when the unit receives unsupported characters. This is not a malfunction. Also, if the signal from a station is weak, information may not be displayed.

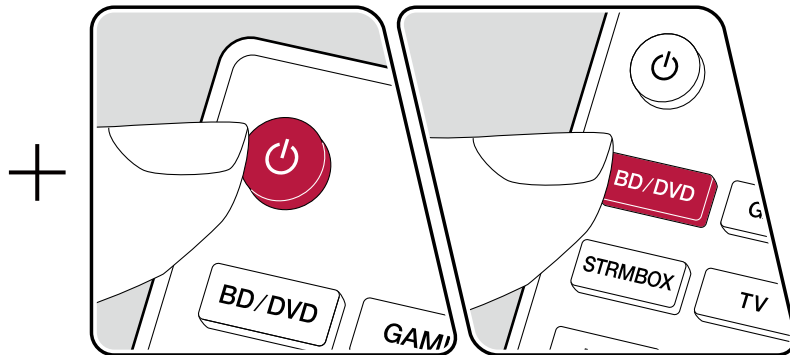
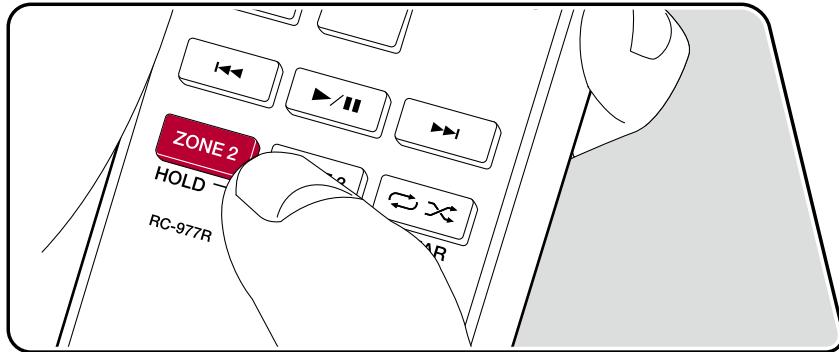
## Multi-zone

You can enjoy 2-ch audio in the separate room (ZONE 2/ZONE 3) while performing playback in the main room (where this unit is located). The same source can be played back in the main room and ZONE 2/ZONE 3 simultaneously. Also, different sources can be played back in both rooms. For the "NET", "BLUETOOTH", or "USB" input selector, you can select only the same source for the main room and separate room. If you select "NET" in the main room and then select "BLUETOOTH" in the separate room, the main room setting switches to "BLUETOOTH". You cannot select different stations of AM/FM broadcasts for the main room and separate room. Pioneer Remote App is useful for the multi-zone playback operation. Download Pioneer Remote App (available on iOS or Android™) to a mobile device, such as a smartphone and tablet to use it.



### □ **Playing Back (ZONE 2)** ( →[p123](#))

## Playing Back (ZONE 2)



In the remote controller operation, while pressing and holding the ZONE 2 button on the remote controller, operate with each button.


1. Point the remote controller at the unit, and while pressing and holding the ZONE 2 button on the remote controller, press  $\odot$ .
  - "Z2" on the display of the main unit lights up.



2. While pressing and holding the ZONE 2 button on the remote controller, press the input selector of the input source you want to play in the separate room. When operating on the main unit, press the ZONE CONTROL button repeatedly to select "Z2" on the display, then within 8 seconds select the input you want to play in another room using the input selector dial.
  3. If the unit is connected to the pre-main amplifier in the separate room, adjust the volume on the pre-main amplifier. If the unit is connected to the power amplifier or ZONE speaker in the separate room, adjust the volume with the volume button while pressing and holding the ZONE 2 button on the remote controller. When operating on the main unit, press the ZONE CONTROL button repeatedly to select "Z2" on the display, then within 8 seconds adjust using the MASTER VOLUME knob.
    - When connecting the power amplifier, set "Multi Zone" - "Zone 2" - "Output Level" ([→p174](#)) to "Variable" on the System Setup menu. If it is not set, a large volume is output and the power amplifier, speakers, etc. may be damaged.
    - Information of a connected device can be displayed on the TV in the separate room. Press the *i* button while pressing and holding the ZONE 2 button on the remote controller.
- If you turn the unit to standby during multi-zone playback, the Z2 indicator is dimmed, and the playback mode is switched to playback in a separate room only. Setting ZONE 2 to on while the unit is in standby also switches the playback mode to playback in a separate room only.
  - The audio from externally connected AV components can be output to ZONE 2 only when the audio is analog or 2 ch PCM signal. When the AV component is connected to this unit with a HDMI cable, digital coaxial cable or digital optical

cable, change the audio output of the AV component to the PCM output.

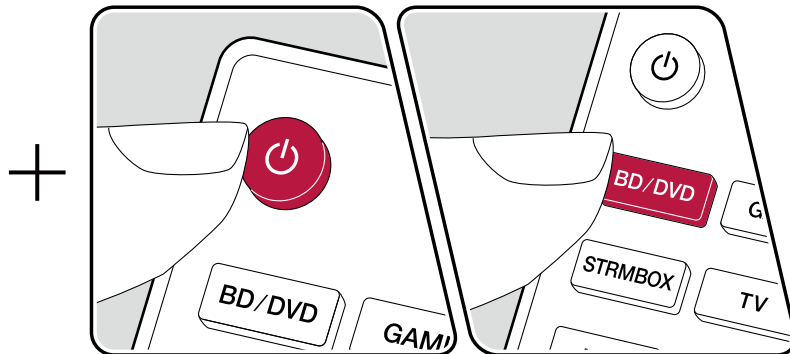
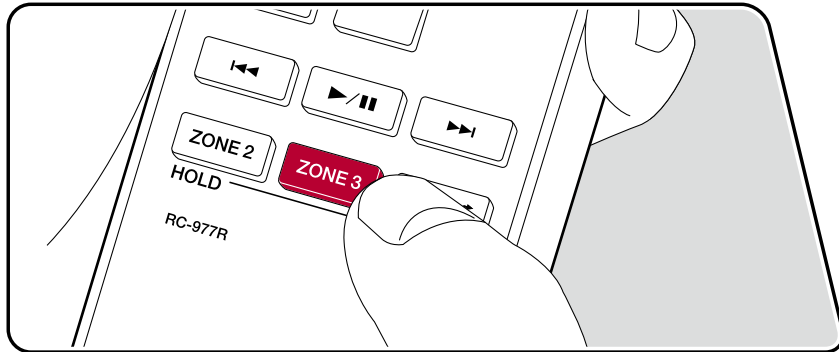
- When video and audio via HDMI input are output to ZONE 2, set "Input/Output Assign" - "TV Out / OSD" - "Zone 2 HDMI" ( →[p153](#)) to "Use" on the System Setup menu.
- DSD audio signals cannot be output to ZONE 2 when selected with the "NET" or "USB" input selector.
- If ZONE 2 is on, power consumption during standby will increase.

**To set the function to off:** While pressing and holding ZONE 2 button, press . Alternatively, press the ZONE 2 ON/OFF button on the main unit.

## □ Playing Back (ZONE 3) ( →[p125](#))



## Playing Back (ZONE 3)



In the remote controller operation, while pressing and holding the ZONE 3 button on the remote controller, operate with each button.

1. Point the remote controller at the unit, and while pressing and holding the ZONE 3 button on the remote controller, press  $\phi$ .
  - "Z3" on the display of the main unit lights up.



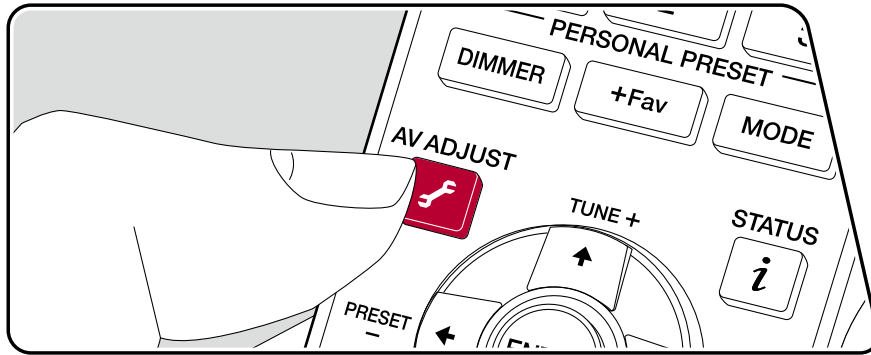
2. While pressing and holding the ZONE 3 button on the remote controller, press the input selector of the input source you want to play in the separate room. When operating on the main unit, press the ZONE CONTROL button repeatedly to select "Z3" on the display, then within 8 seconds select the input you want to play in another room using the input selector dial.
3. If the unit is connected to the pre-main amplifier in the separate room, adjust the volume on the pre-main amplifier. If the unit is connected to the power amplifier or ZONE speaker in the separate room, adjust the volume with the volume button while pressing and holding the ZONE 3 button on the remote controller. When operating on the main unit, press the ZONE CONTROL button repeatedly to select "Z3" on the display, then within 8 seconds adjust using the MASTER VOLUME knob.
  - When connecting the power amplifier, set "Multi Zone" - "Zone 3" - "Output Level" ( → [p175](#)) to "Variable" on the System Setup menu. If it is not set, a large volume is output and the power amplifier, speakers, etc. may be damaged.
  - If you turn the unit to standby during multi-zone playback, the Z3 indicator is dimmed, and the playback mode is switched to playback in a separate room only. Setting ZONE 3 to on while the unit is in standby also switches the playback mode to playback in a separate room only.
  - For ZONE 3 output, audio from externally connected AV components can be output only when it is an analog audio signal.
  - DSD audio signals cannot be output to ZONE 3 when selected with the "NET" or "USB" input selector.
  - If ZONE 3 is on, power consumption during standby will increase.

**To set the function to off:** While pressing and holding ZONE 3 button, press  $\phi$ . Alternatively, press the ZONE 3 ON/OFF button on the main unit.

## ZONE B Playback

While performing playback through speakers (ZONE A) connected to the unit, you can enjoy the audio of the same source with the pre-main amplifier, etc. (ZONE B) (→ [p87](#)) connected to the ZONE B LINE OUT jack at the same time.

### Playing Back



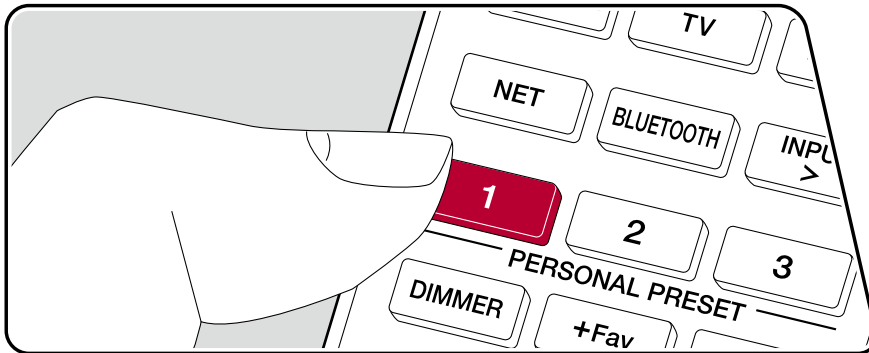
- Press the button on the remote controller to select "Audio" - "Zone B".
  - In the following cases, "Zone B" cannot be selected.
    - When ZONE 2 is On
    - When "System Setup" - "Speaker" - "Configuration" - "Zone 2 Preout" on the Home screen is set to "Zone 2" (→ [p159](#))
- Select an audio output destination.
  - Off:** Outputs audio only to ZONE A. "A" on the display of the main unit lights up.
  - On(A+B):** Outputs audio to both ZONE A and ZONE B. "A" and "B" on the display of the main unit light up.
  - On(B):** Outputs audio only to ZONE B. "B" on the display of the main unit lights up.

A B

- Start play on the AV component.
- Adjust the sound volume on the pre-main amplifier, etc. of ZONE B.
  - When "Zone 2 Preout" is set to "Zone B" and "Audio" - "Zone B" at AV Adjust is set to "On (A+B)", the output of ZONE A is as shown below.
    - The tone cannot be adjusted.
    - "System Setup" - "Speaker" - "Crossover" - "Double Bass" (→ [p161](#)) on the Home screen is fixed to "On".
    - The effect of "System Setup" - "Speaker" - "Distance" (→ [p161](#)) on the Home screen turns off.
  - If "On (A+B)" is selected as an audio output destination, you can select only the "Stereo" listening mode for ZONE A when using the 2.1ch speaker layout. When using a speaker layout of 3.1ch or more, you can select only the "Ext. Stereo" listening mode.

## Convenience functions

### Using PERSONAL PRESET

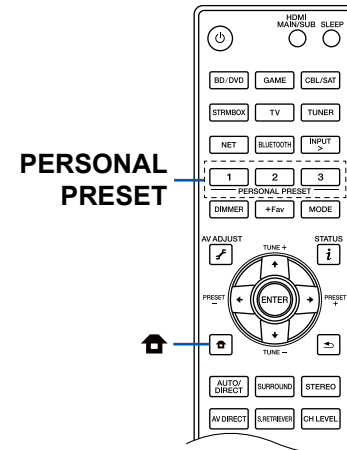


### Registration

You can register settings (→p128) such as the current input selector and listening mode with the three PERSONAL PRESET buttons, and call a registered setting in a single operation. e.g.) Pressing the PERSONAL PRESET button will automatically switch the input selector to "TUNER" to receive the registered station. Also, the listening mode and volume level are switched as registered.

Perform the following steps in the state of the setting to register.

1. Press and hold any of the 1 to 3 buttons of PERSONAL PRESET.
2. "Preset Written" appears on the display, and the setting is registered. If registration has already been made, the registered setting is overwritten.



## Settings that can be registered


The following settings can be registered with PERSONAL PRESET.

- Input selector (Network service or AM/FM radio stations can also be registered.)
  - Listening mode
  - Volume level (Upper limit "0.0 dB")  
(When ZONE 2/ZONE 3 is on, the volume level of ZONE 2/ZONE 3 is also registered.)
  - Output destination (Multi Zone)
  - MCACC Memory
  - MCACC EQ
  - Standing Wave
  - Phase Control
  - Auto Phase Control Plus
  - Sound Delay
  - Sound Retriever function's "On" and "Off"
  - TREBLE/BASS/DIALOG, etc.
- \* When AM/FM radio stations are registered, TUNER's preset numbers "38", "39" and "40" ( →[p119](#)) are overwritten.

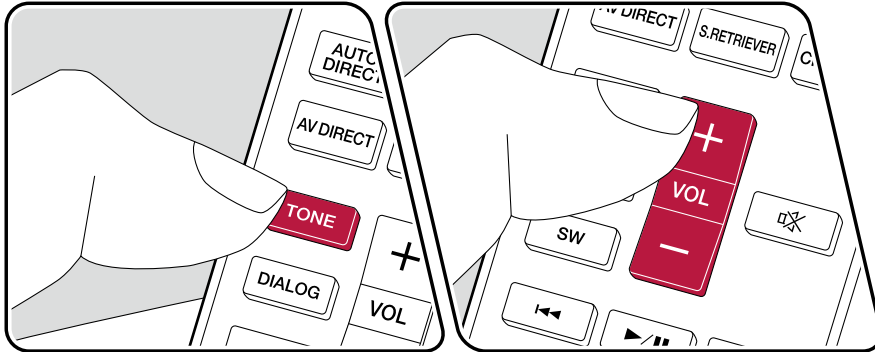
## Using the registered settings

1. Press any of the 1 to 3 buttons of PERSONAL PRESET with which settings have been registered.
  - Pressing PERSONAL PRESET buttons turns the power on even if the main unit is in standby mode.

## Checking the registered settings

1. Press  to display the Home screen, select "System Setup" - "Input/Output Assign" - "PERSONAL PRESET Information" ( →[p156](#)), and press ENTER.
2. The registered settings are displayed in the list.
  - Some of the items such as the Sound Retriever function are not displayed in the list.

## Adjusting the tone



### Adjusting TREBLE/BASS

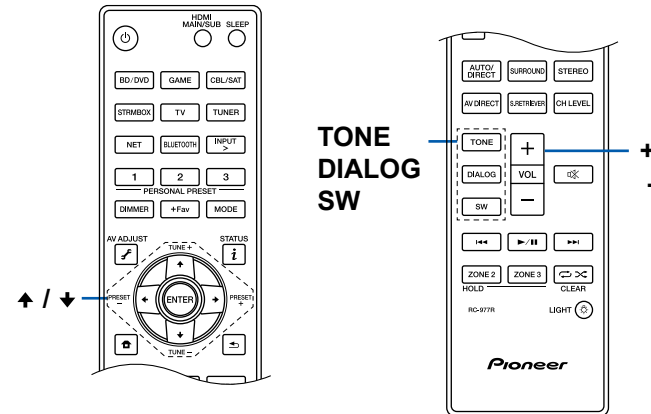
You can adjust the sound quality of the speakers.

1. Press TONE repeatedly to select Treble or Bass and adjust the content.  
 Treble: Enhances or moderates the high-tone range of the speakers.  
 Bass: Enhances or moderates the low-tone range of the speakers.
2. Press +, - or the  $\uparrow$  /  $\downarrow$  cursor buttons to adjust.

### Adjusting DIALOG

Emphasizes movie lines and music vocals to listen to them more easily. It is effective to movie lines in particular. Also, it exerts the effect even if the center speaker is not used. Select a desired level from "1" (low) to "5" (high).

1. Press DIALOG.
2. Press +, - or the  $\uparrow$  /  $\downarrow$  cursor buttons to adjust.
  - Depending on the input source or listening mode setting, selection is not possible, or the desired effect may not be achieved.
  - This cannot be set when "Dialog Lifted Up" ([→p199](#)) is set.

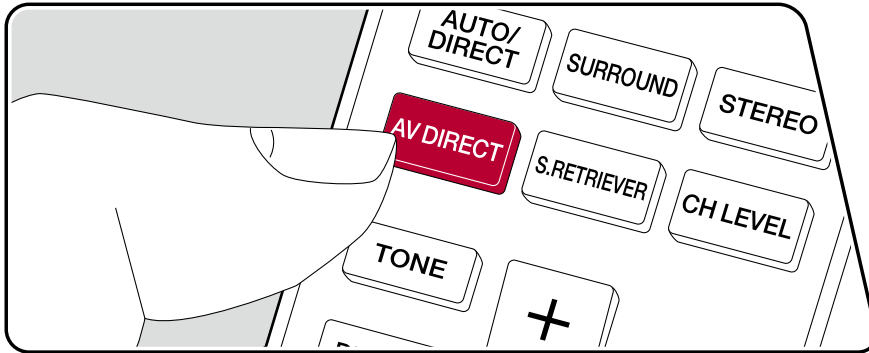


## Adjusting SUBWOOFER

Adjust the speaker level of the subwoofer while listening to the sound.

1. Press SW.
2. Press +, - or the  $\uparrow$  /  $\downarrow$  cursor buttons to adjust in the range between “-15.0 dB” and “+12.0 dB”.
  - If you set the unit to the standby mode, the adjustments you made will be restored to the previous statuses.

## Using the AV Direct mode



AV Direct can improve sound quality by limiting the activity of digital circuits and thereby suppressing the noise that is generated by them. You can choose from “AV Direct” which temporarily stops communications such as via the network, Bluetooth, and USB, and “AV Direct Net Off” which turns off the power for some digital circuits. Either one can be used to play the audio from external devices connected to the input terminals on this unit.

- This function is not available with a source to which a Sonos Connect ( → [p115](#)) is connected.

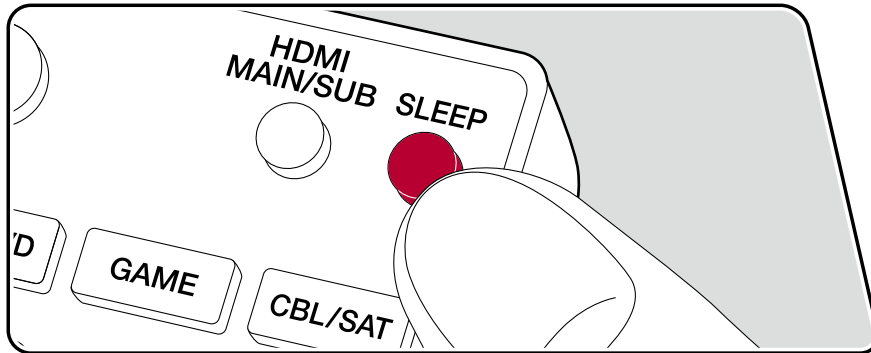
### Using “AV Direct”

1. Press the “AV DIRECT” button on the remote controller to turn “AV Direct” “On”. To turn “Off”, press the “AV DIRECT” button again.
  - “AV Direct” automatically switches off when you perform any of the following operations:
    - Set this unit to standby.
    - Switch the input source to “NET”, “BLUETOOTH”, “USB”, or “TUNER”.
    - Select a source to which a Sonos Connect ( → [p115](#)) is connected.
    - Display the Setup menu.
    - Switch the multi-zone function on.
  - Depending on the functions used, the track name may be displayed on the display and “Off” for “AV Direct” may not be displayed.

### Using “AV Direct Net Off”


1. While pressing and holding ZONE CONTROL on the main unit, press STATUS so that “AV Direct Net Off” appears on the display of the main unit. The power of some of the digital circuits are turned “Off”.
  - “AV Direct Net Off” is automatically canceled when you perform any of the following operations:
    - Set this unit to standby.
    - Switch the input source to “NET”, “BLUETOOTH”, “USB”, or “TUNER”.
    - Select a source to which a Sonos Connect ( → [p115](#)) is connected.
    - Display the Setup menu.
    - Switch the multi-zone function on.

## Sleep Timer



You can allow the unit to enter standby automatically when the specified time has elapsed. Press SLEEP button on the remote controller to select the time from "30 min", "60 min" and "90 min".

"Off": The unit does not automatically enter standby mode.

You can also set this by pressing the  button on the remote controller to display the Home screen and selecting "System Setup" - "Hardware" - "Power Management" - "Sleep Timer" ( → [p168](#)).

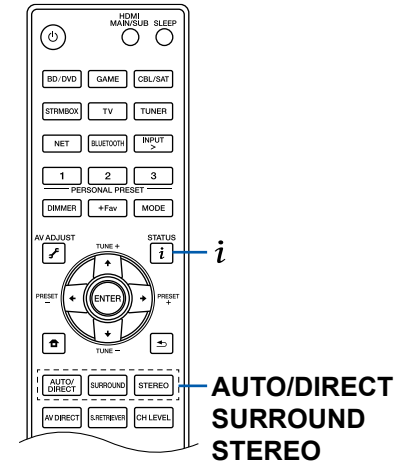


## Listening Mode

You can change the listening mode during play by pressing repeatedly "AUTO/DIRECT", "SURROUND", or "STEREO".

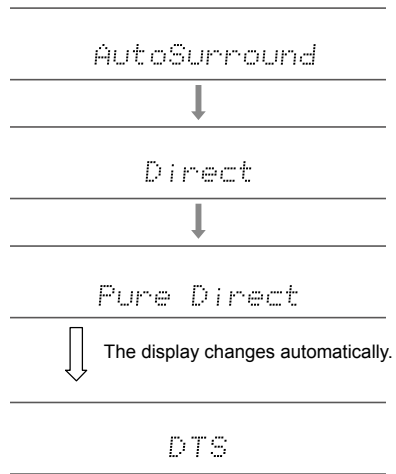
### Selecting a Listening mode

- Each of AUTO/DIRECT, SURROUND, and STEREO buttons stores the listening mode that was selected last. If content incompatible of the listening mode selected last is played, the most standard listening mode for the content is automatically selected.
- For details of the effects of each listening mode, refer to "Listening Mode Effects" (→[p139](#)).
- For listening modes selectable for each audio format of input signals, refer to "Input Formats and Selectable Listening Modes" (→[p144](#)).



## ■ AUTO/DIRECT button

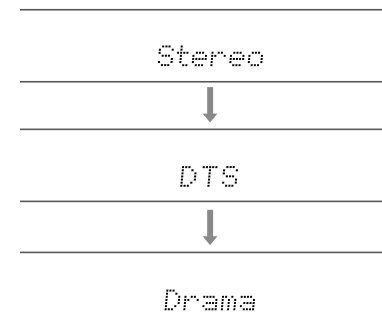
Press repeatedly and the listening modes suited to the input signal are switched between "Auto Surround", "Direct", and "Pure Direct". After selecting one of them, "Auto Surround" (or "Direct" or "Pure Direct") is displayed, then the most suitable listening mode for the audio format is selected automatically (DTS for multi-channel input signals, Stereo for 2 channel input signals, etc.) and an indicator such as "DTS" is displayed on the display.



The "Direct" mode shuts down some processing that can affect sound quality, such as the tone control features, so you can enjoy even better sound quality. The "Pure Direct" mode shuts down even more processes that affects sound quality, so you get a more faithful reproduction of the original sound. In this case, the speaker calibration made with MCACC is invalid.

## ■ SURROUND button

By pressing repeatedly you can select the audio format of the signals being input and switch between a variety of listening modes. Select the mode that suits your preference. The selected listening mode is displayed on the display.



## ■ STEREO button

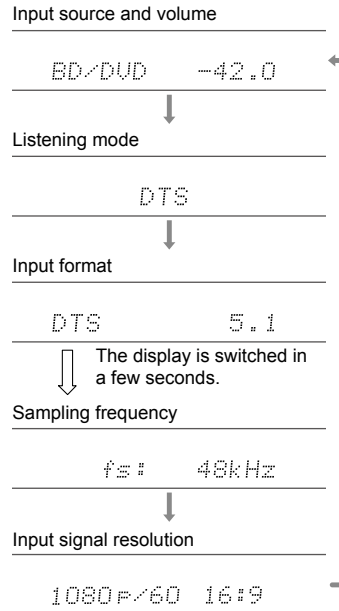
You can select the "Stereo" mode to playback only from the front speakers and subwoofer.

For details on the effects of each of the listening modes see "Listening Mode Effects". For listening modes selectable for each of the audio formats in the input signals, refer to "Input Formats and Selectable Listening Modes".

## Checking the input format and listening mode

Pressing **i** repeatedly will switch the display of the main unit in the following order.

- The display content for the BLUETOOTH input is different.
- Not all the information is necessarily displayed.



## Speaker Layouts and Selectable Listening Modes

See the following table for selectable listening modes for each speaker layout.

Listening mode	Speaker layout (ch)															
	2.1	3.1	4.1	5.1	6.1	7.1	2.1.2	3.1.2	4.1.2	5.1.2	6.1.2	7.1.2	4.1.4	5.1.4	6.1.4	7.1.4
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> DD (Dolby Audio - DD)		✓(*1)	✓(*1)	✓(*1)	✓(*2)	✓(*2)		✓(*2)	✓(*2)	✓(*2)	✓(*2)	✓(*2)	✓(*2)	✓(*2)	✓(*2)	✓(*2)
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> DD+ (Dolby Audio - DD+)		✓(*1)	✓(*1)	✓(*1)	✓(*1)	✓(*1)	✓(*1)	✓(*1)	✓(*1)	✓(*1)	✓(*1)	✓(*1)	✓(*1)	✓(*1)	✓(*1)	✓(*1)
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> DTHD (Dolby Audio - TrueHD)		✓(*1)	✓(*1)	✓(*1)	✓(*1)	✓(*1)	✓(*1)	✓(*1)	✓(*1)	✓(*1)	✓(*1)	✓(*1)	✓(*1)	✓(*1)	✓(*1)	✓(*1)
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Atmos					✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Atmos 2.0/2.1/2.2	✓															
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Atmos 3.0/3.1/3.2		✓														
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Atmos 4.0/4.1/4.2			✓													
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Atmos 5.0/5.1/5.2				✓												
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Atmos 6.0/6.1/6.2					✓											
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Atmos 7.0/7.1/7.2						✓										
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Atmos 2.0.2/2.1.2/2.2.2							✓									
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Atmos 3.0.2/3.1.2/3.2.2								✓								
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> DSur (Dolby Audio - Surr)	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> DSur 2.0/2.1/2.2 (Dolby Audio - Surr)	✓															
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> DSur 3.0/3.1/3.2 (Dolby Audio - Surr)		✓														
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> DSur 4.0/4.1/4.2 (Dolby Audio - Surr)			✓													
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> DSur 5.0/5.1/5.2 (Dolby Audio - Surr)				✓												
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> DSur 6.0/6.1/6.2 (Dolby Audio - Surr)					✓											
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> DSur 7.0/7.1/7.2 (Dolby Audio - Surr)						✓										
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> DSur 2.0.2/2.1.2/2.2.2 (Dolby Audio - Surr)							✓									
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> DSur 3.0.2/3.1.2/3.2.2 (Dolby Audio - Surr)								✓								

Listening mode	Speaker layout (ch)															
	2.1	3.1	4.1	5.1	6.1	7.1	2.1.2	3.1.2	4.1.2	5.1.2	6.1.2	7.1.2	4.1.4	5.1.4	6.1.4	7.1.4
DTS		✓	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓(*3)	✓(*3)	✓(*3)	✓(*3)	✓(*3)	✓(*3)	✓(*3)	✓(*3)	✓(*3)
ES Discrete (DTS-ES Discrete)					✓	✓										
ES Matrix (DTS-ES Matrix)					✓	✓										
DTS 96/24		✓	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓(*3)	✓(*3)	✓(*3)	✓(*3)	✓(*3)	✓(*3)	✓(*3)	✓(*3)	✓(*3)
DTS-HD HR (DTS-HD High Resolution)		✓	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
DTS-HD Master (DTS-HD Master Audio)		✓	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
DTS Express		✓	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
DTS:X		✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
DTS Neural:X	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
IMAX DTS	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓(*4)	✓(*3)	✓(*3)	✓(*3)	✓(*3)	✓(*3)	✓(*3) (*4)	✓(*3)	✓(*3)	✓(*3)	✓(*3) (*4)
IMAX DTS:X	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
IMAX Neural:X	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓

Listening mode	Speaker layout (ch)															
	2.1	3.1	4.1	5.1	6.1	7.1	2.1.2	3.1.2	4.1.2	5.1.2	6.1.2	7.1.2	4.1.4	5.1.4	6.1.4	7.1.4
PCM	✓	✓(*1)	✓(*1)	✓(*1)	✓(*1)	✓(*1)	✓(*3)	✓(*3)	✓(*3)	✓(*3)	✓(*3)	✓(*3)	✓(*3)	✓(*3)	✓(*3)	✓(*3)
DSD		✓(*1)	✓(*1)	✓(*1)	✓(*2)	✓(*2)		✓(*2)	✓(*2)	✓(*2)	✓(*2)	✓(*2)	✓(*2)	✓(*2)	✓(*2)	✓(*2)
Stereo	✓	✓(*5)	✓(*5)	✓(*5)	✓(*5)	✓(*5)	✓(*5)	✓(*5)	✓(*5)	✓(*5)	✓(*5)	✓(*5)	✓(*5)	✓(*5)	✓(*5)	✓(*5)
Mono	✓	✓(*5)	✓(*5)	✓(*5)	✓(*5)	✓(*5)	✓(*5)	✓(*5)	✓(*5)	✓(*5)	✓(*5)	✓(*5)	✓(*5)	✓(*5)	✓(*5)	✓(*5)
Ext.Mono		✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Ext.Stereo		✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Classical			✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Ent.Show (Entertainment Show)			✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Drama			✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Unplugged			✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Action			✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
AdvancedGame			✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Rock/Pop			✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Sports			✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
F.S.Surround (Front Stage Surround)	✓	✓	✓(*5)	✓(*6)	✓(*5)	✓(*6)	✓(*5)	✓(*6)	✓(*5)	✓(*6)	✓(*5)	✓(*6)	✓(*5)	✓(*6)	✓(*5)	✓(*6)

\*1: Reproduced with the sound field according to the number of channels of input signals.

\*2: Not output from surround back speakers or height speakers.

\*3: Not output from height speakers.

\*4: Surround channel audio is output from the surround back speakers.

\*5: Output only from front speakers.

\*6: Output only from front speakers and center speaker.

## Listening Mode Effects

In alphabetical order

### ■ Action

Mode suitable for movies with a lot of action scenes.

### ■ AdvancedGame

Mode suitable for game content.

### ■ Classical





Suitable for classical or operatic music. This mode emphasizes the surround channels in order to widen the sound image, and simulates the natural reverberation of a large hall.







### ■ Atmos

Since this mode calculates the positional data of audio recorded in Dolby Atmos audio in real-time and outputs it from appropriate speakers, you can enjoy the natural and stereophonic sound field of Dolby Atmos with any speaker layout including connection of only front speakers. Also, the Dolby Atmos sound design can be reproduced more faithfully by connecting surround back speakers or height speakers. You can select this mode when inputting the Dolby Atmos audio format.

Unlike existing surround systems, Dolby Atmos does not rely on channels, but rather enables the accurate placement of sound objects that have independent motion in a 3D space with even greater clarity. Dolby Atmos is an optional audio format for Blu-ray Discs and achieves a more stereophonic sound field by introducing a sound field above the listener.

According to the speaker layout, the following listening modes are displayed.

-  **Atmos 2.0/2.1/2.2**: When only front speakers are installed
-  **Atmos 3.0/3.1/3.2**: When front speakers and center speaker are installed
-  **Atmos 4.0/4.1/4.2**: When front speakers and surround speakers are installed
-  **Atmos 5.0/5.1/5.2**: When front speakers, center speaker and surround speakers are installed

-  **Atmos 6.0/6.1/6.2**: When front speakers, surround speakers and surround back speakers are installed
  -  **Atmos 7.0/7.1/7.2**: When front speakers, center speaker, surround speakers and surround back speakers are installed
  -  **Atmos 2.0.2/2.1.2/2.2.2**: When front speakers and height speakers are installed
  -  **Atmos 3.0.2/3.1.2/3.2.2**: When front speakers, center speaker and height speakers are installed
  -  **Atmos**: Selectable in the "4.1.2 ch", "5.1.2 ch", "6.1.2 ch", "7.1.2 ch", "4.1.4 ch", "5.1.4 ch", "6.1.4 ch" or "7.1.4 ch" setting with surround speakers and height speakers installed.
- To enable transfer of this audio format, connect via an HDMI cable and set the audio output on the player to Bitstream output.
  - When "Speaker Virtualizer" ( → [p163](#)) is set to "Off" (Default: On), modes other than  Atmos cannot be selected.

### ■ **DD (Dolby Audio - DD)**

This mode faithfully reproduces the sound design recorded in the Dolby Digital audio format.

Dolby Digital is a multi-channel digital format developed by Dolby Laboratories, Inc. and is widely adopted for use in movie production. It is also a standard audio format for DVD-Video and Blu-ray Discs. It is possible to record a maximum of 5.1 channels on a DVD-Video or Blu-ray Disc; two front channels, one center channel, two surround channels, and the LFE channel dedicated to the bass region (sound elements for the subwoofer).

- To enable transfer of this audio format, connect via a digital cable and set audio output on the player to Bitstream output.

### ■ **DD+ (Dolby Audio - DD+)**

This mode faithfully reproduces the sound design recorded in the Dolby Digital Plus audio format.

The Dolby Digital Plus format has been improved based on Dolby Digital, increasing the number of channels and endeavoring to improve sound quality by giving more flexibility in data bit rates. Dolby Digital Plus is an optional audio

format based on 5.1 ch for Blu-ray Discs. It is possible to record a maximum of 7.1 channels with additional channels such as the surround back channel.










- To enable transfer of this audio format, connect via an HDMI cable and set the audio output on the player to Bitstream output.


## ■ **DSur (Dolby Audio - Surr)**

This listening mode expands 2 ch or 5.1 ch input signals to 5.1 ch, 7.1 ch or 5.1.2 ch. This mode expands actual channels to more channels for playback according to the configuration of the connected speakers. Also, even if there is no speaker for expansion, for example when only front speakers are connected, audio of surround channel or height channel is virtually created for expansion playback.

- This mode cannot be selected when DTS signal is input.

According to the speaker layout, the following listening modes are displayed.

-  **DSur 2.0/2.1/2.2**: When only front speakers are installed
-  **DSur 3.0/3.1/3.2**: When front speakers and center speaker are installed
-  **DSur 4.0/4.1/4.2**: When front speakers and surround speakers are installed
-  **DSur 5.0/5.1/5.2**: When front speakers, center speaker and surround speakers are installed
-  **DSur 6.0/6.1/6.2**: When front speakers, surround speakers and surround back speakers are installed
-  **DSur 7.0/7.1/7.2**: When front speakers, center speaker, surround speakers and surround back speakers are installed
-  **DSur 2.0.2/2.1.2/2.2.2**: When front speakers and height speakers are installed
-  **DSur 3.0.2/3.1.2/3.2.2**: When front speakers, center speaker and height speakers are installed
-  **DSur**: Selectable in the "4.1.2 ch", "5.1.2 ch", "6.1.2 ch", "7.1.2 ch", "4.1.4 ch", "5.1.4 ch", "6.1.4 ch" or "7.1.4 ch" setting with surround speakers and height speakers installed.

- When "Speaker Virtualizer" ( →p163) is set to "Off" (Default: On), modes other than  DSur cannot be selected.

## ■ **DTHD (Dolby Audio - TrueHD)**

This mode faithfully reproduces the sound design recorded in the Dolby TrueHD audio format.

The Dolby TrueHD audio format is a "lossless" format expanded based on the lossless compression technology referred to as MLP, and it faithfully reproduces the master audio recorded in the studio. Dolby TrueHD is an optional audio format based on 5.1 ch for Blu-ray Discs. It is possible to record a maximum of 7.1 channels with additional channels such as the surround back channel. 7.1 ch is recorded at 96 kHz/24 bit, and 5.1 ch is recorded at 192 kHz/24 bit.

- To enable transfer of this audio format, connect via an HDMI cable and set the audio output on the player to Bitstream output.

## ■ **Drama**

Suitable for TV shows produced in a TV studio. This mode enhances the surround effects to the entire sound to give clarity to voices and create a realistic acoustic image.

## ■ **DSD**

This mode is suitable for playing sources recorded in DSD.

- This unit supports the DSD signal input from the HDMI input terminal. However, depending on the connected player, better sound may be obtained by setting the output on the player side to the PCM output.
- This listening mode cannot be selected if the output setting on your Blu-ray Disc/DVD player is not set to DSD.

## ■ **DTS**

This mode faithfully reproduces the sound design recorded in the DTS audio format.

The DTS audio format is a multi-channel digital format developed by DTS, Inc. This format is an optional audio format for DVD-Video and a standard format for Blu-ray Discs. It enables recording of 5.1 channels; two front channels, one center channel, two surround channels, and the LFE channel dedicated to the bass region (sound elements for the subwoofer). The content is recorded with a rich volume of data, with a maximum sampling rate of 48 kHz, at a resolution of 24 bits and a bit rate of 1.5 Mbps.

- To enable transfer of this audio format, connect via a digital cable and set audio output on the player to Bitstream output.



## ■ DTS 96/24

This mode faithfully reproduces the sound design recorded in the DTS 96/24 audio format.

The DTS 96/24 format is an optional audio format for DVD-Video and Blu-ray Discs. It enables recording of 5.1 channels; two front channels, one center channel, two surround channels, and the LFE channel dedicated to the bass region (sound elements for the subwoofer). Detailed reproduction is achieved by recording the content at a sampling rate of 96 kHz and at a resolution of 24 bits.

- To enable transfer of this audio format, connect via a digital cable and set audio output on the player to Bitstream output.

## ■ DTS Express

This mode faithfully reproduces the sound design recorded in the DTS Express audio format.

DTS Express is an optional audio format based on 5.1 ch for Blu-ray Discs. It is possible to record a maximum of 7.1 channels with additional channels such as the surround back channel. It also supports low bit rates.

- To enable transfer of this audio format, connect via an HDMI cable and set the audio output on the player to Bitstream output.

## ■ DTS-HD HR (DTS-HD High Resolution)

This mode faithfully reproduces the sound design recorded in the DTS-HD High Resolution Audio audio format.

DTS-HD High Resolution Audio is an optional audio format based on 5.1 ch for Blu-ray Discs. It is possible to record a maximum of 7.1 channels with additional channels such as the surround back channel at a sampling rate of 96 kHz and at a resolution of 24 bits.

- To enable transfer of this audio format, connect via an HDMI cable and set the audio output on the player to Bitstream output.

## ■ DTS-HD MSTR (DTS-HD Master Audio)

This mode faithfully reproduces the sound design recorded in the DTS-HD Master Audio audio format.

DTS-HD Master Audio is an optional audio format based on 5.1 ch for Blu-ray Discs. It is possible to record a maximum of 7.1 channels with additional channels such as the surround back channel using the lossless audio

reproduction technology. 96 kHz/24 bit is supported for 7.1 ch, and 192 kHz/24 bit is supported for 5.1 ch.

- To enable transfer of this audio format, connect via an HDMI cable and set the audio output on the player to Bitstream output.

## ■ DTS Neural:X

This listening mode expands actual channels to more channels for playback to suit the configuration of the connected speakers by expanding the input signals from 2 channels or 5.1 channels to 5.1 channels or 7.1 channels respectively.

- This mode cannot be selected when Dolby signal is input.

## ■ DTS:X

This mode faithfully reproduces the sound design recorded in the DTS:X audio format.

The DTS:X audio format is a combination of the mixing method based on traditional channel based formats (5.1 ch and 7.1 ch) and object based dynamic audio mixing, and it is characterized by the precise positioning of sounds and the ability to express sound movement.

- To enable transfer of this audio format, connect via an HDMI cable and set the audio output on the player to Bitstream output.

## ■ ES Discrete (DTS-ES Discrete)

This mode faithfully reproduces the sound design recorded in the DTS-ES Discrete audio format.

DTS-ES Discrete is an optional audio format based on 5.1 ch for DVD-Video and Blu-ray Discs. It is possible to record a maximum of 6.1 channels with a monaural surround back channel added.

- To enable transfer of this audio format, connect via a digital cable and set audio output on the player to Bitstream output.

## ■ ES Matrix (DTS-ES Matrix)

This mode faithfully reproduces the sound design recorded in the DTS-ES Matrix audio format.

DTS-ES Matrix is an optional audio format based on 5.1 ch for DVD-Video and Blu-ray Discs. A monaural surround back channel is inserted to this format by matrix encoding. During playback, 6.1 channel-playback is achieved by the matrix

decoder on this unit.

- To enable transfer of this audio format, connect via a digital cable and set audio output on the player to Bitstream output.

### ■ Ent.Show (Entertainment Show)

Suitable for rock or pop music. Listening to music in this mode creates a lively sound field with a powerful acoustic image, like being at a club or rock concert.

### ■ Ext.Mono (Extended Mono)

In this mode, all speakers output the same sound in mono, so the sound you hear is the same regardless of where you are within the listening room.

### ■ Ext.Stereo (Extended Stereo)

This mode is ideal for background music. Stereo sound is played through the surround speakers as well as the front speakers, creating a stereo image.

### ■ F.S.Surround (Front Stage Surround)

In this mode, you can enjoy a virtual playback of multichannel surround sound even with only two or three speakers. This works by controlling how sounds reach the listener's left and right ears.

- This mode cannot be selected when "Speaker Virtualizer" (→[p163](#)) is set to "Off" (Default: On).

### ■ IMAX

IMAX is an innovator in entertainment technology, combining proprietary software, architecture and equipment to create experiences that take you beyond the edge of your seat to a world you've never imagined. Top filmmakers and studios utilize IMAX theatres to connect with audiences in extraordinary ways. IMAX leverages its proprietary image enhancement process, DMR, to create clearer, sharper images--just as the director intended. With its specialized, custom theatre environment designed to widen the field of view, and unique sound systems that cover the entire theatre evenly, IMAX delivers a truly immersive film experience.

IMAX Enhanced :

IMAX Enhanced brings the world's most immersive entertainment experience into the home. IMAX Enhanced products include the highest-end TVs,

projectors, sound bars and A/V receivers that meet stringent performance standards established by IMAX, DTS and Hollywood's leading colorists to deliver unparalleled quality and scale to in-home entertainment.

IMAX Enhanced content is digitally re-mastered for the home environment to provide sharper images and more powerful sound--just as the filmmaker intended. Available on Ultra HD Blu-ray discs and 4K streaming services, it leverages DTS:X codec technology integrated in certified home entertainment devices to deliver an exclusive, fully immersive experience.

IMAX Mode optimizes all settings for the playback of remastered IMAX Enhanced content, ensuring the best possible picture and sound. When "IMAX DTS" is displayed, IMAX Mode is optimized for the playback of 5.1 IMAX Enhanced content. When "IMAX DTS:X" is displayed, IMAX Mode is optimized for the playback of fully immersive IMAX Enhanced content.

- To enable transfer of this audio format, connect via an HDMI cable and set the audio output on the player to Bitstream output.

IMAX listening modes:

- IMAX DTS: Displayed when there is DTS audio format input which includes IMAX Enhanced content.
- IMAX DTS:X: Displayed when there is DTS:X audio format input which includes IMAX Enhanced content.
- IMAX Neural:X: This listening mode expands the playback signal to 5.1.4 channels or 7.1.4 channels to suit the connected speaker configuration when the input signal is 5.1 channels. Displayed when there is DTS audio format input which includes IMAX Enhanced content.
- IMAX Mode is set to "Auto" at the time of purchase (→[p164](#)). The listening mode automatically switches when IMAX Enhanced content is recognized, but when playing IMAX Enhanced content received through streaming services on a TV, etc., the IMAX Enhanced content may not be recognized and the listening mode may not switch. Set the IMAX mode to "On" in this case.
- When surround back speakers are connected and DTS audio format that includes 5.1-channel IMAX Enhanced content is played with IMAX DTS, the surround channel audio is output from the surround back speakers.

### ■ Mono

In this mode, monaural audio is played from the center speaker at the time of

inputting an analog signal or PCM signal. If there is no center speaker connected, monaural audio is played from the front speakers.

### ■ **PCM**

Mode suitable for playing sources recorded in multichannel PCM.

### ■ **Rock/Pop**

Mode suitable for rock content.

### ■ **Sports**

Mode suitable for sport content.

### ■ **Stereo**

In this mode, sound is output from the right and left front speakers and subwoofer.

### ■ **Unplugged**

Suitable for acoustic instruments, vocals and jazz. This mode emphasizes the front sound field image, giving the impression of being in front of the stage.

## Input Formats and Selectable Listening Modes

You can select a variety of listening modes according to the audio format of the signal to be input.

- The Stereo mode can be selected with any audio format.
- When analog signals are being input in the Pure Direct mode, the modes switches to the Analog Direct mode which passes signals directly to the amplifier without passing through the DSP (Digital Signal Processor). However, when you are using Speaker B, the listening mode suited to the input signal is selected automatically.
- Listening modes available when headphones are connected are Pure Direct and Stereo only.

Listening mode	Pure Direct / Direct / Stereo	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> DD (Dolby Audio - DD) (*1)	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> DD+ (Dolby Audio - DD+) (*1)(*2)	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> DTHD (Dolby Audio - TrueHD) (*1)	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Atmos (*3)	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> DSUR (Dolby Audio - Surr) (*3)
	<b>Input format</b>					
<b>2-channel signal input</b>						
Analog / PCM	✓					✓
NET / USB / DSD (*12)	✓					✓
DD / DD+ / DTHD	✓					✓
DTS / DTS 96/24 / DTS Express / DTS-HD HR / DTS-HD MSTR	✓					
<b>Multi-channel signal input</b>						
Multich PCM	✓					✓
DSD (*12)	✓					✓
DD	✓	✓				✓
DD+	✓		✓			✓
DTHD	✓			✓		✓
ATMOS	✓				✓	
DTS	✓					
DTS 96/24	✓					
DTS Express	✓					
DTS-HD HR	✓					
DTS-HD MSTR	✓					
DTS-ES Discrete	✓					
DTS-ES Matrix	✓					
DTS:X	✓					
IMAX DTS	✓					
IMAX DTS:X	✓					

Listening mode Input format	DTS (*1)	DTS 96/24 (*1)	DTS Express (*1)	DTS-HD HR (DTS-HD High Resolution) (*1)	DTS-HD Master (DTS-HD Master Audio) (*1)	ES Discrete (DTS-ES Discrete) (*4)	ES Matrix (DTS-ES Matrix) (*4)	DTS:X	DTS Neural:X (*5)	IMAX DTS (*6)	IMAX DTS:X (*6)	IMAX Neural:X (*6)
	<b>2-channel signal input</b>											
Analog / PCM									✓			
NET / USB / DSD (*12)									✓			
DD / DD+ / DTHD												
DTS / DTS 96/24 / DTS Express / DTS-HD HR / DTS-HD MSTR									✓			
<b>Multi-channel signal input</b>												
Multich PCM									✓			
DSD (*12)									✓			
DD												
DD+												
DTHD												
ATMOS												
DTS	✓								✓			
DTS 96/24		✓							✓			
DTS Express			✓						✓			
DTS-HD HR				✓					✓			
DTS-HD MSTR					✓				✓			
DTS-ES Discrete	✓(*13)					✓			✓			
DTS-ES Matrix	✓(*13)						✓		✓			
DTS:X								✓				
IMAX DTS	✓(*14)					✓(*14)			✓(*14)	✓		✓
IMAX DTS:X								✓(*14)			✓	

Listening mode Input format	PCM (Multich PCM) (*1)	DSD (*1)(*7)	Mono	Classical / Unplugged / Ent.Show (Entertainment Show) / Drama / AdvancedGame / Action / Rock/Pop / Sports (*8)	Ext.Stereo / Ext.Mono (*9)	F.S.Surround (Front Stage Surround) (*10)	THX Cinema / Music / Games (*11)	THX Ultra Cinema / Music / Games (*4)
	<b>2-channel signal input</b>							
Analog / PCM			✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	
NET / USB / DSD (*12)				✓	✓	✓	✓	
DD / DD+ / DTHD				✓	✓	✓	✓	
DTS / DTS 96/24 / DTS Express / DTS-HD HR / DTS-HD MSTR				✓	✓	✓	✓	
<b>Multi-channel signal input</b>								
Multich PCM	✓			✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
DSD (*12)		✓		✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
DD				✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
DD+				✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
DTHD				✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
ATMOS				✓	✓	✓		
DTS				✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
DTS 96/24				✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
DTS Express				✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
DTS-HD HR				✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
DTS-HD MSTR				✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
DTS-ES Discrete				✓	✓	✓	✓	
DTS-ES Matrix				✓	✓	✓	✓	
DTS:X				✓	✓	✓	✓	
IMAX DTS				✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
IMAX DTS:X				✓	✓	✓	✓	

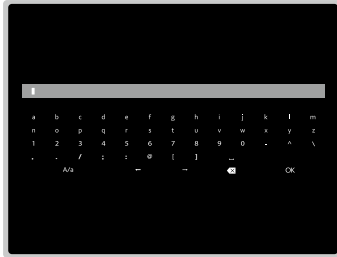
- (\*1) A center speaker or surround speakers need to be installed.
- (\*2) If the input source is Blu-ray Disc and the speaker layout is 5.1ch or less, DD+ cannot be selected. Instead, the listening mode for DD can be selected.
- (\*3) The listening mode displayed depends on the speaker layout ( →[p139, 140](#)). Furthermore, when the setting for "Speaker Virtualizer" ( →[p163](#)) is "Off" (default value is On), then modes other than  Atmos and  Dsur cannot be selected.
- (\*4) Surround back speakers need to be installed. Can be selected when the input format is 5.1 ch.
- (\*5) If the input format is any of the following and the channel count is monaural, this listening mode becomes unavailable.
  - DTS, DTS 96/24, DTS Express, DTS-HD HR, DTS-HD MSTR, PCM, music file
- (\*6) Cannot be selected when the IMAX Mode ( →[p164](#)) is set to "Off" (the default value is Auto).
- (\*7) Cannot be selected when the input format is monaural.
- (\*8) Surround speakers or height speakers need to be installed.
- (\*9) A center speaker, surround speakers, or height speakers need to be installed.
- (\*10) Cannot be selected if "Speaker Virtualizer" ( →[p163](#)) is set to "Off".
- (\*11) Surround speakers need to be installed.
- (\*12) You cannot select any mode other than Pure Direct, Stereo, Ext.Stereo and Ext.Mono if the sampling rate is 5.6/11.2 MHz.
- (\*13) This can only be selected when no surround back speaker is connected.
- (\*14) Can only be selected when the IMAX Mode ( →[p164](#)) is set to "Off" (the default value is Auto).

## Speaker Layouts and Selectable Listening Modes ( →[p136](#))

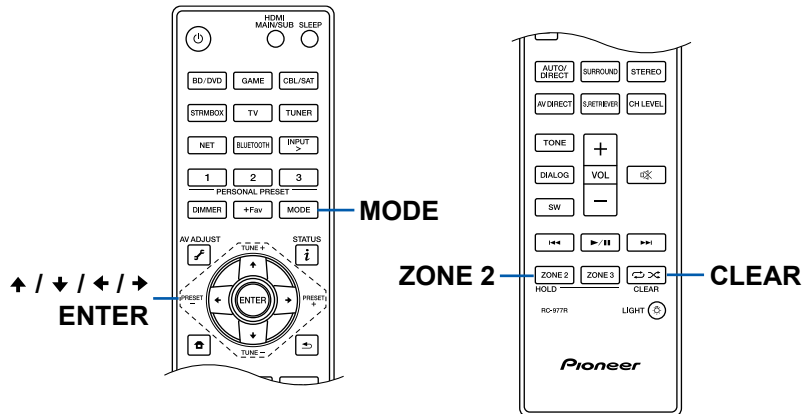
## Inputting Characters

You can input characters or symbols on the keyboard displayed on the TV screen such as when inputting a password for Wi-Fi Setup (→p195) or naming a preset radio station (→p165).

1. Select a character or symbol with the cursors  $\uparrow$  /  $\downarrow$  /  $\leftarrow$  /  $\rightarrow$  on the remote controller and press the ENTER button.
2. When saving characters after input, select "OK" and press the ENTER button.



- Select "A/a" to switch between upper and lower cases. (Can also be switched with the MODE button on the remote controller.)
- To enter a space, select "␣".
- To delete a character on the left of the cursor, select "⌫".
- To delete all the input characters, press the CLEAR button on the remote control.
- On the ZONE 2 playback screen, operate the remote controller while pressing and holding the ZONE 2 button.





## System Setup

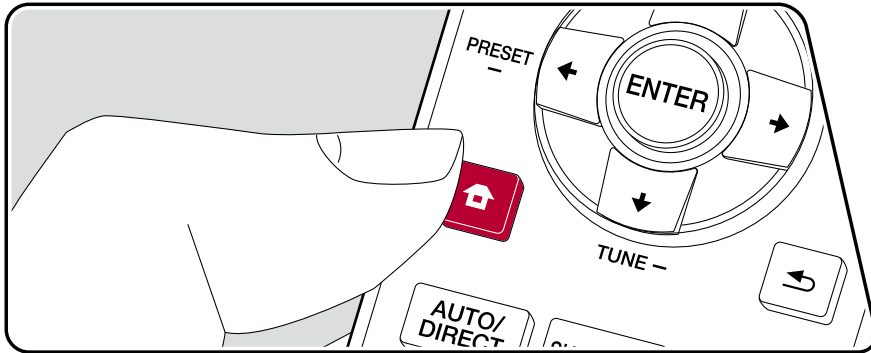
### Menu list


You can configure advanced settings to have a more enjoyable experience with this unit. For operation details, refer to "Menu operations" (→[p151](#)).

<b>Input/Output Assign</b>	<b>TV Out / OSD</b>	Make settings for TV output and On-Screen Displays (OSD) that appear on the TV.	<a href="#">p152</a>
	<b>HDMI Input</b>	Change input assignment between the input selectors and HDMI IN jacks.	<a href="#">p153</a>
	<b>Video Input</b>	Change input assignment between the input selectors and COMPONENT VIDEO IN jacks and the VIDEO IN jacks.	<a href="#">p154</a>
	<b>Digital Audio Input</b>	Change input assignment between the input selectors and DIGITAL AUDIO IN COAXIAL/OPTICAL jacks.	<a href="#">p154</a>
	<b>Analog Audio Input</b>	Change input assignment between the input selectors and AUDIO IN jacks.	<a href="#">p155</a>
	<b>Input Skip</b>	You can skip inputs to which nothing is connected when selecting them with the INPUT SELECTOR dial on the main unit or with the input selectors on the remote controller.	<a href="#">p155</a>
	<b>PERSONAL PRESET Information</b>	Confirm the registered contents of PERSONAL PRESET.	<a href="#">p156</a>
<b>Speaker</b>	<b>Configuration</b>	Change the settings of connection environment of the speakers.	<a href="#">p157</a>
	<b>Crossover</b>	Change the settings of crossover frequencies.	<a href="#">p160</a>
	<b>Distance</b>	Set the distance from each speaker to the listening position.	<a href="#">p161</a>
	<b>Channel Level</b>	Adjust the volume level of each speaker.	<a href="#">p162</a>
	<b>Dolby Enabled Speaker</b>	Change the settings of Dolby Enabled Speakers.	<a href="#">p162</a>
	<b>Speaker Virtualizer</b>	The Speaker Virtualizer function can be switched between On and Off.	<a href="#">p163</a>
<b>Audio Adjust</b>	<b>Dual Mono/Mono</b>	Change the settings of multiplex audio playback.	<a href="#">p163</a>
	<b>Dolby</b>	Change the setting of when Dolby signals are input.	<a href="#">p163</a>
	<b>DTS/IMAX</b>	Change the setting of when DTS signals are input.	<a href="#">p164</a>
	<b>LFE Mute Level</b>	Set the low-frequency effect (LFE) level for Dolby Digital series, DTS series, Multichannel PCM, and DSD signals.	<a href="#">p164</a>
	<b>Volume</b>	Change the Volume settings.	<a href="#">p164</a>





<b>Source</b>	<b>Input Volume Absorber</b>	Adjust the volume level when there are differences in volume level among multiple devices connected to this unit.	<a href="#">p165</a>
	<b>Name Edit</b>	Set an easy name for each input.	<a href="#">p165</a>
	<b>Audio Select</b>	Select the priority for input selection when multiple audio sources are connected to one input selector.	<a href="#">p166</a>
<b>Hardware</b>	<b>HDMI</b>	Change the settings for the HDMI functions.	<a href="#">p167</a>
	<b>Power Management</b>	Change the settings for the power-save function.	<a href="#">p168</a>
	<b>12V Trigger A</b>	Change the settings for 12V TRIGGER OUT A port.	<a href="#">p169</a>
	<b>12V Trigger B</b>	Change the settings for 12V TRIGGER OUT B port.	<a href="#">p171</a>
	<b>Works with SONOS</b>	Change the settings to connect with the Sonos Connect.	<a href="#">p173</a>
<b>Multi Zone</b>	<b>Zone 2</b>	Change the settings for Zone 2.	<a href="#">p174</a>
	<b>Zone 3</b>	Change the settings for Zone 3.	<a href="#">p175</a>
	<b>Remote Play Zone</b>	Change the settings for remote play.	<a href="#">p175</a>
<b>Miscellaneous</b>	<b>Tuner</b>	Change the frequency step for the tuner.	<a href="#">p176</a>
	<b>Remote ID</b>	Change the remote controller ID.	<a href="#">p176</a>
	<b>Preamp Mode</b>	If this unit is connected to a power amplifier, you can reduce the power consumed by turning off the power supplied to the SPEAKERS jacks on this unit.	<a href="#">p177</a>
	<b>Firmware Update</b>	Change the settings for Firmware Update.	<a href="#">p177</a>
	<b>Initial Setup</b>	Make the initial setup from the setup menu.	<a href="#">p177</a>
	<b>Lock</b>	Lock the Setup menu so that the settings cannot be changed.	<a href="#">p177</a>
	<b>Factory Reset</b>	All the settings are restored to factory defaults.	<a href="#">p178</a>



## Menu operations





Use the on-screen displays (OSD) that appear on the TV to make the settings. Press  on the remote controller to display the Home screen, then select System Setup with the cursors on the remote controller and press ENTER.



Select the item with the cursor  /  /  /  buttons of the remote controller and press ENTER to confirm your selection.

Use the cursors  /  to change the default values.

- To return to the previous screen, press .
- To exit the settings, press .

## Input/Output Assign

### ■ TV Out / OSD

Make settings for TV output and On-Screen Displays (OSD) that appear on the TV.

Setting Item	Default Value	Setting Details
HDMI Out	MAIN	Select the HDMI jack to be connected with the TV. "MAIN": When connecting the TV to the HDMI OUT MAIN jack "SUB": When connecting the TV to the HDMI OUT SUB jack "MAIN+SUB": When connecting to both the MAIN and SUB jacks <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If devices with different resolutions are connected to HDMI OUT MAIN jack and SUB jack, images are output with the lower resolution.</li> </ul>
Dolby Vision	MAIN	Select the connection point for a TV that supports Dolby Vision from "MAIN", "SUB", and "Zone 2". This setting is only necessary if you have set "HDMI Out" to "MAIN+SUB", "Zone 2 HDMI" (→ <a href="#">p153</a> ) to "Use", and the same video is simultaneously output from multiple HDMI OUT jacks, such as when the same video from ZONE 2 is output from the MAIN or SUB HDMI OUT jacks.  "MAIN": To output Dolby Vision video to a Dolby Vision-supported TV connected to the HDMI OUT MAIN jack. "SUB": To output Dolby Vision video to a Dolby Vision-supported TV connected to the HDMI OUT SUB jack. "Zone 2": To output Dolby Vision video to a Dolby Vision-supported TV connected to the HDMI OUT ZONE 2 jack. "Off": Set to "Off" if the video on the TV does not appear correctly.

Setting Item	Default Value	Setting Details
1080p -> 4K Upscaling	Off	When using a TV that supports 4K, video signals input at 1080p can be automatically upscaled to 4K for output. "Off": When this function is not used "Auto": When this function is to be used <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Select "Off" if your TV does not support 4K.</li> <li>If the TV does not support the 4K resolution with the same frequency as the frequency of HDMI input video signals, upscaling to 4K is not correctly performed. Check the frequency of 4K resolution supported by the TV, and change the resolution of the video signals input from the AV component.</li> </ul>
Super Resolution	2	When you have set "1080p -> 4K Upscaling" to "Auto", you can select the degree of video signal correction from "Off" and between "1" (weak) and "3" (strong).

Setting Item	Default Value	Setting Details																															
HDMI 4K Signal Fomat	Standard	<p>When an AV component such as a TV or player that supports HDMI 4K is connected to this unit, you can switch the 4K signal format that is input/output by this unit.</p> <p>"Standard": When the AV component connected to this unit supports the standard 4K signal format (4K 60p 4:2:0 8bit).</p> <p>"Enhanced": When the AV component connected to this unit and the HDMI cable supports the high-definition 4K signal formats (4K 60p 4:4:4, 4:2:2 and 4K 60p 4:2:0 10bit).</p> <p>Settings and the corresponding resolutions</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th colspan="3"></th> <th>Enhanced</th> <th>Standard</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td rowspan="2">4K (3840×2160p) 24/25/30 Hz</td> <td>RGB/ YCbCr4:4:4</td> <td>8 bit</td> <td>✓</td> <td>✓</td> </tr> <tr> <td rowspan="2">4K SMPTE(4096×2160p) 24/25/30 Hz</td> <td>YCbCr4:2:2</td> <td>12 bit</td> <td>✓</td> <td>✓</td> </tr> <tr> <td rowspan="4">4K (3840×2160p) 50/60 Hz</td> <td>RGB/ YCbCr4:4:4</td> <td>8 bit</td> <td>✓</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td rowspan="2">YCbCr4:2:2</td> <td>12 bit</td> <td>✓</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>8 bit</td> <td>✓</td> <td>✓</td> </tr> <tr> <td>YCbCr4:2:0</td> <td>10/12 bit</td> <td>✓</td> <td></td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When setting to "Enhanced", use Premium High Speed HDMI Cable or Premium High Speed HDMI Cable with Ethernet that have the "PREMIUM Certified Cable" label attached to the packaging.</li> <li>There may be some image disruption depending on the connected component and the HDMI cable. If this occurs, switch to "Standard".</li> </ul>				Enhanced	Standard	4K (3840×2160p) 24/25/30 Hz	RGB/ YCbCr4:4:4	8 bit	✓	✓	4K SMPTE(4096×2160p) 24/25/30 Hz	YCbCr4:2:2	12 bit	✓	✓	4K (3840×2160p) 50/60 Hz	RGB/ YCbCr4:4:4	8 bit	✓		YCbCr4:2:2	12 bit	✓		8 bit	✓	✓	YCbCr4:2:0	10/12 bit	✓	
			Enhanced	Standard																													
4K (3840×2160p) 24/25/30 Hz	RGB/ YCbCr4:4:4	8 bit	✓	✓																													
	4K SMPTE(4096×2160p) 24/25/30 Hz	YCbCr4:2:2	12 bit	✓	✓																												
4K (3840×2160p) 50/60 Hz		RGB/ YCbCr4:4:4	8 bit	✓																													
	YCbCr4:2:2	12 bit	✓																														
		8 bit	✓	✓																													
	YCbCr4:2:0	10/12 bit	✓																														
Zone 2 HDMI	Not Use	<p>Make the setting when you output to the Zone 2 TV connected to the HDMI OUT ZONE 2 jack.</p> <p>"Use": Enable this function</p> <p>"Not Use": Disable this function</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When video and audio via HDMI input are output to ZONE 2, set to "Use".</li> </ul>																															

Setting Item	Default Value	Setting Details
OSD Language	English	<p>Select the on-screen display language from the following.</p> <p>(North American models) English, German, French, Spanish, Italian, Dutch, Swedish</p> <p>(European models) English, German, French, Spanish, Italian, Dutch, Swedish, Russian, Chinese</p>
Impose OSD	On	<p>Set whether or not to display information such as volume adjustment or switching of input on the TV screen.</p> <p>"On": OSD is displayed on the TV.</p> <p>"Off": OSD is not displayed on the TV.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>OSD may not be displayed depending on the input signal even if "On" is selected. In this case, change the resolution of the connected device.</li> </ul>
Screen Saver	3 minutes	<p>Set the time to start the screen saver.</p> <p>Select a value from "3 minutes", "5 minutes", "10 minutes" and "Off".</p>

## ■ HDMI Input

Change input assignment between the input selectors and HDMI IN jacks.

Setting Item	Default Value	Setting Details
BD/DVD	HDMI 2 (HDCP 2.3)	"HDMI 1 (HDCP 2.3)" to "HDMI 4 (HDCP 2.3)": Assign a desired HDMI IN jack to the BD/DVD input selector. If you do not assign a jack, select "---". To select an HDMI IN jack already assigned to another input selector, change its setting to "---" first.
GAME	HDMI 1 (HDCP 2.3)	"HDMI 1 (HDCP 2.3)" to "HDMI 4 (HDCP 2.3)": Assign a desired HDMI IN jack to the GAME input selector. If you do not assign a jack, select "---". To select an HDMI IN jack already assigned to another input selector, change its setting to "---" first.

Setting Item	Default Value	Setting Details
CBL/SAT	HDMI 3 (HDCP 2.3)	"HDMI 1 (HDCP 2.3)" to "HDMI 4 (HDCP 2.3)": Assign a desired HDMI IN jack to the CBL/SAT input selector. If you do not assign a jack, select "---". To select an HDMI IN jack already assigned to another input selector, change its setting to "---" first.
STRM BOX	HDMI 4 (HDCP 2.3)	"HDMI 1 (HDCP 2.3)" to "HDMI 4 (HDCP 2.3)": Assign a desired HDMI IN jack to the STRM BOX input selector. If you do not assign a jack, select "---". To select an HDMI IN jack already assigned to another input selector, change its setting to "---" first.

## ■ Video Input

Change input assignment between the input selectors and COMPONENT VIDEO IN jacks and the VIDEO IN jacks. If you do not assign a jack, select "---".

Setting Item	Default Value	Setting Details
BD/DVD	COMPONENT 1	"COMPONENT 1", "COMPONENT 2": Assign the COMPONENT VIDEO IN jacks to the BD/DVD input selector. "VIDEO 1", "VIDEO 2": Assign a desired VIDEO IN jack to the BD/DVD input selector.
GAME	COMPONENT 2	"COMPONENT 1", "COMPONENT 2": Assign the COMPONENT VIDEO IN jacks to the GAME input selector. "VIDEO 1", "VIDEO 2": Assign a desired VIDEO IN jack to the GAME input selector.
CBL/SAT	VIDEO 1	"COMPONENT 1", "COMPONENT 2": Assign the COMPONENT VIDEO IN jacks to the CBL/SAT input selector. "VIDEO 1", "VIDEO 2": Assign a desired VIDEO IN jack to the CBL/SAT input selector.

Setting Item	Default Value	Setting Details
STRM BOX	VIDEO 2	"COMPONENT 1", "COMPONENT 2": Assign the COMPONENT VIDEO IN jacks to the STRM BOX input selector. "VIDEO 1", "VIDEO 2": Assign a desired VIDEO IN jack to the STRM BOX input selector.

## ■ Digital Audio Input

You can change input assignment between the input selectors and DIGITAL AUDIO IN COAXIAL/OPTICAL jacks. If you do not assign a jack, select "---".

Setting Item	Default Value	Setting Details
BD/DVD	COAXIAL 1	"COAXIAL 1", "COAXIAL 2", "OPTICAL 1", "OPTICAL 2", "OPTICAL 3": Assign a desired DIGITAL AUDIO IN jack to the BD/DVD input selector.
GAME	OPTICAL 1	"COAXIAL 1", "COAXIAL 2", "OPTICAL 1", "OPTICAL 2", "OPTICAL 3": Assign a desired DIGITAL AUDIO IN jack to the GAME input selector.
CBL/SAT	COAXIAL 2	"COAXIAL 1", "COAXIAL 2", "OPTICAL 1", "OPTICAL 2", "OPTICAL 3": Assign a desired DIGITAL AUDIO IN jack to the CBL/SAT input selector.
STRM BOX	---	"COAXIAL 1", "COAXIAL 2", "OPTICAL 1", "OPTICAL 2", "OPTICAL 3": Assign a desired DIGITAL AUDIO IN jack to the STRM BOX input selector.
CD	OPTICAL 2	"COAXIAL 1", "COAXIAL 2", "OPTICAL 1", "OPTICAL 2", "OPTICAL 3": Assign a desired DIGITAL AUDIO IN jack to the CD input selector.
TV	OPTICAL 3	"COAXIAL 1", "COAXIAL 2", "OPTICAL 1", "OPTICAL 2", "OPTICAL 3": Assign a desired DIGITAL AUDIO IN jack to the TV input selector.

- Supported sampling rates for PCM signals (stereo, mono) from a digital input are 32 kHz, 44.1 kHz, 48 kHz, 88.2 kHz, 96 kHz/16 bit, 20 bit, and 24 bit.

## ■ Analog Audio Input

Change input assignment between the input selectors and AUDIO IN jacks. If you do not assign a jack, select "---".

Setting Item	Default Value	Setting Details
BD/DVD	AUDIO 3	"AUDIO 1" to "AUDIO 6": Assign a desired AUDIO IN jack to the BD/DVD input selector.
GAME	AUDIO 4	"AUDIO 1" to "AUDIO 6": Assign a desired AUDIO IN jack to the GAME input selector.
CBL/SAT	AUDIO 1	"AUDIO 1" to "AUDIO 6": Assign a desired AUDIO IN jack to the CBL/SAT input selector.
STRM BOX	AUDIO 2	"AUDIO 1" to "AUDIO 6": Assign a desired AUDIO IN jack to the STRM BOX input selector.
CD	AUDIO 5	"AUDIO 1" to "AUDIO 6": Assign a desired AUDIO IN jack to the CD input selector.
TV	AUDIO 6	"AUDIO 1" to "AUDIO 6": Assign a desired AUDIO IN jack to the TV input selector.

## ■ Input Skip

You can skip inputs to which nothing is connected when selecting them with the INPUT SELECTOR dial on the main unit or with the INPUT > button on the remote controller.

Setting Item	Default Value	Setting Details
BD/DVD	Use	Set whether to skip the BD/DVD input selector. Select "Skip" to skip this input.
GAME	Use	Set whether to skip the GAME input selector. Select "Skip" to skip this input.
CBL/SAT	Use	Set whether to skip the CBL/SAT input selector. Select "Skip" to skip this input.
STRM BOX	Use	Set whether to skip the STRM BOX input selector. Select "Skip" to skip this input.
HDMI 5	Use	Set whether to skip the HDMI 5 input selector. Select "Skip" to skip this input.
HDMI 6	Use	Set whether to skip the HDMI 6 input selector. Select "Skip" to skip this input.
AUX	Use	Set whether to skip the AUX input selector. Select "Skip" to skip this input.
CD	Use	Set whether to skip the CD input selector. Select "Skip" to skip this input.
TV	Use	Set whether to skip the TV input selector. Select "Skip" to skip this input.
PHONO	Use	Set whether to skip the PHONO input selector. Select "Skip" to skip this input.
TUNER	Use	Set whether to skip the TUNER input selector. Select "Skip" to skip this input.
NET	Use	Set whether to skip the NET input selector. Select "Skip" to skip this input.
USB FRONT	Use	Set whether to skip the USB FRONT input selector. Select "Skip" to skip this input.
USB REAR	Use	Set whether to skip the USB REAR input selector. Select "Skip" to skip this input.

Setting Item	Default Value	Setting Details
BLUETOOTH	Use	Set whether to skip the BLUETOOTH input selector. Select "Skip" to skip this input.

## ■ PERSONAL PRESET Information

Confirm the registered contents of 1 to 3 buttons of PERSONAL PRESET. The registered settings are displayed in the list.

Setting Item	Default Value	Setting Details
Preset	Preset 1	Selects a preset number from among "Preset 1", "Preset 2" and "Preset 3".

### (Main)

Setting Item	Default Value	Setting Details
Input Selector	---	Displays the input selector that has been set.
Network Service	---	Displays the Network Service that has been set.
Band	---	Displays the band, "AM" or "FM" that has been set.
Station	---	Displays the Preset Name of the radio station that has been set.
Listening Mode	---	Displays the listening mode that has been set. • Modes such as <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Atmos and <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Atmos 2.0/2.1/2.2 (→p139) may be displayed as "Dolby Audio - Surr".
Volume	---	Displays the volume level that has been set. (Upper limit "0.0 dB")
Multi Zone	---	Displays the output destination (Multi Zone) that has been set.
MCACC Memory	---	Displays the number of the set MCACC Memory.
MCACC EQ	---	Displays the status of the set MCACC EQ.
Standing Wave	---	Displays the status of the set Standing Wave setting.
Phase Control	---	Displays the status of the set Phase Control.
Auto Phase Control Plus	---	Displays the setting value of the set Auto Phase Control Plus.
Sound Delay	---	Displays the setting value of the set Sound Delay.

- "Band" is displayed only when the input selector is set to "TUNER".
- "Station" is displayed only when the input selector is set to "TUNER" or "NET".
- "Network Service" is displayed only when the input selector is set to "NET".
- Preset Name of "Station" (only when the input selector is set to "TUNER") is displayed with the name set by "Source" - "Name Edit". If the name is not set, the frequency of the radio station is



displayed instead.

**(Zone 2)**

Setting Item	Default Value	Setting Details
Input Selector	---	Displays the input selector that has been set.
Network Service	---	Displays the Network Service that has been set.
Band	---	Displays the band, "AM" or "FM" that has been set.
Station	---	Displays the Preset Name of the radio station that has been set.

- "Band" is displayed only when the input selector is set to "TUNER".
- "Station" is displayed only when the input selector is set to "TUNER" or "NET".
- "Network Service" is displayed only when the input selector is set to "NET".
- Preset Name of "Station" (only when the input selector is set to "TUNER") is displayed with the name set by "Source" - "Name Edit". If the name is not set, the frequency of the radio station is displayed instead.

**(Zone 3)**

Setting Item	Default Value	Setting Details
Input Selector	---	Displays the input selector that has been set.
Network Service	---	Displays the Network Service that has been set.
Band	---	Displays the band, "AM" or "FM" that has been set.
Station	---	Displays the Preset Name of the radio station that has been set.

- "Band" is displayed only when the input selector is set to "TUNER".
- "Station" is displayed only when the input selector is set to "TUNER" or "NET".
- "Network Service" is displayed only when the input selector is set to "NET".
- Preset Name of "Station" (only when the input selector is set to "TUNER") is displayed with the name set by "Source" - "Name Edit". If the name is not set, the frequency of the radio station is displayed instead.

## Speaker

### ■ Configuration

Change the settings of connection environment of the speakers.

Setting Item	Default Value	Setting Details
Speaker Channels	7.1.4 ch	Select "2.1 ch", "3.1 ch", "4.1 ch", "5.1 ch", "6.1 ch", "7.1 ch", "2.1.2 ch", "3.1.2 ch", "4.1.2 ch", "5.1.2 ch", "6.1.2 ch", "7.1.2 ch", "4.1.4 ch", "5.1.4 ch", "6.1.4 ch" or "7.1.4 ch" to suit the number of speaker channels connected.
Subwoofer	2ch	Set the PRE OUT SUBWOOFER jacks which output audio signals. "2ch": Both the PRE OUT SUBWOOFER 1 jacks and the PRE OUT SUBWOOFER 2 jacks output audio signals. "1ch": Only the PRE OUT SUBWOOFER 1 jacks output audio signals. "No": Neither the PRE OUT SUBWOOFER 1 jacks nor the PRE OUT SUBWOOFER 2 jacks output audio signals.

Setting Item	Default Value	Setting Details
Height 1 Speaker	Top Front	<p>Set the speaker type if height speakers are connected to the HEIGHT 1 terminals. Select "Top Middle", "Top Rear", "Rear High", "Dolby Speaker (Front)", "Dolby Speaker (Surr)", "Dolby Speaker (Back)", "Front High" or "Top Front" according to the type and layout of the connected speakers.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>This setting cannot be selected under any of following conditions. Set the height speakers type to "Height 2 Speaker". <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>"Bi-Amp" is set to "Front"</li> <li>"Zone Speaker" is set to "Zone 2/Zone 3"</li> </ul> </li> <li>When two sets of height speakers are being used, "Top Rear", "Rear High", "Dolby Speaker (Surr)", and "Dolby Speaker (Back)" cannot be selected.</li> <li>"Dolby Speaker (Surr)" and "Dolby Speaker (Back)" can only be selected when surround speakers or surround back speakers are being used, respectively. You can check speakers that you are using on the figure displayed in "Speaker Channels".</li> <li>If an item cannot be selected even though connection is correct, check that the settings in "Speaker Channels" matches the number of connected channels.</li> </ul>

Setting Item	Default Value	Setting Details
Height 2 Speaker	Top Rear	<p>Set the speaker type if height speakers are connected to the HEIGHT 2 terminals. Select "Front High", "Top Front", "Top Middle", "Top Rear", "Rear High", "Dolby Speaker (Front)", "Dolby Speaker (Surr)" or "Dolby Speaker (Back)" according to the type and layout of the connected speakers. However, the options selectable for the "Height 1 Speaker" the are as follows.</p> <p>If "Height 1 Speaker" is set to "Front High": Select from "Top Middle", "Top Rear", "Rear High", "Dolby Speaker (Surr)" or "Dolby Speaker (Back)".</p> <p>If "Height 1 Speaker" is set to "Top Front" or "Dolby Speaker (Front)": Select from "Top Rear", "Rear High", "Dolby Speaker (Surr)" or "Dolby Speaker (Back)".</p> <p>If "Height 1 Speaker" is set to "Top Middle": Fixed to "Rear High".</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>"Dolby Speaker (Surr)" and "Dolby Speaker (Back)" can only be selected when surround speakers or surround back speakers are being used, respectively. You can check speakers that you are using on the figure displayed in "Speaker Channels".</li> <li>If an item cannot be selected even though connection is correct, check that the settings in "Speaker Channels" matches the number of connected channels.</li> </ul>

Setting Item	Default Value	Setting Details
Zone Speaker	No	<p>Set whether speakers are connected to Zone 2 or Zone 3 speaker terminals.</p> <p>"Zone 2": When speakers are connected to Zone 2 speaker terminals</p> <p>"Zone 2/Zone 3": When connecting speaker to both ZONE 2 speaker terminal and ZONE 3 speaker terminals.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>"Zone2/Zone3" cannot be selected when surround back speakers and height speakers are being used.</li> </ul> <p>"No": When speakers are not connected to zone 2 or zone 3 speaker terminals</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>This setting cannot be selected when "Zone 2 Preout" is set to "Zone B".</li> </ul>
Speaker B	No	<p>Set whether you will use the Speaker B system.</p> <p>"No": Speaker B system will not be used</p> <p>"Yes": Speaker B system will be used without bi-amp connection</p> <p>"Bi-Amp": Speaker B system will be used with bi-amp connection</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>"Bi-Amp" cannot be selected when height speakers are being used.</li> <li>This setting will be set to "No" in either of following cases. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When "System Setup" - "Speaker" - "Configuration" - "Zone Speaker" is set to other than "No"</li> <li>When 2 sets of height speakers are used</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
Zone 2 Preout	Zone 2	<p>Set the output destination of the audio that is output from the ZONE 2 PRE/LINE OUT or ZONE B LINE OUT terminals.</p> <p>"Zone 2": When connecting a pre-main amplifier in a separate room (ZONE 2)</p> <p>"Zone B": When connecting a pre-main amplifier, transmitter of wireless headphones, etc. to ZONE B</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>This setting is fixed to "Zone 2" when "Zone Speaker" is set to "Zone 2" or "Zone 2/Zone 3".</li> </ul>

Setting Item	Default Value	Setting Details
Bi-Amp	No	<p>Set whether the speakers are bi-amp connected.</p> <p>"No": When speakers are not bi-amp connected to any speaker terminals</p> <p>"Front": When using bi-amp connection for the front speakers only</p> <p>"Front / Center": When using bi-amp connection for the front speakers and the center speaker. This can only be selected when you have set "Speaker Channels" to "3.1 ch" or "5.1 ch".</p> <p>"Front / Surround": When using bi-amp connection for the front speakers and the surround speakers. This can only be selected when you have set "Speaker Channels" to "4.1 ch" or "5.1 ch".</p> <p>"Center / Surround": When using bi-amp connection for the center speaker and the surround speakers. This can only be selected when you have set "Speaker Channels" to "5.1 ch".</p> <p>"Front / Center / Surround": When using bi-amp connection for the front speakers, the center speaker, and the surround speakers. This can only be selected when you have set "Speaker Channels" to "5.1 ch".</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>This item will be set to "No" when using ZONE 3 or Speakers B, or when "Speaker Channels" is set to either "6.1.4ch" or "7.1.4ch". This item will also be set to "No" when height speakers and ZONE speakers are being used at the same time.</li> <li>You cannot select a setting other than "No" or "Front" when using ZONE speakers.</li> </ul>

## ■ Crossover

Change the settings of crossover frequencies.

Setting Item	Default Value	Setting Details
Front	Small	Set according to the speakers to be used. "Small": When not using floor standing front speakers. "Large": When using floor standing front speakers. • If "Configuration" - "Subwoofer" is set to "No", "Front" will be fixed to "Large" and the low pitched range of the other channels will be output from the front speakers. Refer to the instruction manual of your speakers to make the setting.
Center	Small	Set according to the speakers to be used. "Small": When a center speaker where the speaker diameter is 16 cm or less is to be used. "Large": When a center speaker where the speaker diameter is larger than 16 cm is to be used. • When "Front" is set to "Small", this is set to "Small". • If an item cannot be selected even though connection is correct, check that the settings in "Configuration" - "Speaker Channels" matches the number of connected channels.
Height 1	Small	Set according to the speakers to be used. "Small": When height 1 speakers where the speaker diameter is 16 cm or less are to be used. "Large": When height 1 speakers where the speaker diameter is larger than 16 cm are to be used. • When "Front" is set to "Small", this is set to "Small". • If an item cannot be selected even though connection is correct, check that the settings in "Configuration" - "Speaker Channels" matches the number of connected channels.

Setting Item	Default Value	Setting Details
Height 2	Small	Set according to the speakers to be used. "Small": When height 2 speakers where the speaker diameter is 16 cm or less are to be used. "Large": When height 2 speakers where the speaker diameter is larger than 16 cm are to be used. • When "Front" is set to "Small", this is set to "Small". • If an item cannot be selected even though connection is correct, check that the settings in "Configuration" - "Speaker Channels" matches the number of connected channels.
Surround	Small	Set according to the speakers to be used. "Small": When surround speakers where the speaker diameter is 16 cm or less are to be used. "Large": When surround speakers where the speaker diameter is larger than 16 cm are to be used. • When "Front" is set to "Small", this is set to "Small". • If an item cannot be selected even though connection is correct, check that the settings in "Configuration" - "Speaker Channels" matches the number of connected channels.
Surround Back	Small	Set according to the speakers to be used. "Small": When surround back speakers where the speaker diameter is 16 cm or less are to be used. "Large": When surround back speakers where the speaker diameter is larger than 16 cm are to be used. • When "Surround" is set to "Small", this is set to "Small". • If an item cannot be selected even though connection is correct, check that the settings in "Configuration" - "Speaker Channels" matches the number of connected channels.
Crossover	80Hz	When there are speakers that have been set to "Small", set the Hz under which you would like other speakers to play bass, and also set Hz under which you would like the LFE (low frequency effect) to play the bass. The value from "50Hz" to "200Hz" can be set.

Setting Item	Default Value	Setting Details
Double Bass	Off	This can be selected only when "Configuration" - "Subwoofer" is set to "1ch" or "2ch" and "Front" is set to "Large". Boost bass output by feeding bass sounds from the front left and right, and center speakers to the subwoofer. "On": Bass output will be boosted "Off": Bass output will not be boosted • The setting will not automatically be configured even if you performed Full Auto MCACC.

- This setting is disabled when the IMAX sound mode has been applied. However, when the "IMAX User Setting" (→p164) is "Manual" (default value is Auto), it is enabled.


## ■ Distance

Set the distance from each speaker to the listening position. If multiple settings are saved in the MCACC Memory, press **⏏** on the remote controller, and select the MCACC Memory first in "AV Adjust" - "MCACC" - "MCACC Memory".

Setting Item	Default Value	Setting Details
Front Left	10' 0"/3.00 m	Specify the distance between each speaker and the listening position.
Center	10' 0"/3.00 m	Specify the distance between each speaker and the listening position.
Front Right	10' 0"/3.00 m	Specify the distance between each speaker and the listening position.
Height 1 Left	10' 0"/3.00 m	Specify the distance between each speaker and the listening position.
Height 1 Right	10' 0"/3.00 m	Specify the distance between each speaker and the listening position.
Height 2 Left	10' 0"/3.00 m	Specify the distance between each speaker and the listening position.
Height 2 Right	10' 0"/3.00 m	Specify the distance between each speaker and the listening position.
Surround Right	10' 0"/3.00 m	Specify the distance between each speaker and the listening position.
Surr Back Right	10' 0"/3.00 m	Specify the distance between each speaker and the listening position.
Surr Back Left	10' 0"/3.00 m	Specify the distance between each speaker and the listening position.
Surround Left	10' 0"/3.00 m	Specify the distance between each speaker and the listening position.
Subwoofer 1	10' 0"/3.00 m	Specify the distance between each speaker and the listening position.
Subwoofer 2	10' 0"/3.00 m	Specify the distance between each speaker and the listening position.

- Default values vary depending on the regions.
- Distance units can be switched by pressing MODE on the remote controller. When the unit is set as feet, you can set between 0' 0" 1/2 and 30' 0" in increments of 1/2. When the unit is set as meters, you can set between 0.01 m and 9.00 m in increments of 0.01 m.

## ■ Channel Level

Adjust the volume level of each speaker. If multiple settings are saved in the MCACC Memory, press  on the remote controller, and select the MCACC Memory first in "AV Adjust" - "MCACC" - "MCACC Memory".

Setting Item	Default Value	Setting Details
Front Left	0.0 dB	Select a value between "-12.0 dB" and "+12.0 dB" (in 0.5 dB increments). A test tone will be output each time you change the value. Select the desired level.
Center	0.0 dB	Select a value between "-12.0 dB" and "+12.0 dB" (in 0.5 dB increments). A test tone will be output each time you change the value. Select the desired level.
Front Right	0.0 dB	Select a value between "-12.0 dB" and "+12.0 dB" (in 0.5 dB increments). A test tone will be output each time you change the value. Select the desired level.
Height 1 Left	0.0 dB	Select a value between "-12.0 dB" and "+12.0 dB" (in 0.5 dB increments). A test tone will be output each time you change the value. Select the desired level.
Height 1 Right	0.0 dB	Select a value between "-12.0 dB" and "+12.0 dB" (in 0.5 dB increments). A test tone will be output each time you change the value. Select the desired level.
Height 2 Left	0.0 dB	Select a value between "-12.0 dB" and "+12.0 dB" (in 0.5 dB increments). A test tone will be output each time you change the value. Select the desired level.
Height 2 Right	0.0 dB	Select a value between "-12.0 dB" and "+12.0 dB" (in 0.5 dB increments). A test tone will be output each time you change the value. Select the desired level.
Surround Right	0.0 dB	Select a value between "-12.0 dB" and "+12.0 dB" (in 0.5 dB increments). A test tone will be output each time you change the value. Select the desired level.
Surr Back Right	0.0 dB	Select a value between "-12.0 dB" and "+12.0 dB" (in 0.5 dB increments). A test tone will be output each time you change the value. Select the desired level.
Surr Back Left	0.0 dB	Select a value between "-12.0 dB" and "+12.0 dB" (in 0.5 dB increments). A test tone will be output each time you change the value. Select the desired level.

Setting Item	Default Value	Setting Details
Surround Left	0.0 dB	Select a value between "-12.0 dB" and "+12.0 dB" (in 0.5 dB increments). A test tone will be output each time you change the value. Select the desired level.
Subwoofer 1	0.0 dB	Select a value between "-15.0 dB" and "+12.0 dB" (in 0.5 dB increments). A test tone will be output each time you change the value. Select the desired level.
Subwoofer 2	0.0 dB	Select a value between "-15.0 dB" and "+12.0 dB" (in 0.5 dB increments). A test tone will be output each time you change the value. Select the desired level.

## ■ Dolby Enabled Speaker

Change the settings of Dolby Enabled Speakers.

Setting Item	Default Value	Setting Details
Dolby Enabled Speaker to Ceiling	6' 0"/1.80 m	Set the distance between the Dolby Enabled Speaker and the ceiling. Select between "0' 0" 1/2"/0.01 m" and "15.0 ft/4.50 m" (1/2 / 0.01 m units). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The unit of distance (ft/m) is displayed using the unit selected for the "Distance" setting.</li> </ul>
Reflex Optimizer	Off	You can enhance the reflection effect of Dolby Enabled Speakers from the ceiling. "Off": When this function is not used "On": When this function is used <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The function is not effective if the listening mode is Pure Direct.</li> </ul>

- This setting can be selected when "Configuration" - "Height 1 Speaker" / "Height 2 Speaker" is set to "Dolby Speaker".

## ■ Speaker Virtualizer

The Speaker Virtualizer function can be switched between On and Off.

Setting Item	Default Value	Setting Details
Speaker Virtualizer	On	"On": The listening mode with virtual speaker effect such as F.S.Surround can be selected. "Off": The listening mode with virtual speaker effect such as F.S.Surround cannot be selected.

## Audio Adjust

### ■ Dual Mono/Mono

Change the settings of multiplex audio playback.

Setting Item	Default Value	Setting Details
Dual Mono	Main	Set the audio channel or language to be output when playing multiplex audio or multilingual broadcasts, etc. "Main": Main channel only "Sub": Sub channel only "Main/Sub": Main and sub channels are output at the same time. • For multiplex audio broadcasts, pressing the <b>i</b> button on the remote controller will display "1+1" on the main unit's display.
Mono Input Channel	Left + Right	Set the input channel to play 2-ch digital sources such as Dolby Digital, or 2-ch analog/PCM sources in the Mono listening mode. "Left": Left channel only "Right": Right channel only "Left + Right": Left and right channels

### ■ Dolby

Change the setting of when Dolby signals are input.

Setting Item	Default Value	Setting Details
Loudness Management	On	When playing Dolby TrueHD, enable the dialog normalization function which keeps the volume of dialog at a certain level. Note that when this setting is Off, the Midnight function that allows you to enjoy surround at low volumes is fixed to off when playing Dolby Digital Plus/Dolby TrueHD. "On": When this function is used "Off": When this function is not used

## ■ DTS/IMAX

Change the setting of when DTS signals are input.

Setting Item	Default Value	Setting Details
Dialog Control	0 dB	You can increase the volume of dialog portion of the audio up to 6 dB by 1 dB step so that you can hear the dialog easily in noisy atmosphere. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• This cannot be set for content other than DTS:X.</li> <li>• Depending on the content, this function may not be selected.</li> </ul>
IMAX Mode	Auto	Set the IMAX sound mode. "Auto": IMAX sound mode is automatically applied when IMAX content is detected. "On": In cases when this unit is unable to recognize IMAX content, you can apply the IMAX sound mode by turning this setting "On". "Off": Disable this function
IMAX User Setting	Auto	When playing IMAX content with the IMAX sound mode, select whether to automatically apply the speaker setting recommended by IMAX or to set it manually. "Auto": To use the speaker setup recommended by IMAX. "Manual": To manually set "IMAX Bass Feeding" and "IMAX LFE Mute Level". <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• This cannot be selected when the IMAX Mode is "Off".</li> </ul>
IMAX Bass Feeding	On	Set the route for the bass component of the audio. "On": The bass component of each channel is output according to the crossover settings ( →p160) "Off": Only the LFE signal is output. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• This cannot be selected when the "IMAX User Setting" is "Auto".</li> </ul>
IMAX LFE Mute Level	0 dB	You can set the volume for the LFE when IMAX signals are being input. Select "-∞ dB" or a value between "0 dB" and "-20 dB". <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• This cannot be selected when the "IMAX User Setting" is "Auto".</li> </ul>

## ■ LFE Mute Level

Set the low-frequency effect (LFE) level for Dolby Digital series, DTS series, Multichannel PCM, and DSD signals.

Setting Item	Default Value	Setting Details
LFE Mute Level	0 dB	Select the low-frequency effect (LFE) level of each type of signal from "0dB" to "-∞dB". If the low-frequency effect sound is too strong, select "-20dB" or "-∞dB". <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• This function is disabled when the IMAX sound mode has been applied.</li> </ul>

## ■ Volume

Change the Volume settings.

Setting Item	Default Value	Setting Details
Mute Level	-∞ dB	Set the volume lowered from the listening volume when muting is on. Select a value from "-∞ dB", "-40 dB" and "-20 dB".
Volume Limit	Off	Set the maximum value to prevent the volume from becoming too loud. Select a value from "Off", "-32 dB" to "+17 dB".
Power On Level	Last	Set the volume level of when the power is turned on. Select a value from "Last" (Volume level before entering standby mode), "-∞ dB", and "-81.5 dB" to "+18.0 dB". <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• You cannot set a higher value than that of "Volume Limit".</li> </ul>
Headphone Level	0.0 dB	Adjust the output level of headphones. Select a value between "-12.0 dB" and "+12.0 dB".



## Source

### ■ Input Volume Absorber

Adjust the volume level when there are differences in volume level among multiple devices connected to this unit. Select the input selector to make the setting.

Setting Item	Default Value	Setting Details
Input Volume Absorber	0.0 dB	Select a value between "-12.0 dB" and "+12.0 dB". Set a negative value if the volume of the target device is larger than the others and a positive value if smaller. To check the audio, play back the connected device. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• This function does not work in Zone 2/Zone 3.</li> </ul>

### ■ Name Edit

Set an easy name for each input. The set name appears on the main unit's display. Select the input selector to make the setting.

Setting Item	Default Value	Setting Details
Name Edit	Input name	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Select a character or symbol with the cursors and press ENTER. Repeat this operation to input up to 10 characters. "A/a": Switches between upper and lower cases. (Pressing MODE on the remote controller also toggles between upper and lower cases.) "←" "→": Moves the cursor in the arrow direction. "⌫": Removes a character on the left of the cursor. "␣": Enters a space.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Pressing CLEAR on the remote controller will remove all the input characters.</li> </ul> </li> <li>After inputting, select "OK" with the cursors, and press ENTER. The input name will be saved. To restore the name to the default value, press CLEAR on the remote controller on the input screen. Then while nothing is entered, select "OK", and press ENTER.</li> </ol>

- To name a preset radio station, press TUNER on the remote controller, select AM/FM, and select the preset number.
- This cannot be set if the "NET", "USB" or "BLUETOOTH" input is selected.

## ■ Audio Select

Select the priority for input selection when multiple audio sources are connected to one input selector, for example, connections to both the "BD/DVD" HDMI IN jack and the "BD/DVD" AUDIO IN jack. The setting can be separately set to each input selector. Select the input selector to make the setting. Note that some of the default values cannot be changed.

Setting Item	Default Value	Setting Details
Audio Select	BD/DVD: HDMI GAME: HDMI CBL/SAT: HDMI STRM BOX: HDMI AUX: HDMI CD: OPTICAL TV: OPTICAL	"ARC": When giving priority to the input signal from ARC-compatible TV. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>This item can be selected only when "Hardware" - "HDMI" - "Audio Return Channel (eARC supported)" is set to "On" and also the "TV" input is selected.</li> </ul> "HDMI": When giving priority to the input signal from HDMI IN jacks <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>This item can be selected only when the input to be set is assigned to the HDMI jack in the "Input/Output Assign" - "HDMI Input" setting.</li> </ul> "COAXIAL": When giving priority to input signal from DIGITAL AUDIO IN COAXIAL jacks <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>This item can be selected only when the input to be set is assigned to the COAXIAL jack in the "Input/Output Assign" - "Digital Audio Input" setting.</li> </ul> "OPTICAL": When giving priority to input signal from DIGITAL AUDIO IN OPTICAL jacks <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>This item can be selected only when the input to be set is assigned to the OPTICAL jack in the "Input/Output Assign" - "Digital Audio Input" setting.</li> </ul> "Analog": When giving priority to the input signal from AUDIO IN jacks <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>This item can be selected only when the input to be set is assigned to the AUDIO IN jack in the "Input/Output Assign" - "Analog Audio Input" setting.</li> </ul>

Setting Item	Default Value	Setting Details
Fixed PCM	Off	Select whether to fix input signals to PCM (except multi-channel PCM) when you select "HDMI", "COAXIAL", or "OPTICAL" in the "Audio Select" setting. Set this item to "On" if noise is produced or truncation occurs at the beginning of a track when playing PCM sources. Select "Off" normally. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Each time the "Audio Select" setting is changed, the setting is restored to "Off".</li> </ul>

- The setting cannot be changed when "TUNER", "NET", "USB", or "BLUETOOTH" input is selected.

## Hardware

### ■ HDMI

Change the settings of the HDMI function.

Setting Item	Default Value	Setting Details
HDMI CEC	Off	<p>Setting this to "On" enables the input selection link and other link functions with HDMI-connected CEC-compatible device.</p> <p>"On": When this function is used                      "Off": When this function is not used</p> <p>When this setting is changed, turn off and then on again the power of all connected devices.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Depending on the TV to use, a link setting may be required on the TV.</li> <li>This function is effective only when the device is connected to the HDMI OUT MAIN terminal.</li> <li>Setting this to "On" and closing the operation screen will display the name of the connected CEC-compatible device and "CEC On" on the main unit's display.</li> <li>When this function is set to "On", the power consumption in standby state increases, however, the increase in power consumption is minimized by automatically entering the HYBRID STANDBY mode where only the essential circuits operate.</li> <li>If you operate the MASTER VOLUME dial on the main unit when this setting is "On" and audio is output from the TV speakers, audio will be output also from the speakers connected to this unit. To output audio from only either of them, change the setting of this unit or TV, or reduce the volume of this unit.</li> <li>If abnormal behavior is observed when this is set to "On", set it to "Off".</li> <li>If a connected device is not CEC-compatible, or if you are not sure whether it is compatible, set it to "Off".</li> </ul>

Setting Item	Default Value	Setting Details
HDMI Standby Through	Off	<p>When this is set to anything other than "Off", you can play the video and audio of an HDMI-connected player on the TV even if the unit is in standby mode. Also, only "Auto" and "Auto(Eco)" can be selected if "HDMI CEC" is set to "On". If you select anything else, set "HDMI CEC" to "Off".</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When this function is set to a value other than "Off", the power consumption in standby state increases, however, the increase in power consumption is minimized by automatically entering the HYBRID STANDBY mode where only the essential circuits operate.</li> </ul> <p>"BD/DVD", "GAME", "CBL/SAT", "STRM BOX", "HDMI 5", "HDMI 6", "AUX": For example, if you select "BD/DVD", you can play the device connected to the "BD/DVD" jack on the TV even if the unit is in standby mode. Select this setting if you have decided which player to use with this function.</p> <p>"Last": You can play on the TV the video and audio of the input selected immediately before the unit is switched to standby.</p> <p>"Auto", "Auto (Eco)": Select either of the settings if the connected player conforms to the CEC standard. You can play the video and audio of the player on the TV using the CEC link function, irrespective of what input is selected immediately before the unit is switched to standby.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To play a non-CEC compliant player on the TV, turn the unit on and switch the input.</li> <li>When using a CEC-compliant TV, you can reduce the power consumption in standby mode by selecting "Auto (Eco)".</li> </ul>

Setting Item	Default Value	Setting Details
Audio TV Out	Off	<p>You can enjoy audio through the speakers of the TV while this unit is on.</p> <p>"On": When this function is used                      "Off": When this function is not used</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>This setting is fixed to "Auto" if you have set "Input/Output Assign" - "TV Out/OSD" - "HDMI Out" or "HDMI" - "HDMI Out" in "AV Adjust" to "MAIN" or "MAIN+SUB" and "HDMI CEC" is set to "On". If you change this setting, set "HDMI CEC" to "Off".</li> <li>Listening mode cannot be changed while "Audio TV Out" is set to "On" and audio is being output from the TV.</li> <li>Depending on your TV or input signal of the connected device, audio may not be output from the TV even if this is set to "On". In such a case, audio is output from the speakers of the unit.</li> <li>Audio is output from this unit if you operate the MASTER VOLUME dial on this unit when audio that is input to this unit is output from your TV speakers. If you do not want to output audio, change the setting of this unit or TV, or reduce the volume of this unit.</li> </ul>
Audio Return Channel (eARC supported)	Off	<p>You can enjoy the sound of an HDMI-connected ARC-compatible TV or eARC-compatible TV through the speakers connected to the unit.</p> <p>"On": When enjoying the TV sound through the speakers of this unit                      "Off": When the ARC function or eARC function is not used</p>
PQLS	Off	<p>Enables high-quality playback of audio from AV components that support PQLS (Precision Quartz Lock System) connected by HDMI.</p> <p>"On": When this function is used                      "Off": When this function is not used</p>

Setting Item	Default Value	Setting Details
Auto Delay	On	<p>This setting automatically corrects desynchronization between the video and audio signals based on the information from the HDMI Lip Sync-compatible TV.</p> <p>"On": When enabling the automatic correction function                      "Off": When not using the automatic correction function</p>

## ■ Power Management

Change the settings for the power-save function.

Setting Item	Default Value	Setting Details
Sleep Timer	Off	<p>You can allow the unit to enter standby automatically when the specified time elapses. Select a value from "30 minutes", "60 minutes" and "90 minutes".</p> <p>"Off": The unit does not automatically enter standby mode.</p>
Auto Standby	On/Off	<p>This setting allows the unit to enter standby mode automatically after 20 minutes of inactivity without any video or audio input. (When "USB Power Out at Standby" or "Network Standby" is enabled, the unit enters the HYBRID STANDBY mode which minimizes the increase in power consumption.)</p> <p>"On": The unit automatically enters standby mode ("AUTO STBY" lights up).                      "Off": The unit does not automatically enter standby mode.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>"Auto Standby" is displayed on the main unit's display and TV screen 30 seconds before entering standby mode.</li> <li>"Auto Standby" does not work when Zone 2/ Zone 3 is active.</li> <li>Default values vary depending on the regions.</li> </ul>

Setting Item	Default Value	Setting Details
Auto Standby in HDMI Standby Through	On/Off	<p>Enable or disable "Auto Standby" while "HDMI Standby Through" is on.</p> <p>"On": The setting is enabled.</p> <p>"Off": The setting is disabled.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>This setting cannot be set to "On" if "Auto Standby" and "HDMI Standby Through" are set to "Off".</li> <li>Default values vary depending on the regions.</li> </ul>
USB Power Out at Standby	Off	<p>Devices connected to the USB port on the front panel and on the rear panel are supplied with electricity even when this unit is in standby mode when this function is "On".</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When this function is set to "On", the power consumption in standby state increases, however, the increase in power consumption is minimized by automatically entering the HYBRID STANDBY mode where only the essential circuits operate.</li> </ul>
Network Standby	On	<p>When this function is set to "On", the network function works even in standby state, and you can turn on the power of the unit via network using an application such as Pioneer Remote App that can control this unit.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When this function is set to "On", the power consumption in standby state increases, however, the increase in power consumption is minimized by automatically entering the HYBRID STANDBY mode where only the essential circuits operate. Note that even if this function is set to "Off", when any of the HDMI CEC (→p167), HDMI Standby Through (→p167), USB Power Out at Standby (→p169) and Bluetooth Wakeup (→p169) functions is enabled, this function will be in "On" state regardless of the setting.</li> <li>When connection to the network is lost, "Network Standby" may be disabled to reduce power consumption. In such a case, turn the unit on by using the power button on the remote controller or main unit.</li> </ul>

Setting Item	Default Value	Setting Details
Bluetooth Wakeup	Off	<p>This function wakes up the unit on standby by connecting a BLUETOOTH-enabled device.</p> <p>"On": When this function is used</p> <p>"Off": When this function is not used</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When this function is set to "On", the power consumption in standby state increases, however, the increase in power consumption is minimized by automatically entering the HYBRID STANDBY mode where only the essential circuits operate.</li> <li>This setting is fixed to "Off" if "Network/Bluetooth" - "Bluetooth" - "Auto Input Change" is set to "Off".</li> </ul>

- Wait for a while if "Network Standby" and "Bluetooth Wakeup" cannot be selected. It can be selected when the network function is activated.

## ■ 12V Trigger A

Set when outputting the control signal (maximum 12 V/100 mA) through the 12V TRIGGER OUT A jack. Different settings can be set for each input selector. You can enable power link operation when you connect the unit and the external devices equipped with 12V trigger input jack.

Setting Item	Default Value	Setting Details
BD/DVD	Off	<p>Set the 12V trigger output setting to each input.</p> <p>"Off": No output</p> <p>"Main": Output when "BD/DVD" is selected as input source for the main room.</p> <p>"Zone 2": Output when "BD/DVD" is selected as input source for ZONE2.</p> <p>"Zone 3": Output when "BD/DVD" is selected as input source for ZONE3.</p>

Setting Item	Default Value	Setting Details
GAME	Off	Set the 12V trigger output setting to each input. "Off": No output "Main": Output when "GAME" is selected as input source for the main room. "Zone 2": Output when "GAME" is selected as input source for ZONE2. "Zone 3": Output when "GAME" is selected as input source for ZONE3.
CBL/SAT	Off	Set the 12V trigger output setting to each input. "Off": No output "Main": Output when "CBL/SAT" is selected as input source for the main room. "Zone 2": Output when "CBL/SAT" is selected as input source for ZONE2. "Zone 3": Output when "CBL/SAT" is selected as input source for ZONE3.
STRM BOX	Off	Set the 12V trigger output setting to each input. "Off": No output "Main": Output when "STRM BOX" is selected as input source for the main room. "Zone 2": Output when "STRM BOX" is selected as input source for ZONE2. "Zone 3": Output when "STRM BOX" is selected as input source for ZONE3.
HDMI 5	Off	Set the 12V trigger output setting to each input. "Off": No output "Main": Output when "HDMI 5" is selected as input source for the main room.
HDMI 6	Off	Set the 12V trigger output setting to each input. "Off": No output "Main": Output when "HDMI 6" is selected as input source for the main room.
AUX	Off	Set the 12V trigger output setting to each input. "Off": No output "Main": Output when "AUX" is selected as input source for the main room.

Setting Item	Default Value	Setting Details
CD	Off	Set the 12V trigger output setting to each input. "Off": No output "Main": Output when "CD" is selected as input source for the main room. "Zone 2": Output when "CD" is selected as input source for ZONE2. "Zone 3": Output when "CD" is selected as input source for ZONE3.
TV	Off	Set the 12V trigger output setting to each input. "Off": No output "Main": Output when "TV" is selected as input source for the main room. "Zone 2": Output when "TV" is selected as input source for ZONE2. "Zone 3": Output when "TV" is selected as input source for ZONE3.
PHONO	Off	Set the 12V trigger output setting to each input. "Off": No output "Main": Output when "PHONO" is selected as input source for the main room. "Zone 2": Output when "PHONO" is selected as input source for ZONE2. "Zone 3": Output when "PHONO" is selected as input source for ZONE3.
TUNER	Off	Set the 12V trigger output setting to each input. "Off": No output "Main": Output when "TUNER" is selected as input source for the main room. "Zone 2": Output when "TUNER" is selected as input source for ZONE2. "Zone 3": Output when "TUNER" is selected as input source for ZONE3.

Setting Item	Default Value	Setting Details
NET	Off	Set the 12V trigger output setting to each input. "Off": No output "Main": Output when "NET" is selected as input source for the main room. "Zone 2": Output when "NET" is selected as input source for ZONE2. "Zone 3": Output when "NET" is selected as input source for ZONE3.
USB FRONT	Off	Set the 12V trigger output setting to each input. "Off": No output "Main": Output when "USB FRONT" is selected as input source for the main room. "Zone 2": Output when "USB FRONT" is selected as input source for ZONE2. "Zone 3": Output when "USB FRONT" is selected as input source for ZONE3.
USB REAR	Off	Set the 12V trigger output setting to each input. "Off": No output "Main": Output when "USB REAR" is selected as input source for the main room. "Zone 2": Output when "USB REAR" is selected as input source for ZONE2. "Zone 3": Output when "USB REAR" is selected as input source for ZONE3.
BLUETOOTH	Off	Set the 12V trigger output setting to each input. "Off": No output "Main": Output when "BLUETOOTH" is selected as input source for the main room. "Zone 2": Output when "BLUETOOTH" is selected as input source for ZONE2. "Zone 3": Output when "BLUETOOTH" is selected as input source for ZONE3.

## ■ 12V Trigger B

Set when outputting the control signal (maximum 12 V/25 mA) through the 12V TRIGGER OUT B jack. Different settings can be set for each input selector. You can enable power link operation when you connect the unit and the external devices equipped with 12V trigger input jack.

Setting Item	Default Value	Setting Details
BD/DVD	Off	Set the 12V trigger output setting to each input. "Off": No output "Main": Output when "BD/DVD" is selected as input source for the main room. "Zone 2": Output when "BD/DVD" is selected as input source for ZONE2. "Zone 3": Output when "BD/DVD" is selected as input source for ZONE3.
GAME	Off	Set the 12V trigger output setting to each input. "Off": No output "Main": Output when "GAME" is selected as input source for the main room. "Zone 2": Output when "GAME" is selected as input source for ZONE2. "Zone 3": Output when "GAME" is selected as input source for ZONE3.
CBL/SAT	Off	Set the 12V trigger output setting to each input. "Off": No output "Main": Output when "CBL/SAT" is selected as input source for the main room. "Zone 2": Output when "CBL/SAT" is selected as input source for ZONE2. "Zone 3": Output when "CBL/SAT" is selected as input source for ZONE3.
STRM BOX	Off	Set the 12V trigger output setting to each input. "Off": No output "Main": Output when "STRM BOX" is selected as input source for the main room. "Zone 2": Output when "STRM BOX" is selected as input source for ZONE2. "Zone 3": Output when "STRM BOX" is selected as input source for ZONE3.

Setting Item	Default Value	Setting Details
HDMI 5	Off	Set the 12V trigger output setting to each input. "Off": No output "Main": Output when "HDMI 5" is selected as input source for the main room.
HDMI 6	Off	Set the 12V trigger output setting to each input. "Off": No output "Main": Output when "HDMI 6" is selected as input source for the main room.
AUX	Off	Set the 12V trigger output setting to each input. "Off": No output "Main": Output when "AUX" is selected as input source for the main room.
CD	Off	Set the 12V trigger output setting to each input. "Off": No output "Main": Output when "CD" is selected as input source for the main room. "Zone 2": Output when "CD" is selected as input source for ZONE2. "Zone 3": Output when "CD" is selected as input source for ZONE3.
TV	Off	Set the 12V trigger output setting to each input. "Off": No output "Main": Output when "TV" is selected as input source for the main room. "Zone 2": Output when "TV" is selected as input source for ZONE2. "Zone 3": Output when "TV" is selected as input source for ZONE3.
PHONO	Off	Set the 12V trigger output setting to each input. "Off": No output "Main": Output when "PHONO" is selected as input source for the main room. "Zone 2": Output when "PHONO" is selected as input source for ZONE2. "Zone 3": Output when "PHONO" is selected as input source for ZONE3.

Setting Item	Default Value	Setting Details
TUNER	Off	Set the 12V trigger output setting to each input. "Off": No output "Main": Output when "TUNER" is selected as input source for the main room. "Zone 2": Output when "TUNER" is selected as input source for ZONE2. "Zone 3": Output when "TUNER" is selected as input source for ZONE3.
NET	Off	Set the 12V trigger output setting to each input. "Off": No output "Main": Output when "NET" is selected as input source for the main room. "Zone 2": Output when "NET" is selected as input source for ZONE2. "Zone 3": Output when "NET" is selected as input source for ZONE3.
USB FRONT	Off	Set the 12V trigger output setting to each input. "Off": No output "Main": Output when "USB FRONT" is selected as input source for the main room. "Zone 2": Output when "USB FRONT" is selected as input source for ZONE2. "Zone 3": Output when "USB FRONT" is selected as input source for ZONE3.
USB REAR	Off	Set the 12V trigger output setting to each input. "Off": No output "Main": Output when "USB REAR" is selected as input source for the main room. "Zone 2": Output when "USB REAR" is selected as input source for ZONE2. "Zone 3": Output when "USB REAR" is selected as input source for ZONE3.



Setting Item	Default Value	Setting Details
BLUETOOTH	Off	Set the 12V trigger output setting to each input. "Off": No output "Main": Output when "BLUETOOTH" is selected as input source for the main room. "Zone 2": Output when "BLUETOOTH" is selected as input source for ZONE2. "Zone 3": Output when "BLUETOOTH" is selected as input source for ZONE3.

## ■ Works with SONOS

Change the settings to connect with the Sonos Connect.

Setting Item	Default Value	Setting Details
Input Selector	Off	Select the input selector to which the Sonos Connect is connected. • Selecting "Off" disables the interlock function with Sonos.
Connected Device	-	Displays the Sonos Connect connected to the same network as the network of this unit. Press the ENTER button to select the connected Sonos Connect. • Products (e.g. Play:3 unequipped with an output terminal) other than the Sonos Connect are also displayed in the device list and selectable. In that case, when playback on the Sonos side starts, the input is switched, however, audio is not output. Select the room name of the connected Sonos Connect. • Up to 32 devices can be displayed on the Sonos product list screen. If you cannot find the Sonos Connect to be interlocked, return to the previous screen, turn off the product you do not want to interlock, and try again. • To use this function, set "Input Selector" beforehand.

Setting Item	Default Value	Setting Details
Output Zone	Main	<p>Select the zone where you want to listen to the music.</p> <p>"Main": Outputs audio only to the main room (where this unit is located).</p> <p>"Zone 2": Outputs audio only to the separate room (ZONE 2).</p> <p>"Main/Zone 2": Outputs audio to both the main room and separate room.</p> <p>"Zone 3": Outputs audio only to the separate room (ZONE 3).</p> <p>"Main/Zone 3": Outputs audio to both the main room and separate room (ZONE 3).</p> <p>"Zone 2/Zone 3": Outputs audio to both the separate rooms (ZONE 2 and ZONE 3).</p> <p>"Main/Zone 2/Zone 3": Outputs audio to the main room and both separate rooms (ZONE 2 and ZONE 3).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To use this function, set "Input Selector" beforehand.</li> </ul>
Preset Volume	Main: Last Zone 2: Last Zone 3: Last	<p>You can set the volume beforehand for playing back the Sonos Connect. You can set volumes for the main room (where this unit is located) and separate room (ZONE 2 or ZONE 3) respectively. Select a value from "Last" (Volume level before entering standby mode), "-∞ dB", and "-81.5 dB" to "+18.0 dB".</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To use this function, set "Input Selector" beforehand.</li> </ul>

## Multi Zone

### ■ Zone 2

Change the settings for Zone 2.

Setting Item	Default Value	Setting Details
Output Level	Fixed	<p>Select whether to adjust the volume on the pre-main amplifier in the separate room or on this unit when outputting to Zone 2.</p> <p>"Fixed": Adjust on the pre-main amplifier in the separate room</p> <p>"Variable": Adjust on this unit</p>
Volume Limit	Off	<p>Set the maximum value for Zone 2 to avoid too high volume. Select "Off" or a value between "-32 dB" and "+17 dB".</p>
Power On Level	Last	<p>Set the Zone 2 volume level of when this unit is turned on. Select a value from "Last" (volume before the unit was turned off), "-∞ dB", and "-81.5 dB" to "+18.0 dB".</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>You cannot set a higher value than that of "Volume Limit".</li> </ul>
Bass	0 dB	<p>Adjust the volume of the bass for Zone 2. Select a value between "-10 dB" and "+10 dB".</p>
Treble	0 dB	<p>Adjust the volume of the treble for Zone 2. Select a value between "-10 dB" and "+10 dB".</p>
Balance	0	<p>Set the left-right balance for Zone 2. Select a value between "L + 10" to "R + 10".</p>

### ■ Zone 3

Change the settings for Zone 3.

Setting Item	Default Value	Setting Details
Output Level	Fixed	Select whether to adjust the volume on the pre-main amplifier in the separate room or on this unit when outputting to Zone 3. "Fixed": Adjust on the pre-main amplifier in the separate room "Variable": Adjust on this unit
Volume Limit	Off	Set the maximum value for Zone 3 to avoid too high volume. Select "Off" or a value between "-32 dB" and "+17 dB".
Power On Level	Last	Set the Zone 3 volume level of when this unit is turned on. Select a value from "Last" (volume before the unit was turned off), "-∞ dB", and "-81.5 dB" to "+18.0 dB". • You cannot set a higher value than that of "Volume Limit".
Bass	0 dB	Adjust the volume of the bass for Zone 3. Select a value between "-10 dB" and "+10 dB".
Treble	0 dB	Adjust the volume of the treble for Zone 3. Select a value between "-10 dB" and "+10 dB".
Balance	0	Set the left-right balance for Zone 3. Select a value between "L + 10" to "R + 10".

### ■ Remote Play Zone

Change the settings for remote play.

Setting Item	Default Value	Setting Details
Remote Play Zone	Auto	When playing with AirPlay or Spotify Connect, or when using the Music Server function to play remotely from your PC, you can set whether to play in the main room (where this unit is located) or in a separate room (ZONE 2/ZONE 3). "Auto": When the main room input is NET, music is played in the main room. When the separate room input is NET and the main room input is other than NET, then the music is played in the separate room. "Main", "Zone 2", "Zone 3": Select when limiting the play zone to a particular room. For example, when playing only in the separate room, select "Zone 2" or "Zone 3". • This function may not work if playback is already proceeding with the same network function.

## Miscellaneous

### ■ Tuner

Change the frequency step for the tuner.

Setting Item	Default Value	Setting Details
AM / FM Frequency Step (North American models)	10 kHz / 0.2 MHz	Select a frequency step to suit your residential area. Select "10 kHz/0.2 MHz" or "9 kHz/0.05 MHz". • When this setting is changed, all radio presets are deleted.
AM Frequency Step (European models)	9 kHz	Select a frequency step to suit your residential area. Select "10 kHz" or "9 kHz". • When this setting is changed, all radio presets are deleted.
AM Noise Cut Mode	1	You can improve reception sensitivity by changing this mode if you are finding AM broadcasts difficult to hear. Select "1" or "2".

### ■ Remote ID

Change the remote controller ID.

Setting Item	Default Value	Setting Details
Remote ID	1	Select an ID for the unit's remote controller from "1", "2", and "3" to prevent interference between the unit and other Pioneer components that are installed in the same room. After changing the ID on the main unit, change the ID on the remote controller accordingly with the following procedure.  While pressing and holding the MODE button, press the following buttons for approx. 3 seconds. • To change the remote controller ID to "1": AUTO/DIRECT • To change the remote controller ID to "2": SURROUND • To change the remote controller ID to "3": STEREO

## ■ Preamp Mode

If speakers are connected to the PRE OUT jacks on this unit via a power amplifier, you can reduce the power consumed by this unit by turning off the power supplied to the SPEAKERS terminals you are not using on this unit.

Setting Item	Default Value	Setting Details
Preamp Mode	No	Select the SPEAKERS terminals whose power you want to turn off. "No": Power is supplied to all SPEAKERS terminals. Select when a power amplifier is not connected. "Front": Turns off the power for the SPEAKERS terminals for the front speakers. "Front + Center": Turns off the power for the SPEAKERS terminals for the front speakers and center speaker. "All": Turns off the power for all SPEAKERS terminals. Select when this unit is to be used as the pre-amplifier. • This setting cannot be selected when bi-amp connection is used for front speakers. Only "Front" can be selected when bi-amp connection is used for the center speaker and surround speakers.

## ■ Firmware Update

Change the settings for Firmware Update.

Setting Item	Default Value	Setting Details
Update Notice	Enable	Availability of a firmware update is notified via network. "Enable": Notify updates "Disable": Do not notify updates
Version	-	The current firmware version is displayed.
Update via NET	-	Press ENTER to select when updating the firmware via network. • This setting cannot be selected if you do not have Internet access or there is no updatable firmware.
Update via USB	-	Press ENTER to select when updating the firmware via USB. • This setting cannot be selected if a USB storage device is not connected or there is no updatable firmware in the USB storage device.

- Wait for a while if "Firmware Update" cannot be selected. It can be selected when the network function is activated.

## ■ Initial Setup

Make the initial setup from the setup menu.

- Wait for a while if "Initial Setup" cannot be selected. It can be selected when the network function is activated.

## ■ Lock

Lock the Setup menu so that the settings cannot be changed.

Setting Item	Default Value	Setting Details
Setup Parameter	Unlocked	Lock the Setup menu so that the settings cannot be changed. "Locked": The menu is locked. "Unlocked": The menu is unlocked.

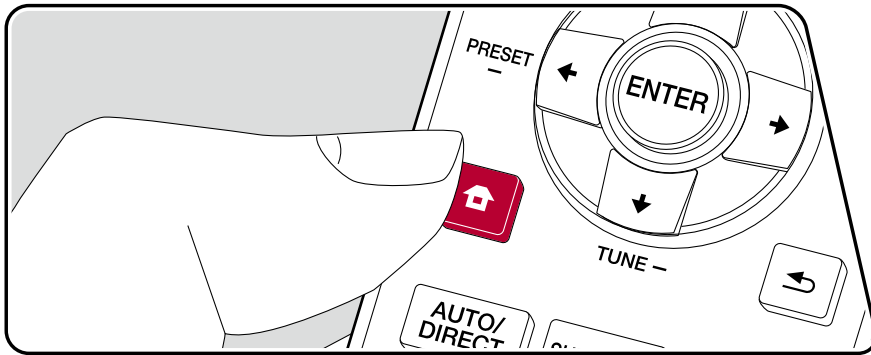
## ■ Factory Reset

All the settings are restored to factory defaults.


Setting Item	Default Value	Setting Details
Factory Reset	-	<p>All the settings are restored to factory defaults. Select "Start", and press the ENTER button.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If "Factory Reset" is performed, your settings are restored to the default values. Be sure to note down your setting contents beforehand.</li> </ul>

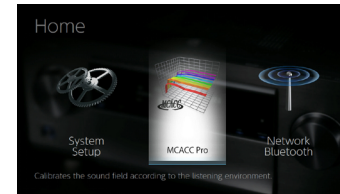
## MCACC Pro





### Menu operations







Setup the speakers automatically or make desired changes to the equalizer. You can also check the values set currently for each speaker setting.

Use the on-screen displays (OSD) that appear on the TV to make the settings. Press  on the remote controller to display the Home screen, then select MCACC Pro with the cursors on the remote controller and press ENTER.



Select the item with the cursor  /  /  /  buttons of the remote controller and press ENTER to confirm your selection.

Use the cursors  /  to change the default values.

- To return to the previous screen, press .
- To exit the settings, press .

## Full Auto MCACC

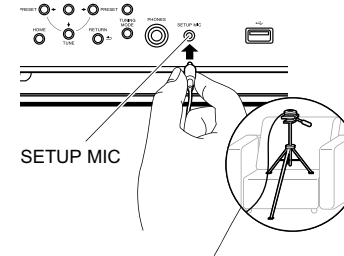
Place the supplied speaker setup microphone in the listening position, measure the test tones emitted by the speakers, then the unit automatically sets the optimum volume level for each speaker, the crossover frequencies, and the distance from the listening position. The influence of standing waves can be reduced to suit the listening environment, the reverberation characteristics can be measured to increase the precision of calibration, the speaker equalizers can be adjusted, and the difference in phase and timing between speakers and speaker units can be corrected. These settings and calibrations can be readjusted with Manual MCACC, and you can enable or disable them in AV Adjust.

- Calibration takes between 3 and 12 minutes to be completed. The speakers emit the test tone at high volume during measurement, so be careful of your surroundings. Keep the room as quiet as possible during measurement.
  - If you connect a subwoofer, check the power and volume of the subwoofer. Set the subwoofer volume to more than half.
  - If the power of this unit suddenly turns off, the wires in the speaker cables have touched the rear panel or other wires, and the protection circuit is working. Twist the wires again securely, and make sure they do not stick out of the speaker terminals when connecting.
1. Select the connected speaker configuration.



Note that the image on the screen changes each time you select the number of channels in "Speaker Channels".

2. Place the supplied speaker setup microphone at the listening position, and connect it to the SETUP MIC jack on the main unit.




When placing the speaker setup microphone on a tripod, refer to the illustration.

3. Confirm a test tone is output from the subwoofer and press ENTER.
4. Press ENTER. Then, test tones are output from each speaker, and the connected speakers and the noise in the surrounding environment are automatically measured.
5. The measurement results in step 4 are displayed. If there is no problem in the detection result of the speaker, select "Next" and press ENTER to output the test tone again to automatically set the settings such as volume level, crossover frequency, etc., to their optimum. (The test tone is automatically output when 10 seconds has elapsed without any operation.)
  - When an error message is displayed or when the connected speakers cannot be detected, perform re-measurement by selecting "Retry" and pressing ENTER.
  - When it cannot be resolved by performing the re-measurement, confirm if the speakers are connected correctly. If there is any problem with the speaker connection, perform the connection after disconnecting the power cord.
6. Once the measurement is completed, it is possible to perform the measurement in 8 additional listening positions. To perform the measurement, select "Next" and press ENTER, then follow the instructions. To not perform the measurement, select "Finish (Calculate)" and press ENTER.
  - After each listening position is detected, select "Finish (Calculate)" and press ENTER to complete the detection process.
7. Disconnect the speaker setup microphone.



## Manual MCACC

When Full Auto MCACC is run, a variety of speaker settings are made automatically, but Manual MCACC enables you to make further adjustments manually, giving you the opportunity to make even more detailed settings.

- Before making these adjustments, run Full Auto MCACC first.
- Depending on the settings, speakers may emit test tones at high volume during measurement, so be careful of your surroundings.
- If multiple settings are saved in the MCACC Memory, press  on the remote controller, and select the MCACC Memory first in "AV Adjust" - "MCACC" - "MCACC Memory".

### ■ Fine Channel Level

Adjust the volume level of the speakers while listening to the test tone. After firstly adjusting the Front Left speaker to the desired volume, adjust the volume level so that each channel is the same level, starting from the Front Right speaker. Test tone output alternates between the selected speaker and the benchmark speaker, so adjust the volume so it becomes the same.

Setting Item	Default Value	Setting Details
Front Left	0.0 dB	Select a value between "-12.0 dB" and "+12.0 dB" (in 0.5 dB increments). A test tone will be output each time you change the value. Select the desired level.
Front Right	0.0 dB	Select a value between "-12.0 dB" and "+12.0 dB" (in 0.5 dB increments). Test tone output alternates between this speaker and the benchmark Front Left speaker, so adjust the volume so it becomes the same.
Center	0.0 dB	Select a value between "-12.0 dB" and "+12.0 dB" (in 0.5 dB increments). Test tone output alternates between this speaker and the benchmark Front Left speaker, so adjust the volume so it becomes the same.

Setting Item	Default Value	Setting Details
Height 1 Left	0.0 dB	Select a value between "-12.0 dB" and "+12.0 dB" (in 0.5 dB increments). Test tone output alternates between this speaker and the benchmark Front Left speaker, so adjust the volume so it becomes the same.
Height 1 Right	0.0 dB	Select a value between "-12.0 dB" and "+12.0 dB" (in 0.5 dB increments). Test tone output alternates between this speaker and the benchmark Height 1 Left speaker, so adjust the volume so it becomes the same.
Height 2 Left	0.0 dB	Select a value between "-12.0 dB" and "+12.0 dB" (in 0.5 dB increments). Test tone output alternates between this speaker and the benchmark Front Left speaker, so adjust the volume so it becomes the same.
Height 2 Right	0.0 dB	Select a value between "-12.0 dB" and "+12.0 dB" (in 0.5 dB increments). Test tone output alternates between this speaker and the benchmark Height 2 Left speaker, so adjust the volume so it becomes the same.
Surround Left	0.0 dB	Select a value between "-12.0 dB" and "+12.0 dB" (in 0.5 dB increments). Test tone output alternates between this speaker and the benchmark Front Left speaker, so adjust the volume so it becomes the same.
Surround Right	0.0 dB	Select a value between "-12.0 dB" and "+12.0 dB" (in 0.5 dB increments). Test tone output alternates between this speaker and the benchmark Surround Left speaker, so adjust the volume so it becomes the same.
Surr Back Left	0.0 dB	Select a value between "-12.0 dB" and "+12.0 dB" (in 0.5 dB increments). Test tone output alternates between this speaker and the benchmark Surround Left speaker, so adjust the volume so it becomes the same.

Setting Item	Default Value	Setting Details
Surr Back Right	0.0 dB	Select a value between "-12.0 dB" and "+12.0 dB" (in 0.5 dB increments). Test tone output alternates between this speaker and the benchmark Surround Back Left speaker, so adjust the volume so it becomes the same.
Subwoofer 1	0.0 dB	Select a value between "-15.0 dB" and "+12.0 dB" (in 0.5 dB increments). Test tone output alternates between this subwoofer and the benchmark Front Left speaker, so adjust the volume so it becomes the same.
Subwoofer 2	0.0 dB	Select a value between "-15.0 dB" and "+12.0 dB" (in 0.5 dB increments). Test tone output alternates between this subwoofer and the benchmark Subwoofer1, so adjust the volume so it becomes the same.

## ■ Fine Speaker Distance

Make fine adjustments to the distance of the speakers from the listening position while listening to the test pulse. After firstly setting the measured distance of the Front Left speaker from the listening position, adjust the distance of the other speakers, starting with the Front Right speaker. The test pulse is output from the selected speaker and the benchmark speaker, so adjust the distance so the point where the test pulse is heard is in the middle of the two speakers.

Setting Item	Default Value	Setting Details
Front Left	10' 0" / 3.00 m	Set the measured distance of the Front Left speaker from the listening position.
Front Right	10' 0" / 3.00 m	The test pulse is output from this speaker and the benchmark Front Left speaker, so adjust the distance so the point where the test pulse is heard is in the middle of the two speakers.
Center	10' 0" / 3.00 m	The test pulse is output from this speaker and the benchmark Front Left speaker, so adjust the distance so the point where the test pulse is heard is in the middle of the two speakers.
Height 1 Left	10' 0" / 3.00 m	The test pulse is output from this speaker and the benchmark Front Left speaker, so adjust the distance so the point where the test pulse is heard is in the middle of the two speakers.
Height 1 Right	10' 0" / 3.00 m	The test pulse is output from this speaker and the benchmark Height 1 Left speaker, so adjust the distance so the point where the test pulse is heard is in the middle of the two speakers.
Height 2 Left	10' 0" / 3.00 m	The test pulse is output from this speaker and the benchmark Front Left speaker, so adjust the distance so the point where the test pulse is heard is in the middle of the two speakers.
Height 2 Right	10' 0" / 3.00 m	The test pulse is output from this speaker and the benchmark Front Right speaker, so adjust the distance so the point where the test pulse is heard is in the middle of the two speakers.

Setting Item	Default Value	Setting Details
Surround Left	10' 0" / 3.00 m	The test pulse is output from this speaker and the benchmark Front Left speaker, so adjust the distance so the point where the test pulse is heard is in the middle of the two speakers.
Surround Right	10' 0" / 3.00 m	The test pulse is output from this speaker and the benchmark Front Right speaker, so adjust the distance so the point where the test pulse is heard is in the middle of the two speakers.
Surr Back Left	10' 0" / 3.00 m	The test pulse is output from this speaker and the benchmark Surround Left speaker, so adjust the distance so the point where the test pulse is heard is in the middle of the two speakers.
Surr Back Right	10' 0" / 3.00 m	The test pulse is output from this speaker and the benchmark Surround Right speaker, so adjust the distance so the point where the test pulse is heard is in the middle of the two speakers.
Subwoofer 1	10' 0" / 3.00 m	The test pulse is output from this subwoofer and the benchmark Front Left speaker, so adjust the distance so the point where the test pulse is heard is in the middle of the two speakers.
Subwoofer 2	10' 0" / 3.00 m	The test pulse is output from this subwoofer and the benchmark Subwoofer 1, so adjust the distance so the point where the test pulse is heard is in the middle of the two speakers.

- Default values vary depending on the regions.
- Distance units can be switched by pressing MODE on the remote controller. When the unit is set as feet, you can set between 0' 0" 1/2 and 30' 0" in increments of 1/2. When the unit is set as meters, you can set between 0.01 m and 9.00 m in increments of 0.01 m.

## ■ Standing Wave

This controls the affect of the standing waves that occur when sound waves reverberating off obstacles such as walls interfere with the original sound waves.

Setting Item	Default Value	Setting Details
Main	0.0dB	Control the effect of standing waves for speakers other than the center speaker and the subwoofer. 1. After selecting "Filter" with $\uparrow$ / $\downarrow$ , select the filter to be adjusted from "1" to "3" with $\leftarrow$ / $\rightarrow$ and press ENTER. 2. After selecting the central frequency with $\leftarrow$ / $\rightarrow$ , adjust the bandwidth with $\lll$ / $\ggg$ , then adjust the attenuation with $\uparrow$ / $\downarrow$ . The central frequency can be selected between "63Hz" and "250Hz". The bandwidth can be selected between "2.0" and "9.8" (0.2 intervals). Attenuation can be selected between "0.0dB" and "12.0dB" (0.5dB intervals).
Center	0.0dB	Control the effect of speaker standing waves for the center speaker. 1. After selecting "Filter" with $\uparrow$ / $\downarrow$ , select the filter to be adjusted from "1" to "3" with $\leftarrow$ / $\rightarrow$ and press ENTER. 2. After selecting the central frequency with $\leftarrow$ / $\rightarrow$ , adjust the bandwidth with $\lll$ / $\ggg$ , then adjust the attenuation with $\uparrow$ / $\downarrow$ . The central frequency can be selected between "63Hz" and "250Hz". The bandwidth can be selected between "2.0" and "9.8" (0.2 intervals). Attenuation can be selected between "0.0dB" and "12.0dB" (0.5dB intervals).

Setting Item	Default Value	Setting Details
Subwoofer	0.0dB	<p>Control the effect of standing waves for the subwoofer.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. After selecting "Filter" with <math>\uparrow</math> / <math>\downarrow</math>, select the filter to be adjusted from "1" to "3" with <math>\leftarrow</math> / <math>\rightarrow</math> and press ENTER.</li> <li>2. After selecting the central frequency with <math>\leftarrow</math> / <math>\rightarrow</math>, adjust the bandwidth with <math>\ll</math> / <math>\gg</math>, then adjust the attenuation with <math>\uparrow</math> / <math>\downarrow</math>. The central frequency can be selected between "63Hz" and "250Hz". The bandwidth can be selected between "2.0" and "9.8" (0.2 intervals). Attenuation can be selected between "0.0dB" and "12.0dB" (0.5dB intervals).</li> </ol>

## ■ EQ Adjust

If you perform Full Auto MCACC then settings are automatic, but you can also adjust the output volume of the range of each connected speaker to suit your own preferences. You can adjust the volume of the different sound ranges for each of the speakers. You can select up to 4 bands for the Subwoofer and 9 bands for all other speakers. If the overall volume balance changes by adjusting the volume of each frequency, you can readjust the balance in "Trim".

Setting Item	Default Value	Setting Details
Front Left	0.0 dB	<p>After selecting the speaker frequency from between "63 Hz" and "16 kHz" with the cursors <math>\leftarrow</math> / <math>\rightarrow</math>, adjust the volume of that frequency between "-12.0 dB" and "+12.0 dB" (in 0.5 dB intervals) with <math>\uparrow</math> / <math>\downarrow</math>. To readjust the overall volume balance with "Trim", select "Trim" in <math>\leftarrow</math> / <math>\rightarrow</math>, and use <math>\uparrow</math> / <math>\downarrow</math> to adjust the volume.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If "OVER!" is displayed during adjustment, the volume of the frequency band or another frequency band is too high, so reduce the volume of the frequency bands until the display disappears.</li> <li>• "63 Hz" can only be selected when this speaker is set to "Large" in "System Setup" - "Speaker" - "Crossover".</li> </ul>

Setting Item	Default Value	Setting Details
Center	0.0 dB	<p>After selecting the speaker frequency from between "63 Hz" and "16 kHz" with the cursors <math>\leftarrow</math> / <math>\rightarrow</math>, adjust the volume of that frequency between "-12.0 dB" and "+12.0 dB" (in 0.5 dB intervals) with <math>\uparrow</math> / <math>\downarrow</math>. To readjust the overall volume balance with "Trim", select "Trim" in <math>\leftarrow</math> / <math>\rightarrow</math>, and use <math>\uparrow</math> / <math>\downarrow</math> to adjust the volume.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If "OVER!" is displayed during adjustment, the volume of the frequency band or another frequency band is too high, so reduce the volume of the frequency bands until the display disappears.</li> <li>• "63 Hz" can only be selected when this speaker is set to "Large" in "System Setup" - "Speaker" - "Crossover".</li> <li>• If an item cannot be selected even though connection is correct, check that the settings in "System Setup" - "Speaker" - "Configuration" - "Speaker Channels" matches the number of connected channels.</li> </ul>
Front Right	0.0 dB	<p>After selecting the speaker frequency from between "63 Hz" and "16 kHz" with the cursors <math>\leftarrow</math> / <math>\rightarrow</math>, adjust the volume of that frequency between "-12.0 dB" and "+12.0 dB" (in 0.5 dB intervals) with <math>\uparrow</math> / <math>\downarrow</math>. To readjust the overall volume balance with "Trim", select "Trim" in <math>\leftarrow</math> / <math>\rightarrow</math>, and use <math>\uparrow</math> / <math>\downarrow</math> to adjust the volume.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If "OVER!" is displayed during adjustment, the volume of the frequency band or another frequency band is too high, so reduce the volume of the frequency bands until the display disappears.</li> <li>• "63 Hz" can only be selected when this speaker is set to "Large" in "System Setup" - "Speaker" - "Crossover".</li> </ul>

Setting Item	Default Value	Setting Details
Height 1 Left	0.0 dB	<p>After selecting the speaker frequency from between "63 Hz" and "16 kHz" with the cursors ◀ / ▶, adjust the volume of that frequency between "-12.0 dB" and "+12.0 dB" (in 0.5 dB intervals) with ▲ / ▼. To readjust the overall volume balance with "Trim", select "Trim" in ◀ / ▶, and use ▲ / ▼ to adjust the volume.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If "OVER!" is displayed during adjustment, the volume of the frequency band or another frequency band is too high, so reduce the volume of the frequency bands until the display disappears.</li> <li>• "63 Hz" can only be selected when this speaker is set to "Large" in "System Setup" - "Speaker" - "Crossover".</li> <li>• If an item cannot be selected even though connection is correct, check that the settings in "System Setup" - "Speaker" - "Configuration" - "Speaker Channels" matches the number of connected channels.</li> </ul>

Setting Item	Default Value	Setting Details
Height 1 Right	0.0 dB	<p>After selecting the speaker frequency from between "63 Hz" and "16 kHz" with the cursors ◀ / ▶, adjust the volume of that frequency between "-12.0 dB" and "+12.0 dB" (in 0.5 dB intervals) with ▲ / ▼. To readjust the overall volume balance with "Trim", select "Trim" in ◀ / ▶, and use ▲ / ▼ to adjust the volume.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If "OVER!" is displayed during adjustment, the volume of the frequency band or another frequency band is too high, so reduce the volume of the frequency bands until the display disappears.</li> <li>• "63 Hz" can only be selected when this speaker is set to "Large" in "System Setup" - "Speaker" - "Crossover".</li> <li>• If an item cannot be selected even though connection is correct, check that the settings in "System Setup" - "Speaker" - "Configuration" - "Speaker Channels" matches the number of connected channels.</li> </ul>

Setting Item	Default Value	Setting Details
Height 2 Left	0.0 dB	<p>After selecting the speaker frequency from between "63 Hz" and "16 kHz" with the cursors ◀ / ▶, adjust the volume of that frequency between "-12.0 dB" and "+12.0 dB" (in 0.5 dB intervals) with ▲ / ▼. To readjust the overall volume balance with "Trim", select "Trim" in ◀ / ▶, and use ▲ / ▼ to adjust the volume.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If "OVER!" is displayed during adjustment, the volume of the frequency band or another frequency band is too high, so reduce the volume of the frequency bands until the display disappears.</li> <li>• "63 Hz" can only be selected when this speaker is set to "Large" in "System Setup" - "Speaker" - "Crossover".</li> <li>• If an item cannot be selected even though connection is correct, check that the settings in "System Setup" - "Speaker" - "Configuration" - "Speaker Channels" matches the number of connected channels.</li> </ul>

Setting Item	Default Value	Setting Details
Height 2 Right	0.0 dB	<p>After selecting the speaker frequency from between "63 Hz" and "16 kHz" with the cursors ◀ / ▶, adjust the volume of that frequency between "-12.0 dB" and "+12.0 dB" (in 0.5 dB intervals) with ▲ / ▼. To readjust the overall volume balance with "Trim", select "Trim" in ◀ / ▶, and use ▲ / ▼ to adjust the volume.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If "OVER!" is displayed during adjustment, the volume of the frequency band or another frequency band is too high, so reduce the volume of the frequency bands until the display disappears.</li> <li>• "63 Hz" can only be selected when this speaker is set to "Large" in "System Setup" - "Speaker" - "Crossover".</li> <li>• If an item cannot be selected even though connection is correct, check that the settings in "System Setup" - "Speaker" - "Configuration" - "Speaker Channels" matches the number of connected channels.</li> </ul>

Setting Item	Default Value	Setting Details
Surround Right	0.0 dB	<p>After selecting the speaker frequency from between "63 Hz" and "16 kHz" with the cursors ◀ / ▶, adjust the volume of that frequency between "-12.0 dB" and "+12.0 dB" (in 0.5 dB intervals) with ▲ / ▼. To readjust the overall volume balance with "Trim", select "Trim" in ◀ / ▶, and use ▲ / ▼ to adjust the volume.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If "OVER!" is displayed during adjustment, the volume of the frequency band or another frequency band is too high, so reduce the volume of the frequency bands until the display disappears.</li> <li>• "63 Hz" can only be selected when this speaker is set to "Large" in "System Setup" - "Speaker" - "Crossover".</li> <li>• If an item cannot be selected even though connection is correct, check that the settings in "System Setup" - "Speaker" - "Configuration" - "Speaker Channels" matches the number of connected channels.</li> </ul>

Setting Item	Default Value	Setting Details
Surr Back Right	0.0 dB	<p>After selecting the speaker frequency from between "63 Hz" and "16 kHz" with the cursors ◀ / ▶, adjust the volume of that frequency between "-12.0 dB" and "+12.0 dB" (in 0.5 dB intervals) with ▲ / ▼. To readjust the overall volume balance with "Trim", select "Trim" in ◀ / ▶, and use ▲ / ▼ to adjust the volume.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If "OVER!" is displayed during adjustment, the volume of the frequency band or another frequency band is too high, so reduce the volume of the frequency bands until the display disappears.</li> <li>• "63 Hz" can only be selected when this speaker is set to "Large" in "System Setup" - "Speaker" - "Crossover".</li> <li>• If an item cannot be selected even though connection is correct, check that the settings in "System Setup" - "Speaker" - "Configuration" - "Speaker Channels" matches the number of connected channels.</li> </ul>

Setting Item	Default Value	Setting Details
Surr Back Left	0.0 dB	<p>After selecting the speaker frequency from between "63 Hz" and "16 kHz" with the cursors ◀ / ▶, adjust the volume of that frequency between "-12.0 dB" and "+12.0 dB" (in 0.5 dB intervals) with ▲ / ▼. To readjust the overall volume balance with "Trim", select "Trim" in ◀ / ▶, and use ▲ / ▼ to adjust the volume.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If "OVER!" is displayed during adjustment, the volume of the frequency band or another frequency band is too high, so reduce the volume of the frequency bands until the display disappears.</li> <li>• "63 Hz" can only be selected when this speaker is set to "Large" in "System Setup" - "Speaker" - "Crossover".</li> <li>• If an item cannot be selected even though connection is correct, check that the settings in "System Setup" - "Speaker" - "Configuration" - "Speaker Channels" matches the number of connected channels.</li> </ul>

Setting Item	Default Value	Setting Details
Surround Left	0.0 dB	<p>After selecting the speaker frequency from between "63 Hz" and "16 kHz" with the cursors ◀ / ▶, adjust the volume of that frequency between "-12.0 dB" and "+12.0 dB" (in 0.5 dB intervals) with ▲ / ▼. To readjust the overall volume balance with "Trim", select "Trim" in ◀ / ▶, and use ▲ / ▼ to adjust the volume.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If "OVER!" is displayed during adjustment, the volume of the frequency band or another frequency band is too high, so reduce the volume of the frequency bands until the display disappears.</li> <li>• "63 Hz" can only be selected when this speaker is set to "Large" in "System Setup" - "Speaker" - "Crossover".</li> <li>• If an item cannot be selected even though connection is correct, check that the settings in "System Setup" - "Speaker" - "Configuration" - "Speaker Channels" matches the number of connected channels.</li> </ul>
Subwoofer 1	0.0 dB	<p>After selecting the speaker frequency from between "31 Hz" and "250 Hz" with the cursors ◀ / ▶, adjust the volume of that frequency between "-12.0 dB" and "+12.0 dB" (0.5dB intervals) with ▲ / ▼. To readjust the overall volume balance with "Trim", select "Trim" in ◀ / ▶, and use ▲ / ▼ to adjust the volume.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If "OVER!" is displayed during adjustment, the volume of the frequency band or another frequency band is too high, so reduce the volume of the frequency bands until the display disappears.</li> <li>• This cannot be selected if "No" is set in "System Setup" - "Speaker" - "Configuration" - "Subwoofer".</li> </ul>



Setting Item	Default Value	Setting Details
Subwoofer 2	0.0 dB	<p>After selecting the speaker frequency from between "31 Hz" and "250 Hz" with the cursors ◀ / ▶, adjust the volume of that frequency between "-12.0 dB" and "+12.0 dB" (0.5dB intervals) with ▲ / ▼. To readjust the overall volume balance with "Trim", select "Trim" in ◀ / ▶, and use ▲ / ▼ to adjust the volume.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If "OVER!" is displayed during adjustment, the volume of the frequency band or another frequency band is too high, so reduce the volume of the frequency bands until the display disappears.</li> <li>• This cannot be selected if "No" or "1ch" is set in "System Setup" - "Speaker" - "Configuration" - "Subwoofer".</li> </ul>

- The result may not be as expected depending on the input source and listening mode setting.

## EQ Professional

You can automatically measure and calibrate the reverberation characteristics (how the sound echoes) of the room. First measure the reverberations with "Reverb Measurement", then check the results with "Reverb View". Specify the calibrated time position in "Advanced EQ Setup" based on the measured results to automatically calibrate the reverberation characteristics.

### ■ Reverb Measurement

Measure the reverberation characteristics of the room. After making the following settings, place the speaker setup microphone in the listening position, and connect to the SETUP MIC jack on the main unit. Press ENTER and follow the on screen instructions.

Setting Item	Default Value	Setting Details
Reverb Measure	without EQ	<p>Select the method for measuring the reverberation characteristics.</p> <p>"without EQ": MCACC is used to measure the reverberation characteristics of the room without any adjustments made to the equalizer of the speakers.</p> <p>"with EQ": Measures the reverberation characteristics of the room using the adjustments to the equalizer of the speakers saved in the MCACC Memory.</p>

### ■ Reverb View

The results of the measurements of the reverberation characteristics are shown in graphs for each speaker and frequency. If there is no reverberation, the graph stays horizontal, but if there is reverberation the graph rises to the right. If the "Symmetry" calibration type has been selected and Full Auto MCACC was performed, predicted values for the reverberation characteristics after calibration are also shown.

## ■ Advanced EQ Setup

Reverberation characteristics are automatically calibrated according to the settings made. After making the following settings, place the speaker setup microphone in the listening position, and connect to the SETUP MIC jack on the main unit. Press ENTER and follow the on screen instructions.

Setting Item	Default Value	Setting Details
Time Position	30 - 50 msec	Specify the calibrated time position in the range between "0 - 20 msec" and "60 - 80 msec" (10 msec intervals). If the reverberation characteristics differ for each frequency or each channel in the Reverb View graph, we recommend selecting "30 - 50 msec". If the overall reverberation characteristics are similar, we recommend selecting "60 - 80 msec".
EQ Type	Symmetry	Select the calibration type. "Symmetry": Speakers that make one set as a left and right pair have their frequency characteristics calibrated flatly. Speakers not in pairs, such as the center speaker, are adjusted individually. Select when you want to give weight to phase characteristics for calibration. "All Channel Adjust": Flatly calibrates individually the frequency characteristics of all speakers. Select when you want to give weight to frequency characteristics for calibration. "Front Align": Calibrates speakers other than the front speakers so their characteristics match those of the front speakers (front speakers are not calibrated). Select when you want to give weight to characteristics of the front speakers for calibration.
Standing Wave Multi Position	No	When you select "2" to "9", standing wave calibration can be performed at multiple listening positions along with the main listening position. If there is only one listening position, select "No". • If you select "2" to "9", calibration is first performed for the locations other than the main position, then the main position is calibrated last.

## ■ Precision Distance

With the distance of the front left speaker from the listening position as the standard, adjust the position of each speaker with a precision up to the closest 1 cm. Adjust the distance in order starting at the front right speaker. Test tone output alternates between the selected speaker and the speaker that is used as its benchmark. First setup the speaker setup microphone in the listening position and connect it to the SETUP MIC jack on the main unit, then select this setting.

Setting Item	Default Value	Setting Details
Front Right	-	Move the speakers back and forth about a centimeter at a time in relation to the speaker setup microphone so that "Score" becomes "10.0". If the number does not become "10.0", put the speaker in the position where the maximum value is achieved. • Do not move the front left speaker, upon which calibration is based, during the adjustments.
Center	-	Move the speakers back and forth about a centimeter at a time in relation to the speaker setup microphone so that "Score" becomes "10.0". If the number does not become "10.0", put the speaker in the position where the maximum value is achieved. • Do not move the front left speaker, upon which calibration is based, during the adjustments.
Height 1 Left	-	Move the speakers back and forth about a centimeter at a time in relation to the speaker setup microphone so that "Score" becomes "10.0". If the number does not become "10.0", put the speaker in the position where the maximum value is achieved. • Do not move the front left speaker, upon which calibration is based, during the adjustments.
Height 1 Right	-	Move the speakers back and forth about a centimeter at a time in relation to the speaker setup microphone so that "Score" becomes "10.0". If the number does not become "10.0", put the speaker in the position where the maximum value is achieved. • Do not move the height 1 left speaker, upon which calibration is based, during the adjustments.

Setting Item	Default Value	Setting Details
Height 2 Left	-	Move the speakers back and forth about a centimeter at a time in relation to the speaker setup microphone so that "Score" becomes "10.0". If the number does not become "10.0", put the speaker in the position where the maximum value is achieved. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Do not move the front left speaker, upon which calibration is based, during the adjustments.</li> </ul>
Height 2 Right	-	Move the speakers back and forth about a centimeter at a time in relation to the speaker setup microphone so that "Score" becomes "10.0". If the number does not become "10.0", put the speaker in the position where the maximum value is achieved. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Do not move the front right speaker, upon which calibration is based, during the adjustments.</li> </ul>
Surround Left	-	Move the speakers back and forth about a centimeter at a time in relation to the speaker setup microphone so that "Score" becomes "10.0". If the number does not become "10.0", put the speaker in the position where the maximum value is achieved. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Do not move the front left speaker, upon which calibration is based, during the adjustments.</li> </ul>
Surround Right	-	Move the speakers back and forth about a centimeter at a time in relation to the speaker setup microphone so that "Score" becomes "10.0". If the number does not become "10.0", put the speaker in the position where the maximum value is achieved. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Do not move the front right speaker, upon which calibration is based, during the adjustments.</li> </ul>
Surr Back Left	-	Move the speakers back and forth about a centimeter at a time in relation to the speaker setup microphone so that "Score" becomes "10.0". If the number does not become "10.0", put the speaker in the position where the maximum value is achieved. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Do not move the surround left speaker, upon which calibration is based, during the adjustments.</li> </ul>

Setting Item	Default Value	Setting Details
Surr Back Right	-	Move the speakers back and forth about a centimeter at a time in relation to the speaker setup microphone so that "Score" becomes "10.0". If the number does not become "10.0", put the speaker in the position where the maximum value is achieved. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Do not move the surround right speaker, upon which calibration is based, during the adjustments.</li> </ul>

## MCACC Data Check

You can check the number of speaker channels connected and the content and values you have set for each of the speaker settings. Depending on the item, you can check by changing the MCACC memory or Channel with the cursors.

### ■ Speaker Setting

You can check the number of speaker channels connected and the large and small settings you have set for the low range reproduction capabilities for each of the speakers.

### ■ Channel Level

You can check the output level settings for each of the speakers.

### ■ Speaker Distance

You can check the distance from each speaker to the listening position.

### ■ Standing Wave

You can check the settings of the standing wave control filter.

### ■ Acoustic Calibration EQ

You can check the calibration values for the frequency characteristics of each speaker that were set in "Manual MCACC".

### ■ Group Delay

You can check the group delay of speakers before and after calibration.

## Data Management

You can change the name of the MCACC Memory, or copy or delete the settings you have made.

### ■ Memory Rename

Change the name of the MCACC Memory.

Setting Item	Default Value	Setting Details
M1	Memory 1	You can select a name for the memory from "Memory 1", "Symmetry", "All Adj", "F.Align", "Movie", "Music", "Game", "Party", "Sofa", and "Seat".
M2	Memory 2	You can select a name for the memory from "Memory 2", "Symmetry", "All Adj", "F.Align", "Movie", "Music", "Game", "Party", "Sofa", and "Seat".
M3	Memory 3	You can select a name for the memory from "Memory 3", "Symmetry", "All Adj", "F.Align", "Movie", "Music", "Game", "Party", "Sofa", and "Seat".

### ■ MCACC Memory Copy

Copy the speaker settings from a Memory to another Memory. After making the following settings, press ENTER and follow the on screen instructions.

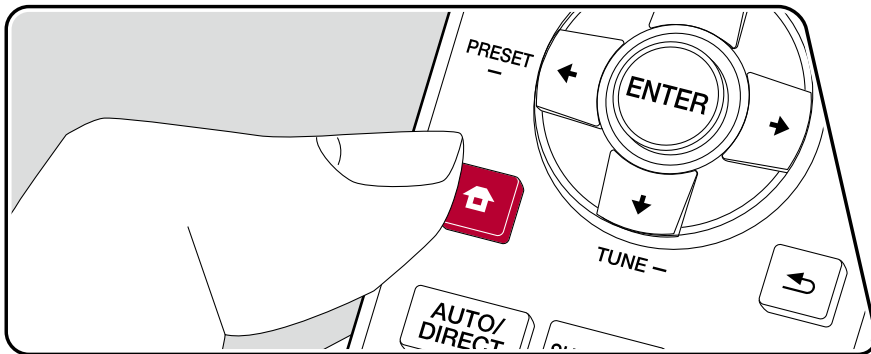
Setting Item	Default Value	Setting Details
Copy	All Data	Select the content you want to copy. "All Data": Copy all settings. "Level & Distance": Copy only the output level and distance from the listening position for each speaker.
Copy from	M1.Memory 1	Select the Memory you want to copy.
Copy to	M1.Memory 1	Select the Memory you want to copy to.

## ■ MCACC Memory Clear


Delete the speaker settings from a Memory. After selecting the memory, press ENTER and follow the on screen instructions.

## Network/Bluetooth





### Menu operations







Make settings related to network connections and BLUETOOTH.

Use the on-screen displays (OSD) that appear on the TV to make the settings. Press  on the remote controller to display the Home screen, select Network/Bluetooth with the cursors on the remote controller, then press ENTER.



Select the item with the cursor  /  /  /  buttons of the remote controller and press ENTER to confirm your selection.

Use the cursors  /  to change the default values.

- To return to the previous screen, press .
- To exit the settings, press .

## Network

- When LAN is configured with a DHCP, set "DHCP" to "Enable" to configure the setting automatically. ("Enable" is set by default.) To assign fixed IP addresses to each components, you must set "DHCP" to "Disable" and assign an address to this unit in "IP Address" as well as set information related to your LAN, such as Subnet Mask and Gateway.

Setting Item	Default Value	Setting Details
Wi-Fi	Off(Wired)	Connect the unit to network via wireless LAN router. "On": Wireless LAN connection "Off (Wired)": Wired LAN connection • When switching between "On" and "Off(Wired)", stop the Network service. Also, when group playback is in process, cancel the group playback once, and then switch the setting.
Wi-Fi Setup	-	You can configure wireless LAN settings by pressing ENTER when "Start" is displayed.
Wi-Fi Status	-	The information of the connected access point will be displayed. "SSID": SSID of the connected access point. "Signal": Signal strength of the connected access point. "Status": Status of the connected access point.
MAC Address	-	This is the MAC address of this unit. This value is specific to the component and cannot be changed.
DHCP	Enable	"Enable": Auto configuration by DHCP "Disable": Manual configuration without DHCP • If selecting "Disable", you must set "IP Address", "Subnet Mask", "Gateway", and "DNS Server" manually.
IP Address	0.0.0.0	Displays/Sets the IP address.
Subnet Mask	0.0.0.0	Displays/Sets the subnet mask.
Gateway	0.0.0.0	Displays/Sets the gateway.
DNS Server	0.0.0.0	Displays/Sets the primary DNS server.

Setting Item	Default Value	Setting Details
Proxy URL	-	Displays/Sets the proxy server URL.
Proxy Port	8080	Displays/Sets the proxy server port number when you enter "Proxy URL".
Friendly Name	Pioneer SC-LX904 XXXXXX	Change the device name for this unit which is shown on other devices connected to the network to an easily recognized name. 1. Press ENTER to display the Edit screen. 2. Select a character or symbol with the cursors and press ENTER. Repeat it to input 31 or less characters. "A/a": Switches between upper and lower cases. (Pressing MODE on the remote controller also toggles between upper and lower cases.) "←" "→": Moves the cursor in the arrow direction. "⌫": Removes a character on the left of the cursor. "␣": Enters a space. • Pressing CLEAR on the remote controller will remove all the input characters. 3. After inputting, select "OK" with the cursors and press ENTER. The input name will be saved.

Setting Item	Default Value	Setting Details
AirPlay Device Name	Pioneer SC-LX904 XXXXXX	<p>Change the model name of this unit which is displayed on the AirPlay-connected device to an easily recognized name.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press ENTER to display the Edit screen.</li> <li>2. Select a character or symbol with the cursors and press ENTER. Repeat it to input 31 or less characters. "A/a": Switches between upper and lower cases. (Pressing MODE on the remote controller also toggles between upper and lower cases.) "←" "→": Moves the cursor in the arrow direction. "⌫": Removes a character on the left of the cursor. "␣": Enters a space. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Pressing CLEAR on the remote controller will remove all the input characters.</li> </ul> </li> <li>3. After inputting, select "OK" with the cursors and press ENTER. The input name will be saved. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• This function cannot be used when registering this unit to Home App.</li> </ul> </li> </ol>

Setting Item	Default Value	Setting Details
AirPlay Password		<p>You can set a password of up to 31 characters so that only registered users can use AirPlay®.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press ENTER to display the Edit screen.</li> <li>2. Select a character or symbol with the cursors and press ENTER. Repeat it to input 31 or less characters. "A/a": Switches between upper and lower cases. (Pressing MODE on the remote controller also toggles between upper and lower cases.) "←" "→": Moves the cursor in the arrow direction. "⌫": Removes a character on the left of the cursor. "␣": Enters a space. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• To select whether to mask the password with "*" or display it in plain text, press +Fav on the remote controller.</li> <li>• Pressing CLEAR on the remote controller will remove all the input characters.</li> </ul> </li> <li>3. After inputting, select "OK" with the cursors and press ENTER. The input password will be saved. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• This function cannot be used when registering this unit to Home App.</li> </ul> </li> </ol>
Privacy Statement	Not Accepted	<p>When using a network service that requires a login name, email address, password, etc., you need to agree to the Privacy Statement of our company.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• This setting can be made after confirming the Privacy Statement. When you select "Privacy Statement" and press ENTER, the Privacy Statement is displayed.</li> <li>• When "Not Accepted" is selected, you will log out from the network service you have logged in.</li> </ul>
Network Check	-	<p>You can check the network connection. Press ENTER when "Start" is displayed.</p>

- Wait for a while if "Network" cannot be selected. It will appear when the network feature is started.



## Bluetooth

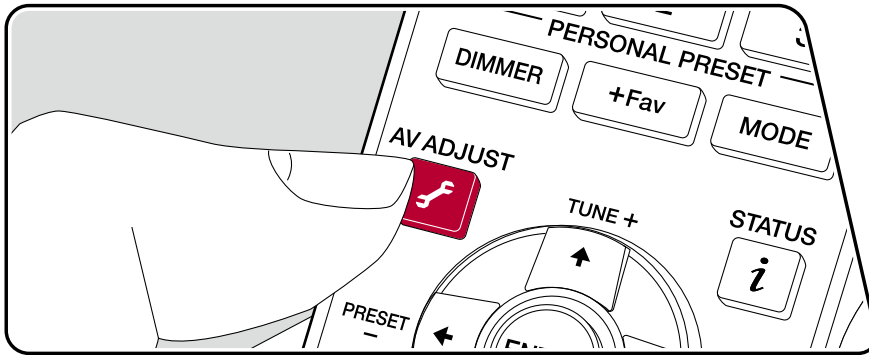
Setting Item	Default Value	Setting Details
Bluetooth	On	Select whether or not to use the BLUETOOTH function. "On": Enables connection with a BLUETOOTH wireless technology enabled device by using the BLUETOOTH function. Select "On" also when making various BLUETOOTH settings. "Off": When not using the BLUETOOTH function
Auto Input Change	On	When a BLUETOOTH-enabled device is played while it is connected to the unit, the input of the unit can be automatically switched to "BLUETOOTH". "On": The input is automatically set to "BLUETOOTH" responding to the playback operation of the BLUETOOTH-enabled device. "Off": The function is disabled. • If the input is not switched automatically, set to "Off" and change the input manually.
Auto Reconnect	On	This function automatically reconnects to the BLUETOOTH wireless technology enabled device connected last when you change the input to "BLUETOOTH". "On": When this function is used "Off": When this function is not used • This may not work with some BLUETOOTH wireless technology enabled devices.

Setting Item	Default Value	Setting Details
Pairing Information	-	You can initialize the pairing information saved on this unit. Pressing ENTER when "Clear" is displayed initializes the pairing information stored in this unit. • This function does not initialize the pairing information on the BLUETOOTH wireless technology enabled device. When pairing the unit again with the device, be sure to clear the pairing information on the BLUETOOTH wireless technology enabled device in advance. For information on how to clear the pairing information, refer to the BLUETOOTH wireless technology enabled device's instruction manual.
Device	-	Displays the name of the BLUETOOTH wireless technology enabled device connected to the unit. • The name is not displayed when "Status" is "Ready" and "Pairing".
Status	-	Displays the status of the BLUETOOTH wireless technology enabled device connected to the unit. "Ready": Not paired "Pairing": Paired "Connected": Successfully connected

- Wait for a while if "Bluetooth" cannot be selected. It will appear when the BLUETOOTH function is started up.

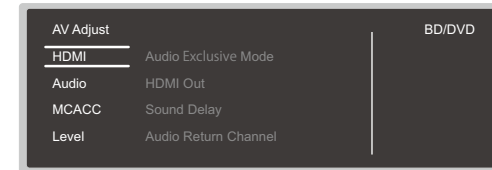
## AV Adjust

### Menu operations



You can quickly adjust the settings you frequently use, such as tone adjustments, etc.

You can make the settings on the TV screen while playing something. Press on the remote controller to display the AV Adjust menu. Note that there is no display on the TV screen when the input selector is "CD", "TV", "PHONO", "FM", or "AM", so follow the main unit's display while doing the operations.



Select the item with the cursor / buttons of the remote controller and press ENTER to confirm your selection.

Use the cursors to change the settings.

- To return to the previous screen, press .
- To exit the settings, press .

#### ■ HDMI

**Audio Exclusive Mode:** You can make the HDMI IN 2 jack exclusively for audio to improve sound quality. Note that when this is set to on, the output of video signals will stop and there will be no display on the TV screen.

- The display will appear on the TV screen when you press , but the video signal out is stopped again when you press again.

**HDMI Out:** Select the HDMI OUT jack to output video signals from "MAIN", "SUB", and "MAIN+SUB".

**Sound Delay:** If the video is behind the audio, you can delay the audio to offset the gap. Different settings can be set for each input selector.

- This has no effect if the listening mode is Pure Direct and the input signal is

analog or DSD.

**Audio Return Channel:** You can enjoy the sound of the HDMI-connected ARC-compatible TV through the speakers connected to the unit. Select "On" when listening to the audio of TV using the speakers of this unit. Select "Off" when the ARC function is not used.

## ■ Audio

**Sound Retriever:** Improve the quality of the compressed audio. Playback sound of lossy compressed files such as MP3 will be improved. The setting can be separately set to each input selector. The setting is effective in the signals of 48 kHz or less. The setting is not effective in the bitstream signals.

- It cannot be set if the listening mode is Direct or Pure Direct.

**Midnight:** Make small sounds easily heard. It is useful when you need to reduce the volume while watching a movie late night. You can enjoy the effect only when playing Dolby series and DTS series input signals.

- It cannot be set if the listening mode is Direct or Pure Direct.
- The setting cannot be used in the following cases.
  - If "Loudness Management" is set to "Off" when playing Dolby Digital Plus or Dolby TrueHD
  - When the input signal is DTS:X and "Dialog Control" is other than 0 dB

**Stereo Assign:** When the listening mode is set to "Stereo", the audio output destination can be set to "Surround", "Surround Back", "Height 1" or "Height 2" in addition to the normal right and left channels ("Front") of front speakers.

- The setting cannot be used in the following cases.
  - When a listening mode other than "Stereo" is set
  - When using Speaker B
- It is not possible to select speakers that are not set at "System Setup" - "Speaker" - "Configuration" on the Home screen.

**Zone B:** Select a method of outputting audio to ZONE B from among "Off", "On(A+B)" and "On(B)".

- In the following cases, "Zone B" cannot be selected.
  - When ZONE 2 is On
  - When "System Setup" - "Speaker" - "Configuration" - "Zone 2 Preout" on the Home screen is set to "Zone 2" (→[p159](#))

**Speakers:** When Speaker B are used, you switch output between Speaker A/B/A+B.

**Auto Phase Control+:** The low frequencies are recorded with a delay for some discs not made according to phase control standards. This function corrects the phase shift when playing such discs. When "Auto" is selected, in addition to the low frequency delay, the polarity and correlation are also detected and corrected.

- It cannot be set if the listening mode is Pure Direct.

**Dialog Lifted Up :** By adjusting the localization of the center elements, you can make it easier to hear dialog in movies or give more prominence to the vocals in music. If you are using front high speakers, you can select from "1" (low) to "4" (high).

- The function cannot be set in the following cases.
  - When the Front High speakers are not enabled
  - When the "Adjusting DIALOG" (→[p129](#)) function is being used
  - When "Dialog Control" (→[p164](#)) has been set
  - When the listening mode is Direct or Pure Direct

**Audio Scaler :** By selecting "Auto", "Hi-bit 32", "Upsampling", and "Digital Filter" are each automatically set to the optimum values so that you get the high-quality playback of music files and CDs. The setting can be separately set to each input selector.

Select "Manual" if you want to manually adjust "Hi-bit 32", "Upsampling", and "Digital Filter".

**Hi-bit 32 :** By expanding the dynamic range of digital audio signal sources such as CDs, DVDs, and BDs, it is possible to achieve a smoother and more refined sound. The setting can be separately set to each input selector. This can be set when the sampling frequency is 44.1 kHz or more.

- This cannot be set if "Auto" is selected for "Audio Scaler".

**Upsampling :** By increasing the sampling frequency of PCM 2 channel audio by a factor of 2 or 4, you can achieve high-quality sound reproduction. The setting can be separately set to each input selector. This can be set when the sampling frequency is between 44.1 kHz and 96 kHz. This function works in the Direct, Pure Direct, and Stereo listening modes.

- This cannot be set if "Auto" is selected for "Audio Scaler".

**Digital Filter :** You can switch the type of digital filter in the AUDIO DAC

(digital analog converter). You can choose "Slow" (gives the sound a soft and fluid feel), "Sharp" (gives the sound more structure and firmer feel), or "Short" (gives the sound a feeling of a quick start and moving forward). The setting can be separately set to each input selector. This can be set when the sampling frequency is 44.1 kHz or more.

- This cannot be set if "Auto" is selected for "Audio Scalar".

**Reflex Optimizer :** Enhance the reflection effect of Dolby enabled speakers from the ceiling.

- This setting can be selected when "System Setup" - "Speaker" - "Configuration" - "Height 1 Speaker"/"Height 2 Speaker" is set to "Dolby Speaker".
- It cannot be set if the listening mode is Pure Direct.

## ■ MCACC

**MCACC EQ:** Enable or disable the equalizer function that corrects for distortion caused by the acoustic environment of the room.

- It cannot be set if the listening mode is Pure Direct.

**Phase Control:** Correct phase disturbance in the low range to enhance the bass. This enables you to achieve powerful bass reproduction that is faithful to the original sound.

- It cannot be set if the listening mode is Pure Direct.

### When "Phase Control" is set to "Full Band":

Along with the Phase Control function, the Full Band Phase Control function is also enabled. The Full Band Phase Control function corrects for group delay (the difference between phase and timing) between speakers when speaker units are divided into multiple parts, such as tweeter and woofer sections, and furthermore it lines up the phases of the connected speakers so the unit can achieve more accurate reproduction across the full range (full band) and across all channels. Furthermore, if the "Front Align" calibration type has been selected and Full Auto MCACC was performed, the phases of speakers other than the front speakers are corrected to match the frequency phase characteristics of the front speakers.

- "Full Band" cannot be selected if Full Auto MCACC has not been performed.

**MCACC Memory :** From MCACC Memory 1 to 3 where speaker settings calibrated with "Full Auto MCACC" or "Manual MCACC" are saved, select which Memory to use.

**Theater Filter:** Adjust the soundtrack that was processed to enhance its high pitch range, in order to make it suitable for home theater.

- It cannot be set if the listening mode is Direct or Pure Direct.

**Standing Wave:** Setting this "On" will control the effect of the standing wave generated by the sound wave reflected by wall or similar interfering with the original sound wave.

- It cannot be set if the listening mode is Pure Direct.

## ■ Level

**Front:** Adjust the speaker level of the front speaker while listening to the sound.

**Center:** Adjust the speaker level of the center speaker while listening to the sound.


**Subwoofer 1 / Subwoofer 2 :** Adjust the speaker level of the subwoofer while listening to the sound.

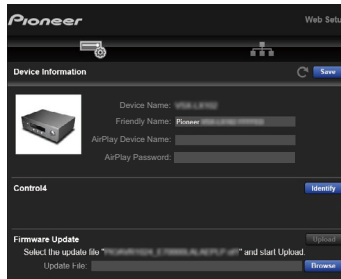
- If you set the unit to the standby mode, the adjustments you made will be restored to the previous statuses.

## Web Setup

### Menu operations

You can make the settings for the network function of this unit using an Internet browser on a PC, smartphone, etc.

1. Press  on the remote controller to display the Home screen.
2. Select "Network/Bluetooth" - "Network" with the cursors, then take a note of the IP address displayed in "IP Address".
3. Start the internet browser on your PC or smartphone and enter the IP address of the unit in the URL field.
4. Information for the unit (Web Setup screen) is displayed in the internet browser.



5. After changing the settings, select "Save" to save the settings.

#### Device Information

You can change the Friendly Name or AirPlay Device Name, set an AirPlay Password, etc.

Control4: Register this unit if you are using a Control4 system.

Firmware Update: Select the firmware file you have downloaded to your PC so you can update this unit.

#### Network Setting

Status: You can see information for the network such as the MAC address and IP

address of this unit.

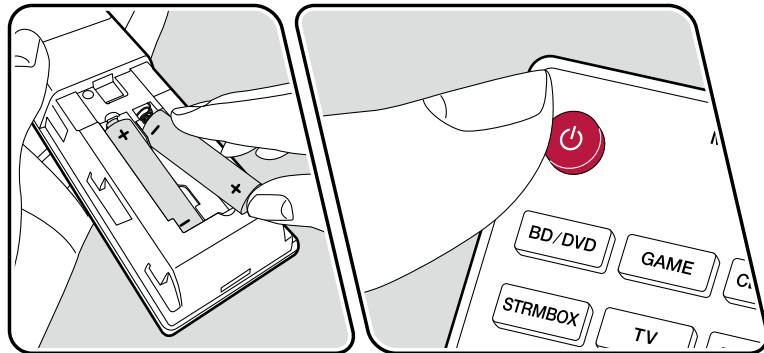
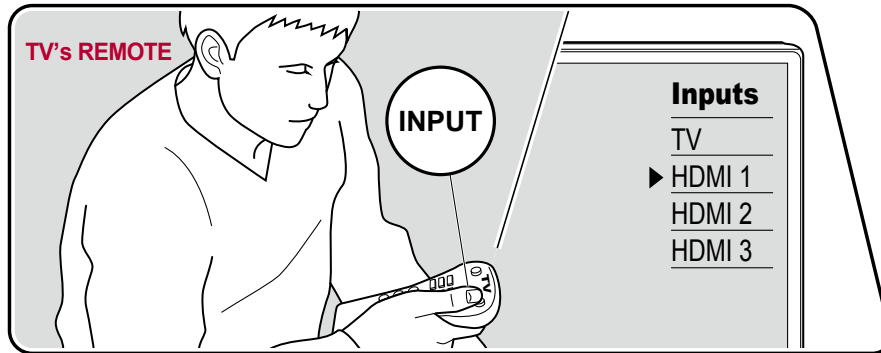
Network Connection: You can select a network connection method. If you select "Wireless", select an access point from "Wi-Fi Setup" to connect.

DHCP: You can change DHCP settings. If you select "Off", set "IP Address", "Subnet Mask", "Gateway" and "DNS Server" manually.

Proxy: Display and set the URL for the proxy server.

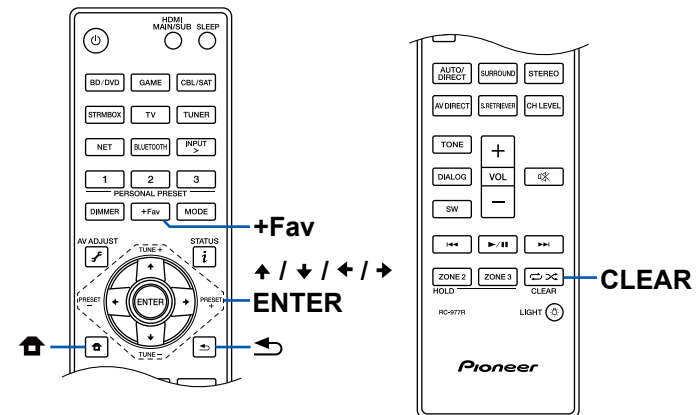
## Initial Setup with Auto Start-up Wizard

### Operations



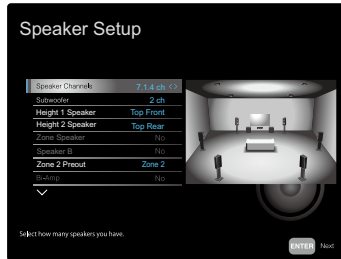
When you turn the unit on for the first time after purchase, the Initial Setup screen is automatically displayed on the TV to allow you to make settings required for startup using simple operations following on-screen guidance.

1. Switch the input of the TV to the input connected to the unit.
  2. Put batteries into the remote controller of this unit.
  3. Press **⏻** on the remote controller to turn the unit on.
  4. When the language selection screen is displayed on TV, select the language with the cursors **⬆** / **⬇** and press **ENTER**.
    - Select the item with the cursors of the remote controller, and press **ENTER** to confirm your selection. To return to the previous screen, press **⬅**.
    - If you have terminated the Initial Setup halfway, turn this unit to standby mode. Then turning the power on again can display the Initial Setup again.
- The Initial Setup appears on the screen each time the power is turned on unless the Initial Set up is completed or "Never Show Again" is selected on the first screen.
- To perform the Initial Setup again after the setting is completed, press **🏠**, select "System Setup" - "Miscellaneous" - "Initial Setup", and press **ENTER**.



## ■ 1. Speaker Setup

1. Select the connected speaker configuration, and press ENTER.  
Note that the image on the screen changes each time you select the number of channels in "Speaker Channels".



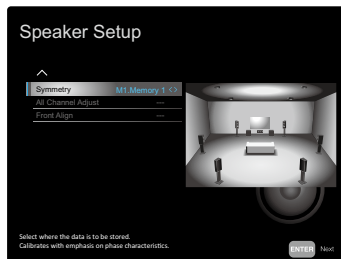
Set the items on the second page with the cursor buttons  $\uparrow$  /  $\downarrow$ . Here you can save the measurement results for each speaker measured in "2.Full Auto MCACC" in the following 3 calibration types. Use  $\leftarrow$  /  $\rightarrow$  to select the memory location you want to save the results of the measurement to by item. If multiple calibration types are selected, you can select the calibration type to use in "AV Adjust" - "MCACC" - "MCACC Memory". Note that you cannot select the same save destination for different calibration types.

**Symmetry (default value: M1.Memory 1):** Calibration that emphasizes phase characteristics

**All Channel Adjust (default value: ---):** Calibration that emphasizes frequency characteristics

**Front Align (default value: ---):** Calibration that emphasizes front speaker characteristics

Press ENTER when you have finished the settings.

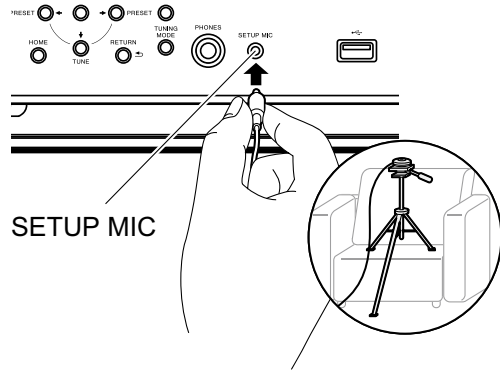


2. The speaker combination selected in step 1 is displayed. "Yes" is displayed for the selected speakers. If the setting is correct, press ENTER.
3. Select "Next" and press ENTER. Then a test tone is output from each speaker to confirm the connection. Selecting each speaker with the cursors  $\uparrow$  /  $\downarrow$  will output the test tone. Press ENTER after confirmation.
4. If there is no problem with the speaker connection, select "Next" and press ENTER. To return to "Speaker Setup", select "Back to Speaker Setup" and press ENTER.

## ■ 2. Full Auto MCACC

Place the supplied speaker setup microphone in the listening position, measure the test tones emitted by the speakers, then the unit automatically sets the optimum volume level for each speaker, the crossover frequencies, and the distance from the listening position. The influence of standing waves can be reduced to suit the listening environment, the reverberation characteristics can be measured to increase the precision of calibration, the speaker equalizers can be adjusted, and the difference in phase and timing between speakers and speaker units can be corrected. These settings and calibrations can be readjusted with Manual MCACC, and you can enable or disable them in AV Adjust.

- It takes between 3 and 12 minutes for calibration to be completed. Each speaker outputs the test tone at high volume during measurement, so be careful of your surroundings. Also, keep the room as quiet as possible during measurement.
  - If you connect a subwoofer, check the power and volume of the subwoofer. Set the subwoofer volume to more than half.
  - If the power of this unit suddenly turns off, the wires in the speaker cables have touched the rear panel or other wires, and the protection circuit is working. Twist the wires again securely, and make sure they do not stick out of the speaker terminals when connecting.
1. Place the supplied speaker setup microphone at the listening position, and connect it to the SETUP MIC jack on the main unit.



6. Disconnect the speaker setup microphone.

### ■ 3. Multi Zone Sound Check

Output test tones to ZONE 2 to enjoy audio in a separate room (ZONE 2) in addition to the main room.

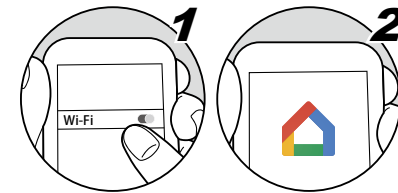
### ■ 4. ARC Setup

To connect with an ARC-compatible TV, select "Yes". The ARC setting on this unit turns on, and you can listen to the TV's audio through this unit.

- If you select "Yes", the HDMI CEC function is enabled and power consumption increases during standby.

### ■ 5. Network Connection

1. To make the network connection settings, select "Yes" and press ENTER. A confirmation screen asking you to agree to the privacy statement is displayed during network setting, so select "Accept" if you agree and then press ENTER.
2. Select the type of connection to the network. To use the Chromecast built-in function to connect, select "Yes" and press ENTER. The Google Home app is required to use the Chromecast built-in function. Download the Google Home app from Google Play or the App Store to your smart phone or tablet.
  - Google Home app can be used on the following operating systems. (As of August 2019)  
 Android™: Android 4.4 or later.  
 iOS: iOS 10.0 or later. Compatible with iPhone®, iPad®, and iPod touch®.



If you select "No", you can connect using either wired LAN or Wi-Fi.

**"Wired"**: Use a wired LAN to connect to a network.

**"Wireless"**: Wi-Fi connection using an access point such as a wireless LAN router.

- There are two methods for Wi-Fi connection.

**"Scan Networks"**: Search for an access point from this unit. Find out the

- When placing the speaker setup microphone on a tripod, refer to the illustration.
2. Confirm a test tone is output from the subwoofer and press ENTER.
  3. Press ENTER. Then, test tones are output from each speaker, and the connected speakers and the noise in the surrounding environment are automatically measured.
  4. The measurement results in step 3 are displayed. If there is no problem in the detection result of the speaker, select "Next" and press ENTER to output the test tone again to automatically set the settings such as volume level, crossover frequency, etc., to their optimum. (The test tone is automatically output when 10 seconds has elapsed without any operation.)
    - When an error message is displayed or when the connected speakers cannot be detected, perform re-measurement by selecting "Retry" and pressing ENTER.
    - When it cannot be resolved by performing the re-measurement, confirm if the speakers are connected correctly. If there is any problem with the speaker connection, perform the connection after disconnecting the power cord.
  5. Once the measurement is completed, it is possible to perform the measurement in 8 additional listening positions. To perform the measurement, select "Next" and press ENTER, then follow the instructions. To not perform the measurement, select "Finish (Calculate)" and press ENTER.
    - After each listening position is detected, select "Finish (Calculate)" and press ENTER to complete the detection process.



SSID of the access point beforehand.

**"Use iOS Device (iOS7 or later)":** Share the Wi-Fi settings of your iOS device with this unit.

- If you select "Scan Networks", there are another two types of connection methods. Check the following.

**"Enter Password":** Enter the password (or key) of the access point to connect.

**"Push Button":** If the access point is equipped with an automatic setting button, you can connect without entering the password.

- If the SSID of the access point is not displayed, select "Other..." with the cursor → on the SSID list screen, press ENTER, and then follow the on-screen instructions.

## Keyboard Input

To switch between upper and lower cases, select "A/a" on the screen, and press ENTER on the remote controller.

Press +Fav on the remote controller to select whether to mask the password with "\*" or display it in plain text. Pressing CLEAR on the remote controller will remove all the input characters.

## Troubleshooting

### Before starting the procedure

Problems may be solved by simply turning the power on/off or disconnecting/connecting the power cord, which is easier than working on the connection, setting and operating procedure. Try the simple measures on both the unit and the connected device. If the problem is that the video or audio is not output or the HDMI linked operation does not work, disconnecting/connecting the HDMI cable may solve it. When reconnecting, be careful not to wind the HDMI cable since if wound the HDMI cable may not fit well. After reconnecting, turn off and on the unit and the connected device.

- The AV receiver contains a microPC for signal processing and control functions. In very rare situations, severe interference, noise from an external source, or static electricity may cause it to lockup. In the unlikely event that this happens, unplug the power cord from the wall outlet, wait at least 5 seconds, and then plug it back in.
- Our company is not responsible for damages (such as CD rental fees) due to unsuccessful recordings caused by the unit's malfunction. Before you record important data, make sure that the material will be recorded correctly.

### When the unit is operating erratically 207

Try restarting the unit 207

Resetting the unit (this resets the unit settings to the default) 208

### Troubleshooting 209

■ Power 209

■ Audio 209

■ Listening Modes 211

■ Video 212

■ Linked operation 213

■ Tuner 213

■ BLUETOOTH function 214

■ Network function 215

■ USB storage device 215

■ Wireless LAN Network 216

■ ZONE B function 216

■ Multi-zone function 217


■ Remote Controller 217

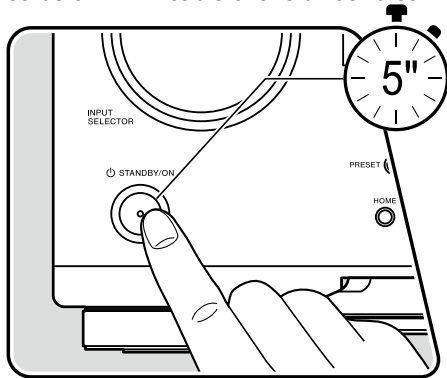
■ Display 217

■ Others 217

## When the unit is operating erratically

### ❑ Try restarting the unit

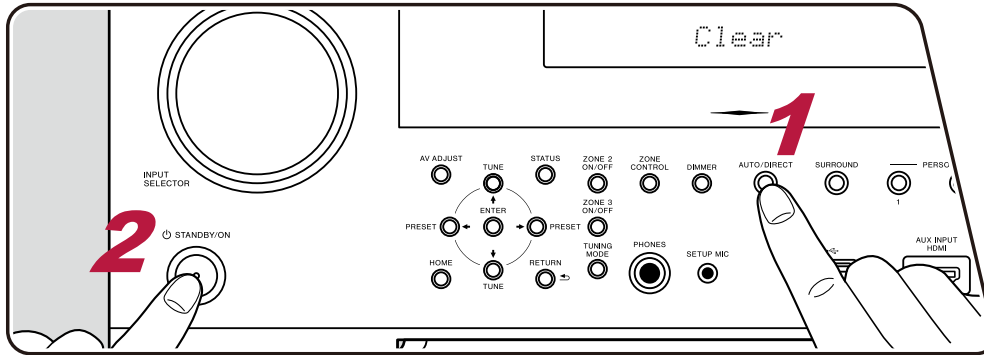
Restarting this unit may solve the problem. Set the main unit to standby, then after waiting for 5 seconds or more, press and hold the  STANDBY/ON button of the main unit for at least 5 seconds, and then restart the unit. (The settings on this unit are kept.) If the problem persists after restarting the unit, unplug and plug the power cords or HDMI cable of this unit and connected devices.



## ❑ Resetting the unit (this resets the unit settings to the default)

If the restart of the unit does not solve the problem, reset the unit, and restore all the settings to the factory default at the time of purchase. This may solve the problem. If the unit is reset, your settings are restored to the default values. Be sure to note down your setting contents before performing the following operations.

1. While pressing and holding AUTO/DIRECT button on the main unit with the unit turned on, press the  $\odot$  STANDBY/ON button.
2. "Clear" is displayed on the display, and the unit returns to the standby state. Do not remove the power cord until "Clear" disappears from the display. To reset the remote controller, while pressing and holding MODE, press CLEAR at least 3 seconds.



## Troubleshooting

### ■ Power

#### □ When the power is turned on, "AMP Diag Mode" appears on the display of the main unit.

- The protection circuit function may have operated. If the unit suddenly enters the standby state and "AMP Diag Mode" appears on the display of the main unit when the power is turned on again, this function is diagnosing whether or not the main unit is malfunctioning or there is an abnormality with the speaker cable connection. When the diagnosis is complete, the following messages are displayed.

CH SP WIRE	If the unit returns to the normal ON state after "CH SP WIRE" appears on the display, the speaker cable may have been short-circuited. After setting the power of this unit to standby state, connect the speaker cable again. Twist the wires exposed from the tip of the speaker cable so that the wires do not stick out of the speaker terminal.
NG: *****	If the operation has stopped with "NG" displayed on the display, set the power of this unit to standby state immediately and remove the power plug from the outlet. The unit may be malfunctioning. Consult a dealer.



#### □ The unit turns off unexpectedly

- The unit automatically switches to standby when the "System Setup" - "Hardware" - "Power Management" - "Auto Standby" setting in the Home screen functions.
- The protection circuit function may have operated due to an abnormal rise in temperature of the unit. In such a case, the power turns off repeatedly even if the power is turned on each time. Secure sufficient ventilation space around the unit, wait for a while until the temperature of the unit decreases. Then, turn the power on again.

( →p168)

**WARNING:** If smoke, smell or abnormal noise is produced by the unit, unplug the power cord from the outlet immediately, and contact the dealer or our company's Support.

### ■ Audio

- Make sure that the speaker setup microphone is no longer connected.
- Confirm that the connection between the output jack on the connected device and the input jack on this unit is correct.
- Make sure that none of the connecting cables are bent, twisted, or damaged.
- If "MUTING" is displayed on the display and  is blinking, press  on the remote controller to cancel muting.
- While headphones are connected to the PHONES jack, no sound is output from the speakers.
- When "System Setup" - "Source" - "Audio Select" - "Fixed PCM" in the Home Menu is set to "On", no sound is played when signals other than PCM are input. Change the setting to Off.

Check the following if the problem persists after you have confirmed the above.

## ❑ No sound from the TV

- Change the input selector on this unit to the position of the terminal to which the TV is connected.
- If the TV does not support the ARC function, along with the connection by an HDMI cable, connect the TV with this unit using a digital optical cable. (→[p79](#))

## ❑ No sound from a connected player

- Change the input selector on this unit to the position of the terminal to which the player is connected.
- Check the digital audio output setting on the connected device. On some game consoles, such as those supporting DVD, the default setting may be off.
- For some DVD-Video discs, you need to select an audio output format from a menu.

## ❑ A speaker produces no sound

- Make sure that the polarity (+/-) of the speaker cables is correct, and that no bare wires are in contact with the metal part of speaker terminals. (→[p46](#))
- Make sure that the speaker cables are not shorting out.
- Check "Connect the Speaker Cables" (→[p46](#)) to see if the speaker connections have been made correctly. Settings for the speaker connection environment need to be made in "Speaker Setup" in Initial Setup. Check "Initial Setup with Auto Start-up Wizard" (→[p202](#)).
- Depending on the input signal and listening mode, not much sound may be output from speakers. Select another listening mode to see if sound is output.
- If surround back speakers are installed, be sure to install surround speakers as well.
- With bi-amp connections, except for a case where only the front speakers are bi-amp connected, when multiple speakers are combined in a bi-amp connection, the maximum number of channels that can be played back is 5.1 ch. Further, make sure you remove the jumper bar on the speakers when using Bi-Amping connection.

## ❑ The subwoofer produces no sound

If the setting of the front speakers is "Large", the low range elements will be output from the front speakers instead of from the subwoofer during 2 ch audio input of TV or music. To output the sound from the subwoofer, make one of the following settings.

1. Change the front speakers settings to "Small".

The low range elements will be output from the subwoofer rather than the front speakers. We do not recommend changing this if your front speakers have good low range reproduction capabilities.

2. Change "Double Bass" to "On".

The low range elements of the front speakers will be output from both the front speakers and the subwoofer. Due to this, the bass sound may be emphasized too much. In such a case, do not change the setting, or make the setting with the above option 1.

- For the setting details, refer to "System Setup" - "Speaker" - "Crossover". (→[p160](#))
- If the input signals do not contain subwoofer audio elements (LFE), the subwoofer may produce no sound.

### ❑ Noise can be heard

- Using cable ties to bundle audio pin cables, power cords, speaker cables, etc. may degrade the audio performance. Do not bundle the cords.
- An audio cable may be picking up interference. Change the position of the cables.

### ❑ The beginning of audio received by an HDMI IN cannot be heard

- Since it takes longer to identify the format of an HDMI signal than it does for other digital audio signals, audio output may not start immediately.

### ❑ Sound is interrupted

- When "Upsampling" in "AV Adjust" is used to raise the sampling frequency, there may be some interruption to the sound depending on the connected device. Change the setting to "x2". If sound is still interrupted, change it to "x1".

### ❑ Sound suddenly reduces

- When using the unit for extended periods with the temperature inside the unit exceeding a certain temperature, the volume may be reduced automatically to protect the circuits.

## ■ Listening Modes

- To enjoy digital surround playback in formats such as Dolby Digital, you need to make a connection for audio signals with an HDMI cable, digital coaxial cable or digital optical cable. Also, audio output need to be set to Bitstream output on the connected Blu-ray Disc player, etc.
- Press **i** on the remote controller several times to switch the display of the main unit, and you can check the input format.

Check the following if the problem persists after you have confirmed the above.

### ❑ Cannot select a desired listening mode

- Depending on the connection status of the speaker, some listening modes may not be selected. Refer to "Speaker Layouts and Selectable Listening Modes" (→[p136](#)) or "Input Formats and Selectable Listening Modes" (→[p144](#)) in "Listening Mode".
- When playing multichannel PCM audio format, depending on the content, you may not be able to select the "DTS Neural:X" listening mode.

### ❑ Cannot listen to the sound in Dolby TrueHD, Dolby Atmos or DTS-HD Master Audio format

- If the audio in Dolby TrueHD, Dolby Atmos or DTS-HD Master Audio format cannot be output correctly in the source format, set "BD video supplementary sound" (or reencode, secondary sound, video additional audio, etc.) to "Off" in the setting of a connected Blu-ray Disc player, etc. After changing the setting, switch the listening mode to that for each source, and confirm.

### ❑ About Dolby signals

- When surround back speakers are included in the speaker layout, and software that is recorded with the 5.1-channel Dolby audio format is played, the surround channel audio may be output from the surround back speakers.
- Some Dolby Atmos audio format that is used on games, etc., may be recognized as "Multichannel PCM". If this occurs, check the firmware updates for the game console.

### ❑ About DTS signals

- With media that switches suddenly from DTS to PCM, PCM playback may not start immediately. In such a case, stop playback on the player side for approx. 3 seconds or more. Then, resume playback. The playback will be performed normally.
- DTS playback may not be performed normally on some CD and LD players even if the player and this unit are digitally connected. If some processing (e.g., output level adjustment, sampling frequency conversion, or frequency characteristic conversion) has been executed for the DTS signal being output, this unit cannot recognize it as a genuine DTS signal, and noise may occur.
- While playing a DTS-compatible disc, if a pause or skip operation is performed on your player, noise may occur for a short period. This is not a malfunction.

## ■ Video

- Confirm that the connection between the output jack on the connected device and the input jack on this unit is correct.
- Make sure that none of the connecting cables are bent, twisted, or damaged.
- When the TV image is blurry or unclear, the power cord or connection cables of the unit may have interfered. In such a case, keep distance between TV antenna cable and cables of the unit.
- Check the switching of the input screen on the monitor side such as a TV.


Check the following if the problem persists after you have confirmed the above.

### ❑ No image appears

- Change the input selector on this unit to the position of the terminal to which the player is connected.

### ❑ No image from a device connected to HDMI IN jack



- To display video from the connected player on the TV while the unit is in standby, you need to enable "System Setup" - "Hardware" - "HDMI" - "HDMI Standby Through" in the Home screen. For details of the HDMI Standby Through function, refer to "System Setup" - "Hardware" - "HDMI". (→p167)
- To output video to a TV connected to the HDMI OUT SUB jack, press the  button on the remote controller to display "AV Adjust" and select "HDMI" - "HDMI Out", or press the HDMI MAIN/SUB button on the remote controller. Then, select the HDMI OUT jack for output.
- Check if "Resolution Error" is displayed on the main unit display when video input via HDMI IN jack is not displayed. In this case, the TV does not support the resolution of the video input from the player. Change the setting on the player.
- If the "Audio Exclusive Mode" (→p198) for the device connected to the HDMI IN 2 is on, the video signal output is stopped and nothing is shown on the TV screen. Check that this is Off.
- Normal operation with an HDMI-DVI adapter is not guaranteed. In addition, video signals output from a PC are not guaranteed.


### ❑ The video and audio output is slow from a source connected to an HDMI input terminal

- If the "Audio Exclusive Mode" (→p198) for the device connected to the HDMI IN 2 is on, it may take some time for video and audio to be output when displaying or hiding "System Setup". If this occurs, change the resolution setting for video output on the connected device to a fixed value such as 1080p, rather than "Auto".

### ❑ Images flicker

- The output resolution of the player may not be compatible with the resolution of the TV. If the player is connected to this unit with an HDMI cable, change the output resolution on the player. Also this may be solved by changing the screen mode on the TV.

### ❑ Video and audio are out of synch

- Depending on the settings on your TV and connection environment, the video may be behind the audio. To adjust, press  on the remote controller, and adjust in "HDMI" - "Sound Delay" in the "AV Adjust". (→p198)

## ■ Linked operation

### ❑ HDMI linked operation does not work with CEC-compliant devices, such as a TV

- In the Home screen of the unit, set "System Setup" - "Hardware" - "HDMI" - "HDMI CEC" to "On". (→p167)
- It is also necessary to set HDMI linking on the CEC-compliant device. Check the instruction manual.
- When connecting a Sharp brand player or recorder to the HDMI IN jacks, set "System Setup" - "Hardware" - "HDMI" - "HDMI Standby Through" to "Auto".

## ■ Tuner

### ❑ Poor reception or much noise

- Recheck the antenna connection. (→p88)
- Move the antenna away from the speaker cord or power cord.
- Move the unit away from your TV or PC.
- Passing cars or airplanes in the vicinity can cause interference.
- If radio waves are blocked by concrete walls, etc., radio reception may be poor.
- Change the reception mode to mono (→p118).
- Operating the remote controller during AM reception may cause noise.
- You can improve reception sensitivity by changing the setting in "System Setup" - "Miscellaneous" - "Tuner" - "AM Noise Cut Mode" in the Home screen if you are finding AM broadcasts difficult to hear.
- FM reception may be clearer if you use the antenna jack on the wall used for the TV.

## ■ BLUETOOTH function

- Unplug and plug the power cord of the unit, or turn off and on the BLUETOOTH-enabled device. Restart of the BLUETOOTH-enabled device may be effective.
  - BLUETOOTH-enabled devices must support the A2DP profile.
  - Because a radio wave interference will occur, this unit may not be used near devices such as a microwave oven or cordless phone which use the radio wave in the 2.4 GHz range.
  - A metallic object near the unit can affect on the radio wave, and BLUETOOTH connection may not be possible.
- Check the following if the problem persists after you have confirmed the above.

### □ Cannot connect with this unit

- Check if the BLUETOOTH function of the BLUETOOTH-enabled device is enabled. (→p197)

### □ Music playback is unavailable on the unit even after successful BLUETOOTH connection

- When the audio volume of your BLUETOOTH-enabled device is set low, the audio may not be played back. Turn up the volume of the BLUETOOTH-enabled device.
- Depending on the BLUETOOTH-enabled device, the Send/Receive selector switch may be equipped. Select Send mode.
- Depending on the characteristics or specifications of the BLUETOOTH-enabled device, music may not be played back on this unit.

### □ Sound is interrupted

- There may a problem with the BLUETOOTH-enabled device. Check the information on a web page.

### □ The audio quality is poor after connection with a BLUETOOTH-enabled device

- The BLUETOOTH reception is poor. Move the BLUETOOTH-enabled device closer to the unit, or remove any obstacle between the BLUETOOTH-enabled device and this unit.

## ■ Network function

- If you cannot select a network service, start up the network function to select it. It may take approx. one minute to start it up.
- When the NET indicator is blinking, this unit is not properly connected to the home network.
- Unplug and plug the power cords of this unit and the router, or restart the router.
- If the desired router is not displayed in the access point list, it may be set to hide SSID, or the ANY connection may be off. Change the setting and try again.

Check the following if the problem persists after you have confirmed the above.

### ❑ Cannot access the Internet radio

- In the case the service provider has terminated the service, the network service or contents may not be used on this unit.
- Check if your modem and router are properly connected, and they are both turned on.
- Check if the LAN side port on the router is properly connected to this unit.
- Check if connecting to Internet from other devices is possible. If it is not possible, turn off all devices connected to the network, wait for a while, and then turn on the devices again.
- Depending on ISP, setting the proxy server is required.
- Check if the router and modem you are using are supported by your ISP.

### ❑ Cannot access the network server

- This unit needs to be connected to the same router as the network server.
- This unit supports the Windows Media® Player 11 or 12 network servers, or NASes that support the home network function.
- Windows Media® Player may require some settings. Refer to "Playing back files on a PC and NAS (Music Server)".
- When using a PC, only the music files registered in the library of Windows Media® Player can be played.

( →p106)

### ❑ Sound is interrupted when playing music files on the network server

- Check if the network server meets the requirements for operation.
- When the PC is serving as the network server, quit application software other than the server software (Windows Media® Player 12, etc.).
- If the PC is downloading or copying large files, the playback sound may be interrupted.

## ■ USB storage device

### ❑ USB storage device is not displayed

- Check if the USB storage device or USB cable is securely inserted to the USB port of the unit.
- Disconnect the USB storage device once from the unit, and then reconnect it.
- Performance of the hard disk that receive power from the USB port of the unit is not guaranteed.
- Depending on the type of content, the playback may not be performed normally. Check the types of supported file formats.
- Operations of USB storage devices equipped with security functions are not guaranteed.

( →p103)

## ■ Wireless LAN Network

- Unplug and plug the power cords of this unit and the wireless LAN router, check the power-on status of the wireless LAN router, or restart the wireless LAN router.

Check the following if the problem persists after you have confirmed the above.

### □ Cannot access wireless LAN network

- The wireless LAN router setting may be switched to Manual. Restore the setting to Auto.
- Try the manual set-up. The connection may succeed.
- When the wireless LAN router is in stealth mode (mode to hide SSID) or when the ANY connection is off, the SSID is not displayed. Change the setting and try again.
- Check if the SSID and encryption settings (WEP, etc.) are correct. Match the network settings with the settings of this unit.
- Connection to an SSID that includes multi-byte characters is not supported. Set the SSID of the wireless LAN router using single-byte alphanumeric characters only, and try again.

### □ Connected to an SSID different from the selected SSID

- Some wireless LAN routers allow you to set multiple SSIDs for one unit. If connecting to such a router using the automatic setting button, you may end up connecting to an SSID different from the SSID you want to connect to. If this occurs, use the connection method requiring you to enter a password.

### □ Playback sound is interrupted, or communication is not possible

- You may not receive radio waves due to poor radio wave conditions. Shorten the distance from the wireless LAN router, or remove obstacles to improve visibility, and connect again. Install the unit away from microwave ovens or other access points. It is recommended to install the wireless LAN router and the unit in the same room.
- If there is a metallic object near the unit, wireless LAN connection may not be possible because the metal affects the radio wave.
- When other wireless LAN devices are used near the unit, other symptoms may occur, such as interrupted playback and impossible communication. You can avoid those problems by changing the channel of your wireless LAN router. For instructions on changing channels, refer to the instruction manual supplied with your wireless LAN router.
- There may not be enough bandwidth available in wireless LAN. Use a wired LAN for connection.

## ■ ZONE B function

### □ Cannot output audio to ZONE B

- To output audio to ZONE B, the audio output destination at "Audio" - "Zone B" under AV Adjust must be set to "On(A+B)" or "On(B)", and "System Setup" - "Speaker" - "Configuration" - "Zone 2 Preout" on the Home screen must be set to "Zone B".

( →p126)

## ■ Multi-zone function

### □ Cannot ZONE-output the audio of externally connected AV components

- To output audio from an externally connected AV component to ZONE 2, connect it to any of HDMI IN1 to IN3 jacks. If the AV component is not equipped with an HDMI jack, use a digital coaxial cable, digital optical cable or analog audio cable. Also, the audio from externally connected AV components can be output to ZONE 2 only when the audio is analog or 2ch PCM signal. When the AV component is connected to this unit with an HDMI cable, digital coaxial cable or digital optical cable, change the audio output of the AV component to the PCM output.
- When video and audio via HDMI input are output to ZONE 2, set "Input/Output Assign" - "TV Out / OSD" - "Zone 2 HDMI" (→[p153](#)) to "Use" on the System Setup menu.
- To output audio from an externally connected AV component to ZONE 3, use an analog audio cable for connection. Also, audio from externally connected AV components can be output to ZONE 3 only when it is an analog audio signal.

### □ Others

- If the audio signal is from the NET or USB input selector, zone output is not possible for DSD audio signals.

## ■ Remote Controller

- Make sure that the batteries are inserted with the correct polarity.
- Insert new batteries. Do not mix different types of batteries, or old and new batteries.
- Make sure that the sensor of the main unit is not subjected to direct sunlight or inverter-type fluorescent lights. Relocate it if necessary.
- If the main unit is installed in a rack or cabinet with colored-glass doors, or if the doors are closed, the remote controller may not work normally.

## ■ Display

### □ The display does not light up

- When the Dimmer function is working, the display may go dim or turn off. Press the DIMMER button, and change the brightness level of the display. (→[p11](#))

## ■ Others

### □ Strange noise can be heard from the unit

- If you have connected another device to the same outlet as this unit, strange noise may occur under the influence of the device. If the symptom is remedied by removing the power plug of the other device from the outlet, use different outlets for this unit and the device.

### □ The message "Noise Error" appears during Full Auto MCACC

- This can be caused by a malfunction in your speaker unit. Check the speaker output, etc.

**❑ The measurement results of Full Auto MCACC show different distances to the speakers from the actual ones**

- Depending on the speakers you are using, some errors may occur in the measurement results. If this is the case, make the settings in "System Setup" - "Speaker" - "Distance".

( →p161)

**❑ The measurement results of Full Auto MCACC show that the volume level of the subwoofer has been corrected to the lower limit**

- The volume level correction of the subwoofer may not have been completed. Lower the volume of the subwoofer before Full Auto MCACC measurement.

**❑ Cannot operate the Full Auto MCACC screen with the Pioneer Remote App (available on iOS and Android™).**

- Start the Pioneer Remote App before connecting the speaker setup microphone.

**❑ Midnight function does not work**

- Make sure the source material is Dolby Digital, Dolby Digital Plus, Dolby TrueHD or DTS.

## Reducing the Power Consumption in Standby State

When the following functions are enabled, the power consumption in standby state increases. To reduce the power consumption in standby state, check each setting and set the functions to "Off".

- HDMI CEC ( →[p167](#) )
- HDMI Standby Through ( →[p167](#) )
- USB Power Out at Standby ( →[p169](#) )
- Network Standby ( →[p169](#) )
- Bluetooth Wakeup ( →[p169](#) )

## About HDMI

### Compatible functions

HDMI (High Definition Multimedia Interface) is a digital interface standard for connecting TVs, projectors, Blu-ray Disc/DVD players, digital tuners, and other video components. Several separate video and audio cables have been required to connect AV components so far. With HDMI, a single cable can transmit control signals, digital video and digital audio (2-channel PCM, multichannel digital audio, and multichannel PCM).

HDMI CEC function:

By connecting a device that complies with CEC (Consumer Electronics Control) of the HDMI standard using an HDMI cable, a variety of linked operations between devices are possible. This function enables various linking operations with players, such as switching input selectors interlocking with a player, adjusting the volume of this unit using the remote controller of a TV, and automatically switching this unit to standby when the TV is turned off. The unit is designed to link with products that comply with the CEC standard, however, linked operation is not always guaranteed with all CEC devices.

For linked functions to work properly, do not connect CEC-compliant devices exceeding the connectable number to the HDMI jack as shown below.

- Blu-ray Disc/DVD players: up to 3 units
- Blu-ray Disc/DVD recorders: up to 3 units
- Cable TV tuner, terrestrial digital tuner, and satellite broadcasting tuner: up to 4 units

Operation has been confirmed on the following devices: (As of January 2019)  
Toshiba brand televisions; Sharp brand televisions; Toshiba brand players and recorders; Sharp brand players and recorders (when used with a Sharp brand television)

ARC (Audio Return Channel)/eARC (Enhanced Audio Return Channel):

The ARC function and eARC function transmit the audio signals of the TV via an HDMI cable, and plays the audio of the TV on this unit. By connecting an ARC-compatible TV or eARC-compatible TV with a single HDMI cable, you can output the audio and video from this unit to the TV, and also input the audio from the TV to this unit.

- The eARC function is a newly added function for HDMI 2.1. This is an expanded function from the existing ARC function, and is able to send audio formats such as Dolby TrueHD and DTS-HD Master Audio that cannot be sent with the ARC function, from an eARC-compatible TV to this unit.
  - ARC-supported audio formats: PCM, Dolby Digital, Dolby Digital Plus, DTS (DTS 96/24, DTS-ES, etc.), DTS-HD High Resolution Audio, IMAX DTS
  - eARC-supported audio formats: PCM, Dolby Digital, Dolby Digital Plus, DTS (DTS 96/24, DTS-ES, etc.), Dolby TrueHD, Dolby Atmos, DTS-HD Master Audio, DTS:X, Multichannel PCM, DTS-HD High Resolution Audio, IMAX DTS, IMAX DTS:X

HDMI Standby Through :

Even if this unit is in standby mode, the input signals from AV components can be transmitted to the TV.

Deep Color :

By connecting devices supporting Deep Color, video signals input from the devices can be reproduced on the TV with even more colors.

x.v.Color™ :

This technology reproduces even more realistic colors by expanding the color gamut.

3D :

You can transmit 3D video signals from AV components to the TV.

4K :

This unit supports 4K (3840×2160p) and 4K SMPTE (4096×2160p) video signals.

Lip Sync :

This setting automatically corrects desynchronization between the video and audio signals based on the information from the HDMI Lip Sync-compatible TV.

Copyright Protection:

The HDMI jack of this unit conforms to the Revision 1.4, Revision 2.2 and Revision 2.3 standards of the HDCP (High-bandwidth Digital Content Protection), a copy protection system for digital video signals. Other devices connected to the



unit must also conform to the HDCP standards.

## Supported Audio Formats

2 ch linear PCM:

32 kHz, 44.1 kHz, 48 kHz, 88.2 kHz, 96 kHz, 176.4 kHz, 192 kHz, 16/20/24 bit

Multi-channel linear PCM:

Maximum 7.1 channels, 32 kHz, 44.1 kHz, 48 kHz, 88.2 kHz, 96 kHz, 176.4 kHz, 192 kHz, 16/20/24 bit

Bitstream:

Dolby Atmos, Dolby Digital, Dolby Digital Plus, Dolby TrueHD, DTS, DTS:X, DTS-HD High Resolution Audio, DTS-HD Master Audio, DTS 96/24, DTS-ES, DTS Express, IMAX DTS, IMAX DTS:X

DSD :

Supported sampling rates: 2.8 MHz

Your Blu-ray Disc/DVD player must also support the HDMI output of the above audio formats.

## Supported resolutions

HDMI IN1 to IN6:

- Copyright protection technology: HDCP1.4/2.2/2.3
- Color space (Color Depth):
  - 720×480i 60 Hz, 720×576i 50 Hz, 720×480p 60 Hz, 720×576p 50 Hz, 1920×1080i 50/60 Hz, 1280×720p 24/25/30/50/60 Hz, 1680×720p 24/25/30/50/60 Hz, 1920×1080p 24/25/30/50/60 Hz, 2560×1080p 24/25/30/50/60 Hz, 4K (3840×2160p) 24/25/30 Hz, 4K SMPTE (4096×2160p) 24/25/30 Hz : RGB/YCbCr4:4:4 (8/10/12 bit), YCbCr4:2:2 (12 bit)
  - 4K (3840×2160p) 50/60 Hz, 4K SMPTE (4096×2160p) 50/60 Hz : RGB/YCbCr4:4:4 (8 bit), YCbCr4:2:2 (12 bit), YCbCr4:2:0 (8/10/12 bit)

AUX INPUT HDMI (front):

- Copyright protection technology: HDCP1.4/2.2/2.3
- Color space (Color Depth):
  - 720×480i 60Hz, 720×576i 50Hz, 720×480p 60Hz, 720×576p 50Hz, 1920×1080i 50/60Hz, 1280×720p 24/25/30/50/60Hz, 1680×720p

- 24/25/30/50/60Hz, 1920×1080p 24/25/30/50/60Hz, 2560×1080p 24/25/30/50/60Hz : RGB/YCbCr4:4:4 (8/10/12 bit), YCbCr4:2:2 (12 bit)
- 4K (3840×2160p) 24/25/30Hz, 4K SMPTE (4096×2160p) 24/25/30Hz : RGB/YCbCr4:4:4 (8 bit), YCbCr4:2:2 (12 bit)
- 4K (3840×2160p) 50/60Hz, 4K SMPTE (4096×2160p) 50/60Hz : YCbCr4:2:0 (8 bit)

## General Specifications

### ■ Amplifier Section

#### Rated Output Power (FTC) (North American)

With 8 ohm loads, both channels driven, from 1 kHz; rated 140 watts per channel minimum RMS power, with no more than 0.08% total harmonic distortion from 250 milliwatts to rated output.

#### Rated Output Power (IEC) (European)

11 ch × 215 W at 6 ohms, 1 kHz, 1 ch driven of 1% THD

#### Maximum Effective Output Power (JEITA)

260 W at 6 ohms, 1 kHz, 1 ch driven of 10% THD

#### Multi channel simultaneous power output (1 kHz, 1%, 8Ω)

880 W (11ch total)

#### THD+N (Total Harmonic Distortion+Noise)

0.04% (1 kHz, 100 W)

#### Input Sensitivity and Impedance

200 mV/82 kΩ (LINE (RCA))

3.5 mV/47 kΩ (PHONO MM)

#### Rated RCA Output Level and Impedance

1 V/470 Ω (PRE OUT)

1 V/470 Ω (SUBWOOFER PRE OUT)

200 mV/1.2 kΩ (ZONE B /ZONE 2 / ZONE 3 LINE OUT)

2 V/1.2 kΩ (ZONE 2 / ZONE 3 PRE OUT)

#### Phono Maximum Input Signal Voltage

70 mV (MM 1 kHz 0.5%)

#### Tone Control Characteristics (MAIN)

±10 dB, 20 Hz (BASS)

±10 dB, 20 kHz (TREBLE)

#### Tone Control Characteristics (ZONE 2)

±10 dB, 100 Hz (BASS)

±10 dB, 10 kHz (TREBLE)

#### Signal to Noise Ratio

108 dB (IHF-A, LINE IN, SP OUT)

90 dB (IHF-A, PHONO IN, SP OUT)

#### Speaker Impedance

4 Ω - 16 Ω

#### Headphone Rated Output

57 mW + 57 mW (32 Ω, 1 kHz, 10% THD)

### ■ Video Section

#### Signal level

1 Vp-p/75 Ω (Composite Video)

1 Vp-p/75 Ω (Component Video Y)

0.7 Vp-p/75 Ω (Component Video Pb/Pr)

#### Maximum resolution supported by component video

480i/576i

### ■ Tuner Section

#### FM Tuning Frequency Range

87.5 MHz - 107.9 MHz (North American)

87.5 MHz - 108.0 MHz, RDS (Others)

#### 50 dB quieting sensitivity (FM MONO)

1.0 μV, 11.2 dBf (IHF, 75 Ω)

#### AM Tuning Frequency Range

530 kHz - 1710 kHz (North American)

522/530 kHz - 1611/1710 kHz (Others)

#### Preset Channel

40

### ■ Network Section

#### Ethernet LAN

10BASE-T/100BASE-TX

Wireless LAN

- IEEE 802.11 a/b/g/n/ac standard  
(Wi-Fi® standard)
- 5 GHz/2.4 GHz band

■ **BLUETOOTH Section**

Communication system

- BLUETOOTH Specification version 4.2

Frequency band

- 2.4 GHz band

Modulation method

- FHSS (Freq Hopping Spread Spectrum)

Compatible BLUETOOTH profiles

- A2DP 1.2
- AVRCP 1.3

Supported Codecs

- SBC
- AAC

Transmission range (A2DP)

- 20 Hz - 20 kHz (Sampling frequency 44.1 kHz)

Maximum communication range

- Line of sight approx. 15 m (\*)

- \* The actual range will vary depending on factors such as obstacles between devices, magnetic fields around a microwave oven, static electricity, cordless phone, reception sensitivity, antenna's performance, operating system, software application, etc.

■ **General**

Power Supply

- AC 120 V, 60 Hz (North American)
- AC 220 - 230 V, 50/60 Hz (European)
- AC 220 - 230/240 V, 50/60 Hz (Asian)

Power Consumption

- 340 W
- 0.1 W (Full Standby mode) (North American)
- 0.2 W (Full Standby mode) (Others)
- 1.5 W (Network Standby (wired)) (North American)

- 1.6 W (Network Standby (wired)) (Others)

- 1.6 W (Network Standby (wireless)) (North American)

- 1.7 W (Network Standby (wireless)) (Others)

- 1.4 W (Bluetooth Wakeup) (North American)

- 1.5 W (Bluetooth Wakeup) (Others)

- 0.1 W (HDMI CEC) (North American)

- 0.2 W (HDMI CEC) (Others)

- 1.6 W (Standby mode (ALL ON)) (North American)

- 1.7 W (Standby mode (ALL ON)) (Others)

- \* 2.6 W (North American) / 2.7 W (Others) (Equipment with HiNA functionality Standby mode, Network disconnect and Network Standby ON)

- \* This equipment complies with European Commission Regulation (EC) No 1275/2008 as equipment with HiNA functionality.

If you do not to use the Network function, please set Network Standby setting to Off. You can reduce power consumption under standby mode.

Dimensions (W × H × D)

- 435 mm × 185 mm × 440 mm
- 17-1/8" × 7-5/16" × 17-5/16"

Weight

- 18.5 kg (40.8 lbs.)

Maximum radio-frequency power transmitted in the frequency band(s) (European)

- 2400 MHz - 2483.5 MHz (20 dBm (e.i.r.p))
- 5150 MHz - 5350 MHz (23 dBm (e.i.r.p))
- 5470 MHz - 5725 MHz (23 dBm (e.i.r.p))

■ **HDMI**

Input

- IN1 (GAME), IN2 (BD/DVD), IN3 (CBL/SAT), IN4 (STRM BOX), IN5, IN6, AUX INPUT HDMI (front)

Output

- OUT MAIN (ARC/eARC), OUT SUB, OUT ZONE 2

Supported

- Deep Color, x.v.Color™, Lip Sync, eARC, 3D, 4K 60 Hz, CEC, Extended Colorimetry (sYCC601, Adobe RGB, Adobe YCC601), Content Type, HDR (HDR10, BT.2020, HLG), Dolby Vision

Audio Format

Dolby Atmos, Dolby TrueHD, Dolby Digital, Dolby Digital Plus, DTS, DTS:X, DTS-HD Master Audio, DTS-HD High Resolution Audio, DTS 96/24, DTS-ES, DTS Express, IMAX DTS, IMAX DTS:X, DSD, PCM

HDCP version

2.3

Maximum Video Resolution

4K 60 Hz (YCbCr 4:4:4)

## ■ Video Inputs

Component

IN1 (BD/DVD), IN2 (GAME)

Composite

IN1 (CBL/SAT), IN2 (STRM BOX)

## ■ Supported input resolutions

HDMI input

4K, 1080p/24, 1080p, 1080i, 720p, 480p/576p

Component input

480i/576i

Composite input

480i/576i

- The output from the HDMI OUT jack to the TV is the same resolution as the input. When using a TV that supports 4K, 1080p HDMI video signals can also be output as 4K.

## ■ Audio Inputs

Digital

OPTICAL (GAME, CD, TV)

COAXIAL (BD/DVD, CBL/SAT)

Analog

CBL/SAT, STRM BOX, BD/DVD, GAME, CD, TV, PHONO

## ■ Audio Outputs

Analog

PRE OUT (FRONT L/R, CENTER, SURR L/R, SURR BACK L/R, HEIGHT 1 L/R, HEIGHT 2 L/R, 2 SUBWOOFER)

ZONE B LINE OUT or ZONE 2 PRE/LINE OUT

ZONE 3 PRE/LINE OUT

Speaker Outputs

FRONT L/R, CENTER, HEIGHT 2 L/R or ZONE 2 L/R or SP-B,

SURROUND BACK L/R, SURROUND L/R or SP A, HEIGHT 1 L/R or Bi-AMP L/R or ZONE 3 L/R (North American models support banana plugs.)

Phones

PHONES (Front, ø 6.3 mm, 1/4")

## ■ Others

Setup Mic : 1 (Front)

USB : 2 (Ver. 2.0, 5 V/0.5 A (Front/Rear))

Ethernet : 1

RS232 : 1

IR IN : 2

IR OUT : 1

12V TRIGGER OUT : 2 (A: 100 mA, B: 25 mA)

Specifications and features are subject to change without notice.

☐ → [License and Trademark](#)

*Pioneer*

SN 29403792A\_EN

© 2019 Onkyo & Pioneer Corporation. All rights reserved.

Onkyo group has established its Privacy Policy, available at [<http://pioneer-audiovisual.com/privacy/>].

"Pioneer" and "MCACC logo" are trademarks of Pioneer Corporation, and are used under license.

F1908-0